



# Cash and Liquidity Management

Generated on: 2024-10-31 16:17:10 GMT+0000

SAP S/4HANA | 2023 Latest

PUBLIC

Original content: [https://help.sap.com/docs/SAP\\_S4HANA\\_ON-PREMISE/ac319d8fa4ea4624b40a58d23e3c4627?locale=en-US&state=PRODUCTION&version=2023.002](https://help.sap.com/docs/SAP_S4HANA_ON-PREMISE/ac319d8fa4ea4624b40a58d23e3c4627?locale=en-US&state=PRODUCTION&version=2023.002)

## Warning

This document has been generated from the SAP Help Portal and is an incomplete version of the official SAP product documentation. The information included in custom documentation may not reflect the arrangement of topics in the SAP Help Portal, and may be missing important aspects and/or correlations to other topics. For this reason, it is not for productive use.

For more information, please visit the <https://help.sap.com/docs/disclaimer>.

# Cash and Liquidity Management

## Use

Cash and Liquidity Management enables an organization's cash or treasury department to manage bank accounts centrally, overview the cash operations and long-term liquidity trends accurately and precisely. Cash managers can easily and intuitively get a high-level overview and detailed insights into bank accounts, cash position, and cash flows, which enables them to make decisions and take actions directly. The major features are listed below.

### **i** Note

This solution is intended for business use only. You should not use it for personal bank accounts or personal cash operations.

- [Bank Relationship Management](#)

Bank Relationship Management allows you to manage your bank account master data centrally, using a process to govern the opening, closing, changing, and reviewing of bank accounts. The streamlined workflow and dual control processes also help improve user efficiency in accomplishing compliance-related tasks.

- [Cash Operations](#)

Cash Operations allows you to review the cash position to understand cash distribution, to establish whether bank accounts have sufficient funding (or a surplus) for the day's payment obligations, and to decide whether to invest available cash in the short term.

- [Liquidity Management](#)

Liquidity Management allows you to analyze the past actual cash flows and forecast the medium-term liquidity trends. It also provides rolling plan cycle management and planning status monitoring with variance analysis on plan, actual, and forecast data.

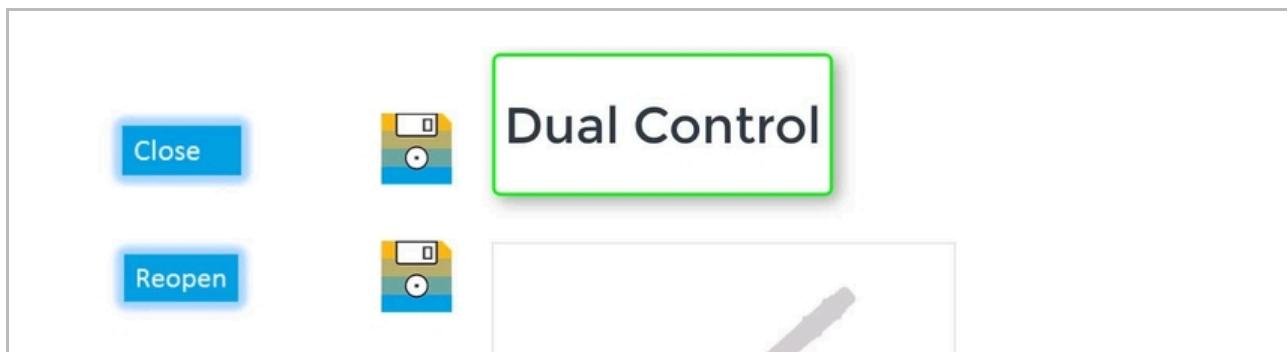
For a quick look at some of the features of these apps, watch these how-to videos.

### **i** Note

All videos are available in English only. Captions/subtitles are available for multiple languages. Simply click the **CC** button at the bottom of the video player to see which languages are supported.

## More Information

- [Bank Relationship Management](#)
  - [Using Dual Control for Bank Account Management](#)



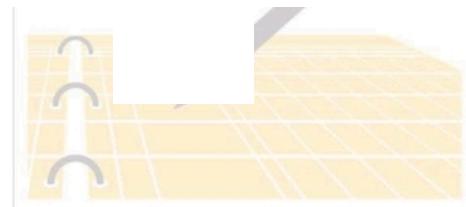
Copy



Modify



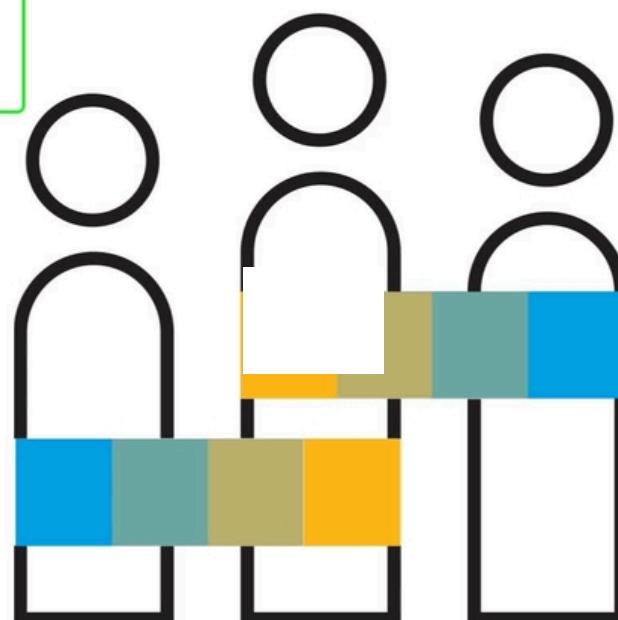
Create



[Open this video in a new window](#)

- Using Workflow Processes for Bank Account Management

## Workflow Processes



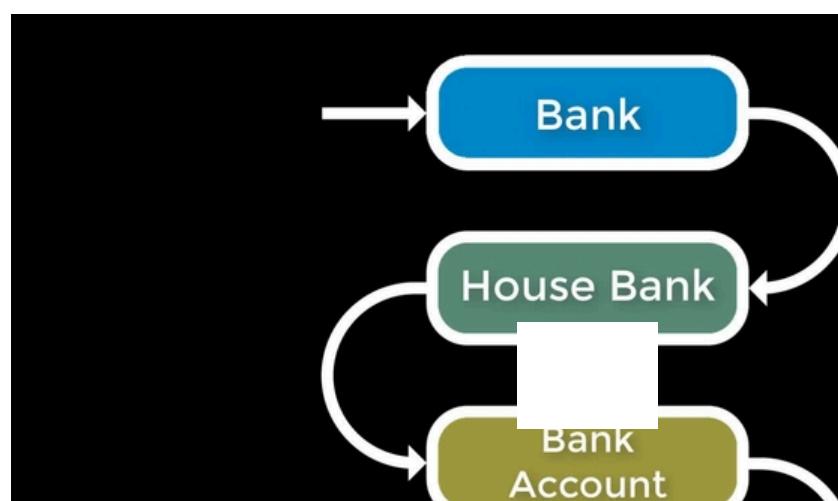
[Open this video in a new window](#)

- Defining Bank and Bank Account Data

Bank

House Bank

Bank  
Account





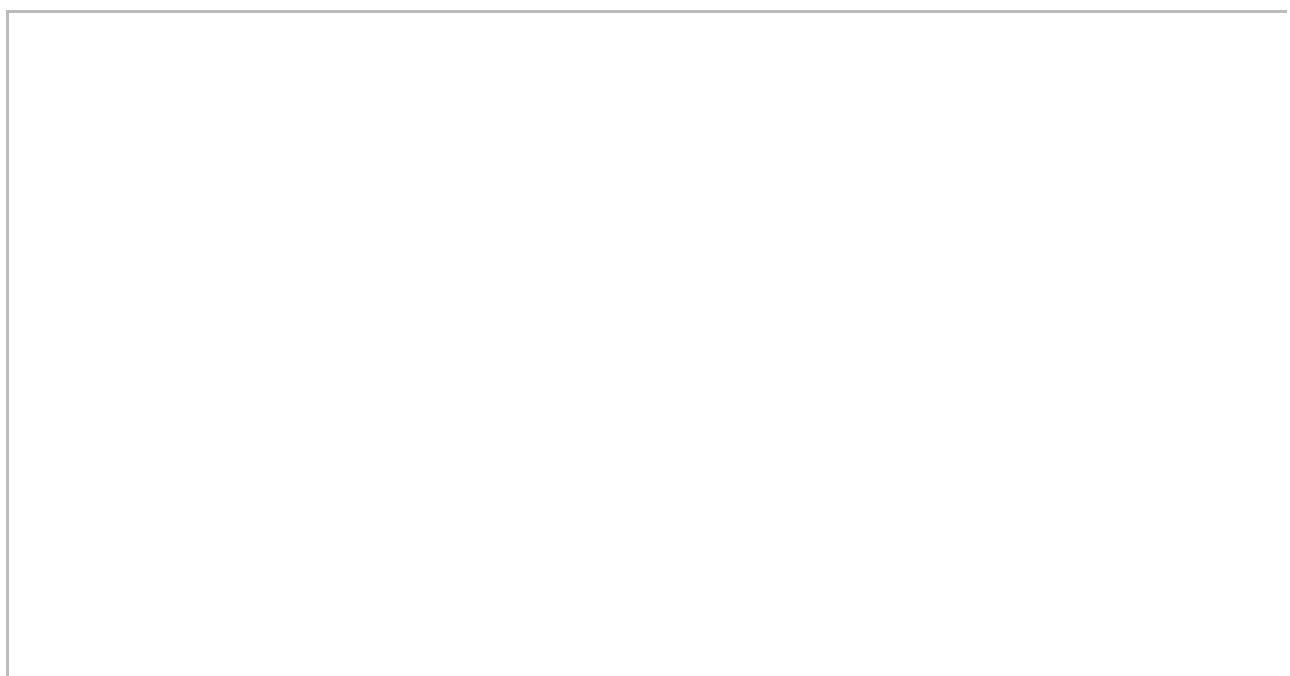
[Open this video in a new window](#)

- 
- o Extending Workflows for Bank Account Management Using Responsibility Rules



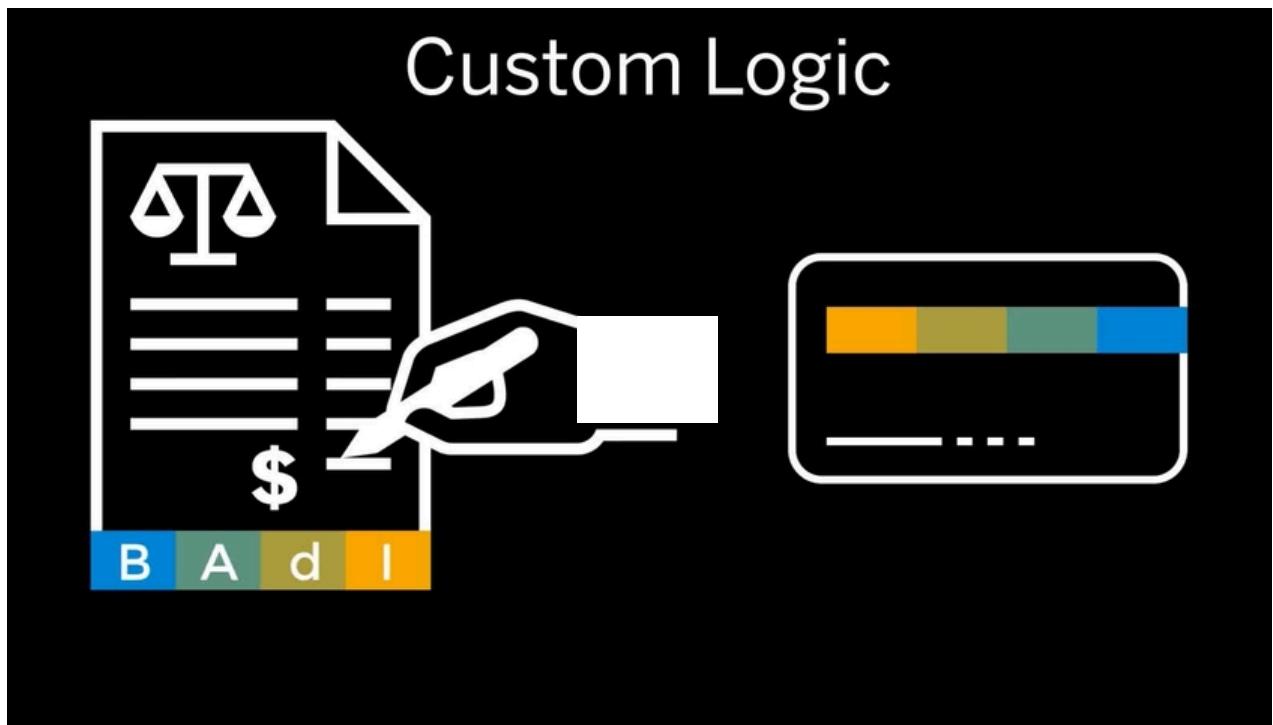
[Open this video in a new window](#)

- 
- o Extending Bank Account Master Data



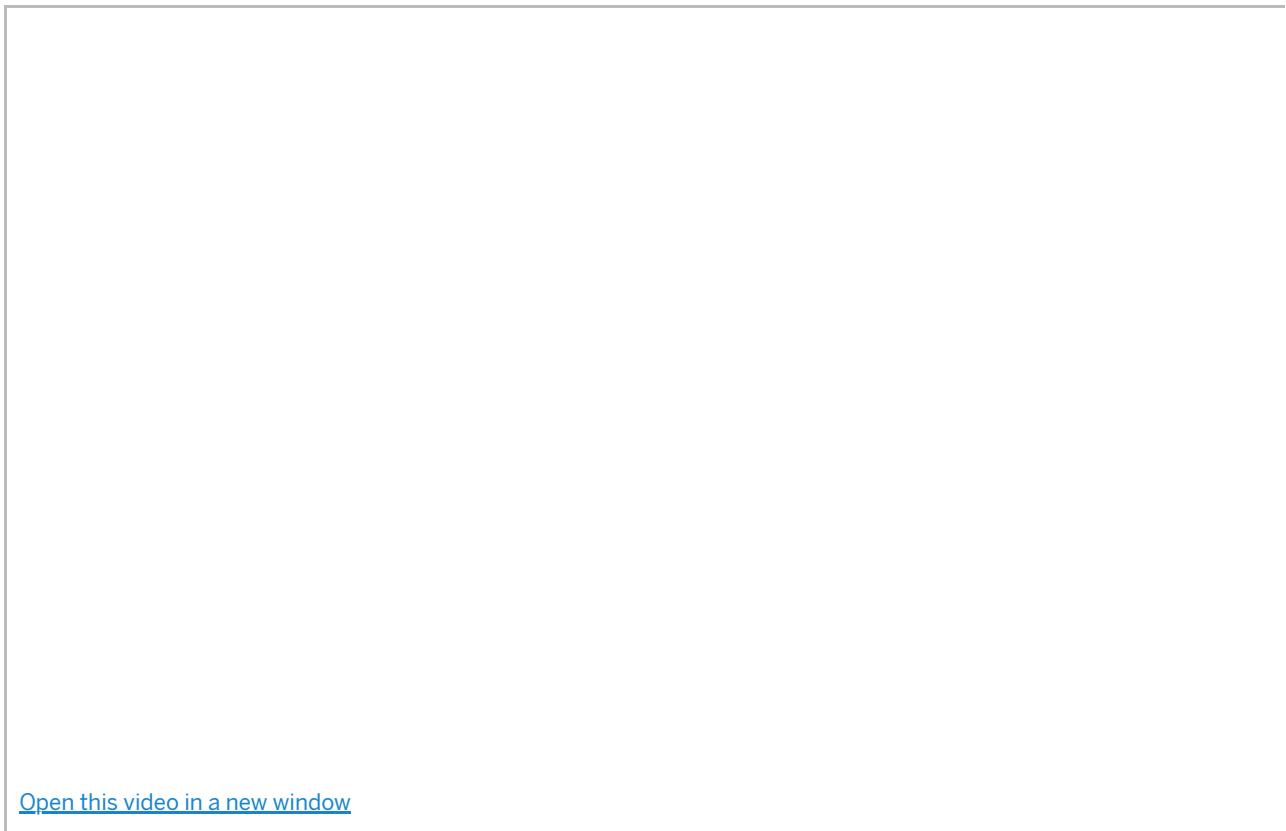
[Open this video in a new window](#)

- o Defining Custom Logic for Bank Account Master Data



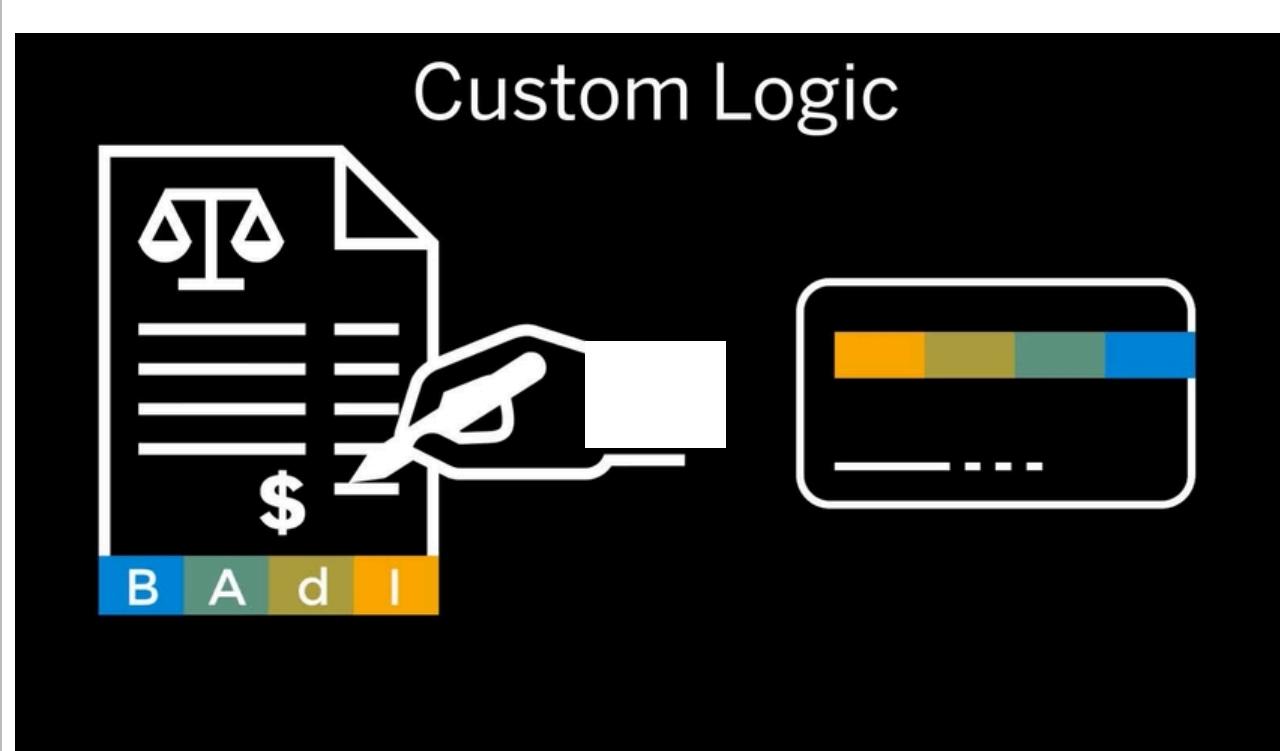
[Open this video in a new window](#)

- o Extending Bank Account Master Data



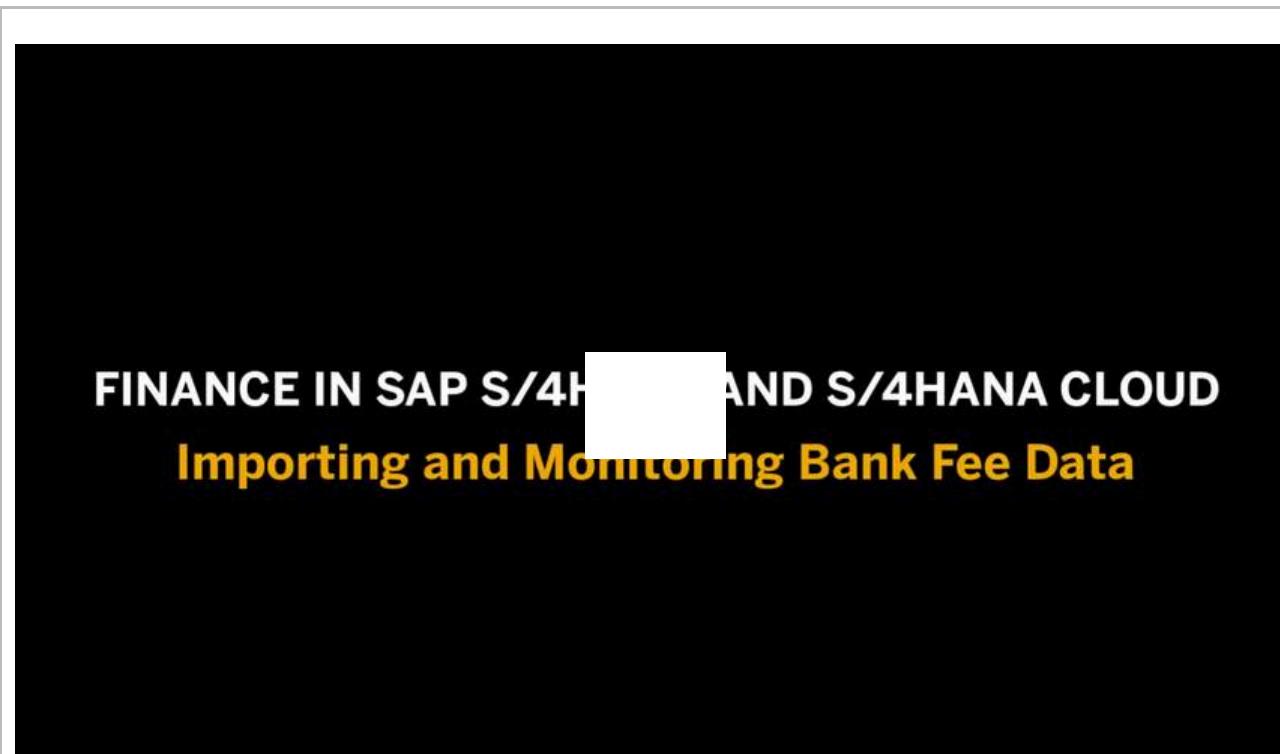
[Open this video in a new window](#)

- o Defining Custom Logic for Bank Account Master Data



[Open this video in a new window](#)

- o Importing and Monitoring Bank Fee Data



[Open this video in a new window](#)

- o Reviewing Bank Accounts



## FINANCE IN SAP S/4HANA AND S/4 HANA CLOUD

### Reviewing Bank Accounts

[Open this video in a new window](#)

- Cash Operations and Liquidity Management
  - Using Cash Flow Analyzer

## FINANCE IN SAP S/4HANA CLOUD

### Using the Cash Flow Analyzer

[Open this video in a new window](#)

- Releasing Cash Flows

## FINANCE IN SAP S/4HANA AND SAP S/4HANA CLOUD RELEASING CASH FLOWS

[Open this video in a new window](#)

- Liquidity Planning with SAP Analytics Cloud

## Liquidity Planning

SAP Analytics  
Cloud



SAP S/4HANA  
SAP S/4HANA  
Cloud

[Open this video in a new window](#)

## Related Information

- [Business Function: Cash and Liquidity Management](#)
- [Configuration Guide for SAP S/4HANA Finance for Cash Management](#)
- [Data Setup Guide for SAP S/4HANA Finance for Cash Management](#)
- [One Exposure from Operations](#)
- [Apps for Cash Management](#)

# Configuration Guide for SAP S/4HANA Finance for Cash Management

## Purpose and Target Groups

This guide describes the activities that you need to perform in order to use SAP S/4HANA Finance for cash management.

Application Component	FIN-FSCM-CLM
Target Groups (Roles)	Application Consultants

### i Note

For app-specific implementation information, such as business catalogs and OData services, search for the app in the [SAP Fiori Apps reference library](#).

## Prerequisites

You need to have fulfilled the following prerequisites before you can continue with the activities documented in this guide:

- You have installed SAP S/4HANA.

For more information, see the [Installation Guide](#) of SAP S/4HANA at [https://help.sap.com/viewer/p/SAP\\_S4HANA\\_ON-PREMISE](https://help.sap.com/viewer/p/SAP_S4HANA_ON-PREMISE).

- You have finished the migration.

For more information, see the [Conversion Guide](#) and [Simplification List](#) of SAP S/4HANA at [https://help.sap.com/viewer/p/SAP\\_S4HANA\\_ON-PREMISE](https://help.sap.com/viewer/p/SAP_S4HANA_ON-PREMISE).

You must migrate your house bank accounts before using SAP S/4HANA Finance for cash management. The following migration programs are available for you to migrate house bank accounts to bank account master data:

- Manual migration: Use the classic migration report (transaction code FCLM\_BAM\_MIGRATION).
 

For more information, see the program documentation.
- Automatic migration: Use central data migration activity [Start and Monitor Data Migration](#) with activity CM1.
 

For more information about migrating house bank accounts using this activity, see the documentation under [Conversion of Accounting to SAP S/4HANA](#) ➤ [Data Migration](#) ➤ [Documentation on Data Migration](#) ➤ [Migration of House Bank Accounts](#).

Automatic migration using [Start and Monitor Data Migration](#) is the default migration program for house bank accounts. If you want to switch to the migration report (transaction FCLM\_BAM\_MIGRATION), in the Customizing activity [Switch Migration Program for House Bank Accounts](#), select the [Manual Migration](#) option.

You can find this Customizing activity under [Conversion of Accounting to SAP S/4HANA](#) ➤ [Preparations and Migration of Customizing](#) ➤ [Preparations for Migration of House Bank Accounts](#).

- You have assigned roles to users.

For more information about security-relevant authorization objects, see the [Security Guide](#) of SAP S/4HANA at [https://help.sap.com/viewer/p/SAP\\_S4HANA\\_ON-PREMISE](https://help.sap.com/viewer/p/SAP_S4HANA_ON-PREMISE).

- You have switched on the business function FIN\_FSCM\_CLM and selected [Full Scope](#) for [Cash Management Scope](#) in the Customizing activity [Define Basic Settings](#).

You can find this Customizing activity under **Financial Supply Chain Management** **Cash and Liquidity Management** **General Settings** .

- You have implemented the Fiori apps you need.

You can find implementation details for apps in the SAP Fiori apps reference library. The SAP Fiori apps reference library is available here: <https://fioriappslibrary.hana.ondemand.com>

For more information about the overall SAP S/4HANA installation tasks as well as the implementation tasks specific to apps for Finance, see [SAP Fiori Overview](#).

- To use SAP CoPilot features, make sure you have configured the necessary settings.

For more information, see [Configuring SAP CoPilot for the Launchpad](#).

- Your user is configured with the required back-end authorization and front-end authorization.
- You have configured virus scan profiles for file uploads.

For more information, see the chapter “Virus Scanning in File Uploads” in the **Security Guide** of SAP S/4HANA at [https://help.sap.com/viewer/p/SAP\\_S4HANA\\_ON-PREMISE](https://help.sap.com/viewer/p/SAP_S4HANA_ON-PREMISE).

## Related Information

[Configuration for Liquidity Management](#)

[Configuration for Bank Relationship Management](#)

[Configuration for One Exposure from Operations](#)

[Configuration for Cash Operations](#)

[Configuration Tips for SAP Liquidity Planner Customers](#)

# Configuration for Bank Relationship Management

## Use

Bank Relationship Management enables cash managers to centrally manage the bank accounts in a company, for example, creating, modifying, closing bank accounts, as well as performing bank account reviews.

### Note

In addition to the configuration settings, please adapt your custom code, if there are any, to fit the new logic described in SAP Note [2870766](#).

## Related Information

[Bank Accounts](#)

[Precheck for the Document Attachment Function](#)

[Payment Approval Process](#)

[Approval Processes for Bank Account Management](#)

[Extensibility Options](#)

[ICF Services](#)

# Bank Accounts

## Number Ranges for Bank Account Technical IDs

In bank account master data, each bank account acquires a technical ID upon creation. To define the rules for the assignment of technical IDs, perform the following Customizing activities under **Financial Supply Chain Management** **Cash and Liquidity Management** **Bank Account Management** **Basic Settings**:

1. In the Customizing activity **Define Number Ranges for Bank Account Technical IDs**, define number ranges for bank account technical IDs.
2. In the Customizing activity **Define Settings for Bank Account Master Data**, on the **Bank Account Master Data Setting** screen, specify a number range for the **Tech. ID No. Rang** field.

## Number Ranges for Change Requests

The system automatically assigns a number to a change request once it is created. To configure the rules for assigning change request IDs, perform the following Customizing activities under **Financial Supply Chain Management** **Cash and Liquidity Management** **Bank Account Management** **Basic Settings**:

1. In the Customizing activity **Define Number Ranges for Workflow Change Requests**, define number ranges for change requests.
2. In the Customizing activity **Define Settings for Bank Account Master Data**, on the **Bank Account Master Data Setting** screen, specify a number range for the **Req. No. Rang** field.

## Bank Account Types

The bank account type is one of the attributes in the bank account master data. You can define different types of accounts to suit different business purposes. Account types can be used as an analysis dimension in reporting and planning. Using bank account types, you can also define different approval patterns for bank accounts of different types. For more information, see [Payment Approval Process](#).

To maintain bank account types, start the Customizing activity **Define Settings for Bank Account Master Data** and define account types on the **Account Type Definition** screen. You can find this activity under **Financial Supply Chain Management** **Cash and Liquidity Management** **Bank Account Management** **Basic Settings**.

## Bank Statement Import Methods

Bank statements can be imported using different methods, for example via SWIFT or by manual import. For each bank account, you can specify one of the defined methods as the **Import Method for End-of-Day Statements** and another as the **Import Method for Intra-Day Statements**.

To define the import methods, start the Customizing activity **Define Settings for Bank Account Master Data** and, on the **Define Import Methods for Bank Statements** screen, define method IDs and descriptions. You can find this activity under **Financial Supply Chain Management** **Cash and Liquidity Management** **Bank Account Management** **Basic Settings**.

## Related Information

[Bank Relationship Management](#)

## House Bank Accounts

Configuration settings for house bank accounts

## Payment Method Configuration

After you create or make changes to a house bank account, make sure that you update the settings for the house bank account in the Customizing activity [Set Up Bank Determination for Payment Transactions](#).

You can find this Customizing activity under [Financial Accounting \(New\)](#) [Accounts Receivable and Accounts Payable](#) [Business Transactions](#) [Outgoing Payments](#) [Automatic Outgoing Payments](#) [Payment Method/Bank Selection for Payment Program](#).

## Validation for House Bank Account Connectivity

For each bank account, you can create only one house bank account for the ID category [Central System: House Bank Account](#). The company code of the house bank account must be identical with the company code of the bank. This central house bank account can then be used in payment transactions as the unique representation of the bank account.

If you want to remove the error message and enable linking to multiple house bank accounts and linking to house bank accounts with a different company code, you can do so by changing the message type in the Customizing activity [Change Message Control](#).

For more information, see the implementation guide. You can find the Customizing activity under [Financial Supply Chain Management](#) [Cash and Liquidity Management](#) [Bank Account Management](#) [Basic Settings](#) [Change Message Control](#).

## Bank Correspondence

In some circumstances, companies need to communicate with banks in written format regarding important changes in their bank accounts, for example, the decision to close a bank account, or an update about authorized payment approvers. To assist companies in bank correspondence automation, SAP provides a business rule [Bank Correspondence](#) for generating email or PDF correspondence letters automatically. The following scenarios are supported:

- Correspondence for closing a bank account: When a bank account is set to the status [Closing Request Sent to Bank](#), an email is generated and sent to the defined contact persons with a PDF attachment.
- Correspondence for updating payment approvers: When the payment approvers are updated in the system, an email is generated and sent to the defined contact persons with a PDF attachment.

Before using the bank correspondence feature, you must make sure the settings for [Output Parameter Determination](#) are properly defined. You can also customize the templates as well as the output parameters according to your company's business needs. To do so, proceed as follows:

- Run the OPD transaction.
- Select [Bank Correspondence](#) from the [Show Rules for](#) drop down list.
- Select an entry from the [Determination Step](#) drop down list and then make the settings as described in the following table:

Determination Step	Explanation
<a href="#">Output Type</a>	<p>You define the output type to use for the app. An output type defines the output parameters for the bank correspondence letters.</p> <p>SAP provides a predefined output type <b>BANK_CORRESPONDENCE</b>. You can change the dispatch time if necessary.</p>

Determination Step	Explanation
Receiver	You can use the predefined receiver role EX or define other receiver roles for the defined output types.
Channel	You assign the output channels to use for the app. An output channel determines what kind of output is generated.  With the BANK_CORRESPONDENCE output type, you can define email or PDF output for different bank keys and account types.
Printer Settings	You create a print queue to manage the printing of documents.  A default print queue, LP01, is delivered by SAP. However, SAP recommends that you create your own print queue so that your documents are not mixed with others.
Email Recipient	The system determines the email recipient in the following order: <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. If an email recipient is specified in this step, send the email to the defined email address.</li> <li>b. If the setting is empty here, send the email to the bank account contact person.</li> <li>c. If the bank account contact person is not defined, send the email to the contact person of the bank.</li> </ol>
Email Settings	In the <b>Sender Email</b> field, specify the email address for sending the bank correspondence letters.  You can use self-defined templates when necessary.
Form Template	You can use self-defined templates when necessary.
Output Relevance	Make sure the output relevance indicator is set as true.

4. Choose **Activate** to save and activate your changes.

## See Also

- For more information on how to customize the business rule, see the Implementation Guide of the **Define Rules for Output Determination** Customizing activity. You can find it in Customizing under **Cross-Application Components** **Output Control**.
- For information on how to determine the form master template, see the Implementation Guide of the **Define Rules for Determination of Master Form Template** Customizing activity. You can find it in Customizing under **Cross-Application Components** **Output Control**.
- For more information about the output control and how to set it up, see [SAP S/4HANA Output Control](#) and [Setup and Configuration of SAP S/4HANA Output Control](#).

## Contact Persons for Banks and Bank Accounts

Learn how to define contact persons for banks and bank accounts.

## Bank Contact Persons

Bank contact persons are external to the company. They are represented by business partners with the BP role BUP001 and assigned under the corresponding risk business partners that represent banks.

To enable the **Manage Contact Person** button for defining and assigning contact persons in the **Manage Banks** app, please apply SAP Note [2963603](#).

## Bank Account Contact Persons

In the **Manage Bank Accounts** app, you can define internal contact persons for bank accounts by specifying the **Contact Person** and **Bank Account Supervisor** fields on the **Bank Relationship** tab.

To enable the value help for the two fields, define the relevant system users as the employee type of business users. To do so, create business partners with the role category BUP003 for the system users, and then assign the system users to the business partners. For more information about how to create business users, see the SAP Note [2570961](#).

If you do not enable the value help for the two fields, you can still define the contact persons by manually entering the system user ID.

## Precheck for the Document Attachment Function

### Context

You are recommended to perform a precheck on the predefined attachment document type BAM before you go live. To do so, proceed as follows:

### Procedure

1. Run transaction CL03.
2. Check if the following class exists in your system:
  - **Class:** SAP\_FCLM\_BAM\_DOC
  - **Class Type:** 017

If the class does not exist, proceed to the following step.

3. Start transaction SE38 and then run the report FCLM\_BRM\_GENERATE\_CLASS\_CHAR.

The report helps you generate the class and characteristics that are required when the document type BAM is used.

For more information about how to implement Documentation Management for bank account management, see the attached documents in SAP Note [2332327](#).

## Approval Processes for Bank Account Management

For risk control reasons, most companies implement approval processes for master data management. For bank account management, different bank account control modes are available for you to configure the approval processes that best suit your business needs and safeguard your bank account master data.

### i Note

If you use SAP NetWeaver Business Client (NWBC) as the user interface, dual control and two-person verification are not supported.

For information about the feature differences between the different bank account control modes, see [Using Approval Processes for Bank Account Management](#).

## Configuration for Bank Account Control Modes

With the following bank account control modes, you can implement an approval process for managing the master data and lifecycle of your bank accounts:

- [Workflow](#)
- [Dual Control](#)
- [Two-Person Verification](#)

You can use the following Customizing activities to define the bank account control modes:

- **Define Basic Settings:** In this Customizing activity, you can specify a general control mode for your system.
- **Define Settings for Bank Account Contract Types:** In this Customizing activity, you can define a control mode for specific company codes, account types, and bank account contract types. You can also define specific control modes for bank account status changes and actions performed on bank accounts. The settings defined in this configuration activity override the general setting for bank account control mode defined in the **Define Basic Settings** Customizing activity.

## Related Information

[Configuration for Workflows](#)

[Configuration for Dual Control](#)

## Configuration for Workflows

### Context

To use SAP Business Workflow for bank account management, follow the steps below to make the necessary settings:

### Procedure

1. To enable the workflow function for bank account management, start the Customizing activity **Define Basic Settings** and set the **Workflow** indicator for **Bank Account Control Mode**. You can find this Customizing activity in Customizing under **Financial Supply Chain Management** **Cash and Liquidity Management** **General Settings** **Define Basic Settings**.
2. To activate a workflow scenario or template that you want to use for bank account management, activate the corresponding event type linkage in the Customizing activity **Maintain the Event Type Linkage for Triggering Workflow Processes** under **Financial Supply Chain Management** **Cash and Liquidity Management** **Bank Account Management**.
  - By default, the linkage for the predefined [workflow scenario WS78500050](#) (flexible workflow) is activated. If you choose to use this scenario, make sure the linkage for WS74300043 is not activated.
  - If you want to use the [workflow template WS74300043](#) (classic workflow), activate the linkage for WS74300043.

If you have created a new workflow template by copying the workflow template WS74300043, note down the new workflow template ID. In this activity, add a new entry for the new workflow template and activate it. Make sure the

linkage for WS74300043 is not activated.

### i Note

The classic workflow, for example the workflow template WS74300043, is supported only with the SAP NetWeaver Business Client (NWBC) user interfaces for bank account management. To implement workflow for the **Manage Bank Accounts** Fiori app, use the flexible workflow scenario WS78500050.

### i Note

Make sure there is only one linkage activated for the event **Created** in BOR object **FCLM\_CR**. If you have activated both the linkages for WS74300043 and WS78500050, WS74300043 is used.

3. Define approvers for your workflow processes. Depending the workflow template you are using, you can choose either of the following ways:

- [Using responsibility rules to define approvers](#): This option applies to workflow template WS74300043 and workflow scenario WS78500050.
- [Using teams and functions to define approvers](#): This option applies only to workflow scenario WS78500050.

4. (Optional) You can define the workflow process according to your own business requirements, to do so, follow the instructions in [Defining Your Own Workflows](#).

5. For the purpose of changing a payment approver for multiple bank accounts simultaneously, the system generates a mass change request when the workflow is enabled. To configure this mass change request, go to the Customizing activity **Define Basic Settings** and define a grouping option for **Change Request Grouping**. You can find this Customizing activity under ► **Financial Supply Chain Management** ► **Cash and Liquidity Management** ► **General Settings** ▶.

6. When you make changes to the bank account master data, only fields that are defined as sensitive fields can trigger the workflow process. To define sensitive fields, specify the fields in the Customizing activity **Define Settings for Bank Account Master Data** under ► **Financial Supply Chain Management** ► **Cash and Liquidity Management** ► **Bank Account Management** ► **Basic Settings** ▶. On the **Sensitive Fields for Modification Process** screen, define the fields that trigger a workflow process when modified.

7. To enable push notifications in the SAP Fiori launchpad, make the required settings as instructed in [Enabling Notifications in the Launchpad](#).

## Using Responsibility Rules to Define Approvers

You can use responsibility rules to define approvers for workflow template WS78500043 and workflow scenario WS78500050. To do so, proceed as follows:

1. Define the organization and staffing for your company.

- To create new organization and staffing, use transaction PPOCE.
- To change the existing organization and staffing, use transaction PP0MW.

For more information, see the documentation in the transaction by choosing ► **Help** ► **Application Help** ▶.

2. To determine the agent assignment in workflows, define rules using the function **Maintain Rule** (transaction PFAC)

To define your own rules, you must include the following elements with the exact technical names:

- **Company Code** (technical name: AGENTDET\_BUKRS)
- **Account Type** (technical name: AGENTDET\_ACCTTYPE)

To work with workflow template 74300049 FCLM\_AMD\_MM (workflow for changing a payment approver in multiple bank accounts), set the above two elements to # so as to include all the company codes and account types. The workflow is for changing multiple bank accounts at the same time.

3. To define responsibilities for the workflow rules used in your workflow processes, perform the Customizing activity **Define Responsibilities for Rules Used in Workflow Steps** under **Financial Supply Chain Management > Cash and Liquidity Management > Bank Account Management**.

### **i Note**

If the agent assignment does not work in accordance with what you have defined in the responsibilities, check the agent assignment settings of the workflow tasks.

To do so, proceed as follows:

- a. In transaction PFTC, specify the workflow task that you want to check.
- b. From the menu bar, choose **Additional Data > Agent Assignment > Maintain**.
- c. Choose the **Attributes** button.
- d. Select **General Task** and then choose **Transfer**.

## Using Teams and Functions to Define Approvers

Before you define a multiple-step workflow, there must be a function available for the approvers of each step. A functions controls whether an employee has the authorization to approve a bank account change request for a certain step. You can then set up teams by assigning functions to employees.

To define functions and teams for bank account management workflows, do the following :

### Defining Functions and Function Profiles

1. In transaction SPR0, go to **Cross-Application Components > General Application Functions > Responsibility Management > Functions > Define Functions**.
2. In the **Define Functions** Customizing activity, create functions by specifying a technical name and a short description. Depending on the approver roles you need, you can create one or more functions. For example, you can create functions for cash specialists, cash managers, and key users respectively.
3. In the **Define Function Profiles** Customizing activity, create a function profile by specifying a technical name and a short description.
4. Select the function profile, and then double click on the **Function Profile to Function Mapping** view
5. Click the **New Entries** button to assign the functions that you just created to the function profile.

### **i Note**

You can assign a function to only one function profile.

6. Go to **Cross-Application Components > General Application Functions > Responsibility Management > Teams and Responsibilities > Map Function Profiles to Standard Team Category**.
7. In the **Map Function Profiles to Standard Team Category** Customizing activity, choose **New Entries** to map your function profile to the predefined team category FCLM0.
8. In the **Define Team Types** Customizing activity, choose **New Entries** to define a team type for team category FCLM0.

### Defining Teams and Responsibilities

After functions are created, you can then set up teams to assign functions to employees. A function can be used in multiple teams and an employee can be assigned with multiple functions. To do so, proceed as follows:

### i Note

Before you carry out the following steps, make sure that all system users (SU01 users) have been converted into business users. For more information, see SAP Note [2570961](#).

1. In the **Manage Teams and Responsibilities** app, create a new team.
2. Specify the following information for the team:
  - o Team name
  - o Team description
  - o Team status: Select **Ready** when you want to use the team
  - o Team type: Select the team type you created in the **Define Team Types** Customizing activity
3. Add users to the team.
4. Assign one or more functions to the users.
5. (Optional) You can restrict the account types and company codes in the **Responsibility Definitions** section so that the team members can only receive and approve the requests from the defined account types and company codes.

## Defining Your Own Workflows

Depending on the workflow scenario or template you use, different options are available to you for defining new workflow processes according to your business needs.

## Using Workflow Scenario 78500050

You can use the **Manage Workflows - For Bank Accounts** app to define your own workflow templates, such as by adding workflow steps, assigning responsibility rules to workflow steps, or defining the start action for triggering the workflow. To do so, proceed as follows:

1. In the **Manage Workflows - For Bank Accounts** app, copy the predefined workflow to create a new one.
2. In the **Header** area, specify a name for the workflow.
3. (Optional) In the **Properties** area, specify a description and the validity period for the workflow.
4. (Optional) In the **Preconditions** area, define the preconditions for starting this workflow.
5. In the **Step Sequence** area, define the approval steps for completing this workflow.
6. For each step, specify values for the following fields:
  - o Name of the step
  - o Type:
    - To create a step that requires approvers, select type **Process Request of Changing Bank Accounts**.
    - To create a step that is automatically approved, select type **Automatically Approve Request of Changing Bank Accounts**.

- (Optional) Step properties: Assign field status groups for the display mode and the edit mode of this step.

Before you assign field status groups here, you must have defined field status groups in the Customizing activity **Manage Field Status Groups**. You can find it in Customizing under **Financial Supply Chain Management > Cash and Liquidity Management > Bank Account Management**.

Apart from this Customizing activity, you can also use the BAdI **Field Status Control for Bank Accounts in Workflow Processes** to control the field statuses in workflow processes. Please note that if you have implemented this BAdI, the BAdI logic overrides the field status groups defined with the workflow templates.

- Recipients: Depending on the way you define workflow approvers, proceed as follows:

- If you use responsibility rules, select a rule.
- If you use teams and functions, select the function that you defined for approving bank account changes.

A function is associated with a team where specified employees are authorized to approve bank account changes.

- If the step is to be automatically approved, skip this setting.

- You can define that a step is completed by any or all employees of the recipient group.
- Preconditions: Specify one or more conditions to start a workflow step.
- Exception handling: Specify how to handle rejections. You can specify, for example, that the workflow ends if an approver rejects the request.

## Using Workflow Template 74300043

You can use transaction SWDD to define your own workflow templates by copying this workflow template. In your own workflow template, you can add workflow steps and assign responsibility rules to workflow steps.

For more information, see [SAP Business Workflow/WebFlow](#).

## Predefined Workflows

### Context

#### Business Object Repository Object

SAP predefines a Business Object Repository (BOR) object FCLM\_CR for bank account management. In this object, the following two events are defined:

- CREATED: This method is used to trigger the workflow by creating a change request.
- PROCESSED: Dialog step in approval process which was processed.

#### Rules

- 74300006 FCLM\_CASHMGR

The rule assigns a cash manager as the agent.

Cash managers are authorized to approve or reject a change request of creating, changing, or closing bank accounts.

- 74300007 FCLM\_CASHOPER

The rule assigns a cash specialist as the agent.

Cash specialists work under cash managers' supervision and is responsible for opening, changing, and closing bank accounts.

- 74300008 FCLM\_CASHSYSCOLL

The rule assigns a key user as the agent.

Key users are responsible for making necessary configuration settings for bank accounts and house bank accounts.

- 74300013 FCLM\_REVWOR

This is a fixed rule, therefore you cannot define responsibility for this rule.

The rule retrieves the contact persons defined in the bank account master data from the **Contact Person** field (on the **Bank Relationship** tab, under the **Internal Contact Persons** section).

## Predefined Workflows

The following predefined workflow templates are available:

- [Workflow Scenario 78500050](#) (default workflow)
- [Workflow Template 74300043](#)

# Workflow Scenario 78500050

## Use

This workflow scenario is intended for customers who want to use the flexible workflow for bank account management. With this workflow scenario, you can use the following apps to manage your workflow requests:

- [My Inbox - For Bank Accounts](#)
- [My Sent Requests](#)

## Prerequisites

To enable the **My Inbox - For Bank Accounts** app to display workitems that are generated using this workflow scenario, configure the following settings:

1. In Customizing, go to **SAP NetWeaver** **Gateway Service Enablement** **Content** **Task Gateway** **Task Gateway Service** **Scenario Definition**.
2. In the **Scenario Definition** view, choose **New Entries**.
3. In the new entry, specify the following and then save your entry:
  - **Scenario Identifier:** FCLM\_BAM\_APPR
  - **Scenario Display Name:** Workitem for Bank Account
  - **Technical Service Name:** /IWPGW/TASKPROCESSING
  - **Version:** 2
4. Select the entry and then double click on the **Task Definition for Scenario** view.

## 5. Choose **New Entries** to add your systems to this scenario.

For each system, specify the following:

- **SAP system alias:** the system alias
- **Task Type:** TS78500044\_WS78500050\_0000000010

## Customizing Options

You can define your own workflow template for this workflow scenario. To do so, copy the predefined workflow template and create a new one by using the [Manage Workflows - For Bank Accounts](#) app.

## Business Scenarios

In this workflow scenario, the following workflows are defined for the typical business scenarios of opening, modifying, and closing bank accounts:

- Workflow for opening a new bank account
- Workflow for copying a bank account to create a new one
- Workflow for modifying a bank account
- Workflow for changing a payment approver in multiple accounts
- Workflow for closing a bank account
- Workflow for reopening a closed bank account

In the above business scenarios, the following process is defined:

1. A cash specialist creates a new bank account or performs an action on an existing bank account in the system.

The system triggers a change request and sends the information to a cash manager for approval.

2. After evaluating the request, the cash manager can either approve or reject the request.

3. Once the cash manager approves the request, the changes to the bank account become effective and the bank account is set with status **Active**.

## Related Information

[Configuration for Workflows](#)

## Standard Task 78500044 FCLM\_APPR

This information is very technical, therefore you only need to read it if you want to understand the technical details of the standard task or you want to enhance the standard task.

Standard task	78500044
Abbreviation	FCLM_APPR
Name	Decision task to maintain bank account

## Method Referenced, Properties

- Object type: DECISION
- Method: PROCESS
- Properties: Object method with dialog

## Agent Assignment

The agent assignment depends on the workflow template in use.

## Important Elements

The table below explains the important elements in the task container:

Technical Name	Description	Properties	Information
CHANGE_REQUEST	Change Request	Import, Export	This element stores the general data of change requests in database table FCLM_BAM_REQUEST.
TOTAL_STEP	Total Steps	Import	This element stores the total number of steps.
STEP_NAME	Step Name	Import	This element stores the name of the step
DESP_0TR_ALIAS	Step Description	Import	This element stores the OTR text alias string that contains the description text for the current step.

## Workflow Template 74300043

### Use

This workflow template is intended only for customers who use SAP NetWeaver Business Client (NWBC) as the user interface for bank account management. If you want to implement workflow processes for the [Manage Bank Accounts](#) Fiori app, please use the workflow template 78500050.

### Extensibility Options

To extend the workflows defined by this workflow template, you can use the SAP GUI transaction SWDD.

### Workflow Scenarios

In this workflow template, the following sub-workflows are defined for the typical business scenarios for opening, modifying, and closing, and reviewing bank accounts:

- 74300047 FCLM\_AMD\_OP (workflow for opening a new bank account)

The following process is defined with this template:

- 1. A cash specialist creates a bank account in the system.

The system triggers a change request and sends the information to a cash manager for approval.

- 2. After evaluating the request, the cash manager can either approve or reject the request.

- 3. If the cash manager approves the request, the cash specialist opens the bank account at the bank and maintains the necessary information for the bank account in the system, for example, the bank account number and the IBAN number.

If the bank account is opened in a bank that does not exist in the system, the cash specialist first creates the bank in the system.

- 4. A key user finishes the necessary configuration, for example, by creating house bank accounts and assigning these accounts to the newly created bank account.

If the corresponding general ledger accounts are not yet available, the key user first creates the general ledger accounts.

- 74300048 FCLM\_AMD\_MD (workflow for modifying a bank account)

The following process is defined with this template:

- 1. A cash specialist modifies a bank account in the system.

The system triggers a change request and sends the information to a cash manager for approval.

- 2. After evaluating the change request, the cash managers can either approve or reject the request.

- 3. If the cash manager approves the request, the cash specialist notifies the bank about making the necessary changes. After the cash specialist confirms that the changes have taken effect at the bank, he or she confirms the corresponding step in the system.

The changes are updated to the bank account master data.

- 4. A key user updates the configuration if necessary.

For example, if a new currency has been added, the key user creates a house bank account for the new currency and then assigns the house bank account to the bank account.

- 74300049 FCLM\_AMD\_MM (workflow for changing a payment approver in multiple accounts)

The process defined with this template is the same as that defined for the workflow template 74300048 FCLM\_AMD\_MD.

- 74300050 FCLM\_AMD\_CL (workflow for closing a bank account)

The following process is defined with this template:

- 1. A cash specialist closes a bank account in the bank account master data.

The system triggers a change request and sends the information to a cash manager for approval.

- 2. After evaluating the change request, the cash manager can either approve or reject the request.

- 3. If the cash manager approves the request, the cash specialist notifies the bank about closing the bank account. After the account is closed at the bank, the cash specialist confirms corresponding the step in the system.

- 4. A key user finishes the necessary configuration.

For example, the key user can mark the related house bank accounts as closed in their descriptions to distinguish them from other house bank accounts that are still in use.

- Workflow template 01800002 FCLM\_BAM\_R0 (workflow for reopening a closed bank account)

The following process is defined with this template:

1. A cash specialist reopens a closed bank account in the system.  
The system triggers a change request and sends the information to a cash manager for approval.
2. After evaluating the request, the cash manager can either approve or reject the request.
3. If the cash manager approves the request, the bank account is set back to status **Active** in the system.

## Standard Task 74300047 FCLM\_DEC

This information is very technical, you only need to read it if you want to understand the technical details of the standard task or you want to enhance the standard task.

Standard task	74300047
Abbreviation	FCLM_DEC
Name	Bank Account Management: Decision

## Method Referenced, Properties

- Object type:FCLM\_CR
- Method: PROCESS (Process)
- Properties: Object method with dialog

## Agent Assignment

The agent assignment depends on the workflow template in use.

## Important Elements

The table below explains the important elements in the task container:

Technical Name	Description	Properties	Information
INDICATOR_APPROVE	Approve Indicator	Import, Export	This element is used for the decision of the current step. When the step is approved, the element is set to X
CHANGE_REQUEST	Change Request	Import, Export, Mandatory	This element stores the general data of change requests in database table FCLM_BAM_REQUEST.
APPROVE_STATUS	Approved Status	Import, Mandatory	This element stores the next status when the current step is approved.
REJECT_STATUS	Rejected Status	Import, Mandatory	This element stores the next status when the current step is

Technical Name	Description	Properties	Information
			rejected
DESP_OTR_ALIAS	Step Description	Import	This element stores the OTR text alias string that contains the description text for the current step.
AGENTDET_BUKRS	Company Code	Import	This element stores the company code used for agent determination.
AGENTDET_ACCTYPE	Account Type	Import	This element stores the account type used for agent determination.
NEXT_STEP	Next Step	Import	This element stores the next step, so that the system can adjust the UI display to the next step accordingly, once the current step is completed.
PREV_STEP	Previous Step	Import	This element stores the previous step so that the system can adjust the UI display to the previous step accordingly, once the current step is rejected.

## Configuration for Dual Control

To implement dual control for bank account management, start the Customizing activity **Define Basic Settings** and set the **Dual Control** indicator for **Bank Account Control Mode**.

### i Note

The dual control mode is only available to customers who have implemented the SAP Fiori app **Manage Bank Accounts**. If you use SAP NetWeaver Business Client (NWBC) as the user interface and specify **Dual Control** as the activation mode, the setting here is ignored and your bank accounts are activated directly.

You can find this Customizing activity in Customizing under **Financial Supply Chain Management** **Cash and Liquidity Management** **General Settings** **Define Basic Settings** .

## Configuring Bank Account Origination Process Based on Bank Account Contract Types

Learn more about the bank account origination process.

After you have enabled the bank account contract type, you can implement a bank account origination process for certain bank account contract types and company codes to enable a fine-grained process for opening new bank accounts.

## Prerequisites

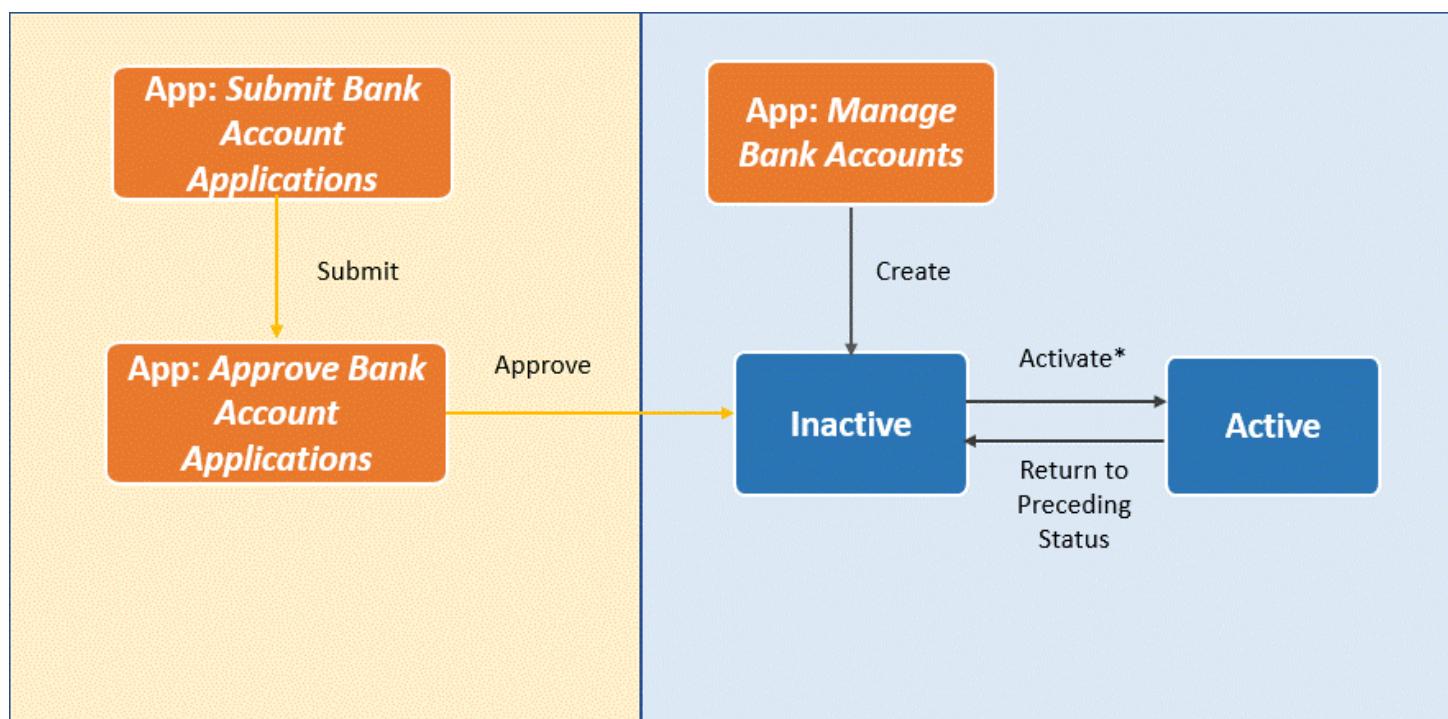
You have made the following settings in Customizing under **Financial Supply Chain Management** **Cash and Liquidity Management**:

1. In the Customizing activity **Define Basic Settings**, set the **Enable Bank Account Contract Type** option.
2. In the Customizing activity **Define Basic Settings**, the **Bank Account Control Mode** field is set as **Direct Change**, **Two-Person Verification**, or **Workflow**.
3. In the Customizing activity **Define Settings for Bank Account Master Data**, specify a bank account contract type for each account type.

## Default Opening Process for Bank Accounts

When the bank account contract type is enabled but the bank account origination process is **not** enabled in the Customizing activity **Define Settings for Bank Account Contract Types**, the default opening process is used.

The diagram below shows the default process for opening a bank account when the bank account contract type is enabled but the bank account origination process is **not** enabled.

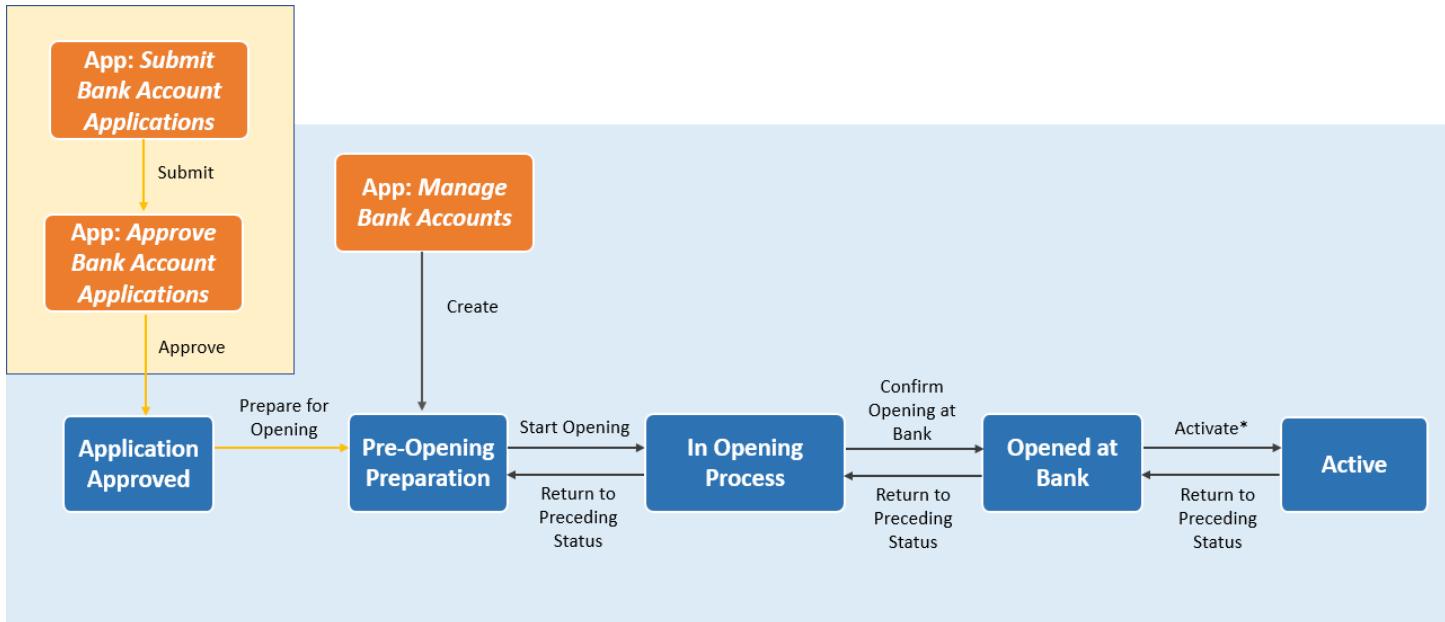


### i Note

- The yellow arrow suggests that the status change takes effect immediately.
- The black arrow indicates that the status change may trigger an approval process, dependent on the setting for the bank account control mode.
- The **Activate** button may vary depending on the bank account control mode that is used.

## Bank Account Origination Process

The diagram below shows the bank account origination process for opening a bank account.



## i Note

- The yellow arrow suggests that the status change takes effect immediately.
- The black arrow indicates that the status change may trigger an approval process, dependent on the setting for the bank account control mode.
- The **Activate** button may vary depending on the bank account control mode that is used.

## Configuration for the Bank Account Origination Process

To enable the bank account origination process, proceed as follows:

- In the Customizing activity **Define Settings for Bank Account Contract Types**, go to **Enable Bank Account Origination Process**.
- Define the company codes and bank account contract types for which you want to enable the bank account origination process.
- In **Configure Statuses and Bank Account Control Modes**, define the statuses you would like to use in the bank account origination process and the control modes that apply for status changes.

The following configuration options are available for the bank account origination process. You can define these settings as needed:

- Field status control for bank accounts in the origination process:

In the Customizing activity **Manage Field Status Groups**, you can define field statuses for bank accounts in the origination process by assigning field status groups in the **Assign Field Status Grps to Origination Process** view.

- Sensitive fields for the bank account origination process:

In the Customizing activity **Define Settings for Bank Account Master Data**, you can define sensitive fields for bank accounts that have the **Opened at Bank** status in the origination process.

- Manual creation of bank accounts:

In the Customizing activity **Define Settings for Bank Account Contract Types**, you can disable the manual creation of bank accounts in the **Manage Bank Accounts** app so that the creation of new bank accounts must follow the bank account application process.

# Closing Processes Based on Bank Account Contract Types

After you have enabled the bank account contract type, you can configure different bank account closing processes for different types of bank account using the Customizing activity **Define Settings for Bank Account Contract Types**.

## Prerequisites

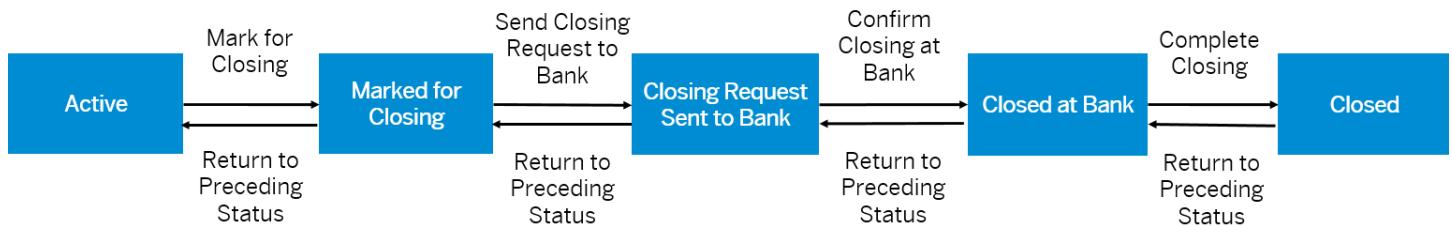
You have made the following settings in Customizing under **Financial Supply Chain Management > Cash and Liquidity Management**:

1. In the Customizing activity **Define Basic Settings**, set the **Enable Bank Account Contract Type** option.
2. In the Customizing activity **Define Basic Settings**, the **Bank Account Control Mode** field is set as **Direct Change, Two-Person Verification**, or **Workflow**.
3. In the Customizing activity **Define Settings for Bank Account Master Data**, specify a bank account contract type for each account type.

## Default Closing Process for Bank Accounts

If you do not make any configuration settings in the Customizing activity **Define Settings for Bank Account Contract Types**, the default closing process is used. For bank account status changes, the system uses the bank account control mode defined in the Customizing activity **Define Basic Settings**.

The diagram below shows the default process for closing a bank account when the bank account contract type is enabled.



## How to Configure Closing Processes for Bank Accounts

You can configure closing processes for bank accounts by defining the steps required for closing a certain type of bank account and defining how each status change is handled, for example, whether a workflow is triggered or whether approval is not required.

To do so, proceed as follows:

1. Open the Customizing activity **Define Settings for Bank Account Contract Types**.
2. Define a group of bank accounts that you want to configure the closing process for. You can use the following attributes to specify a certain group of bank accounts. The combinations are ranked by priority from high to low:
  - a. Contract type + account type + company code
  - b. Contract type + account type
  - c. Contract type
3. For the group of bank accounts, create entries to specify whether a status is required and how the status change is handled.

SAP has predefined the following set of statuses for the bank account lifecycle:

- Mandatory statuses: **Inactive**, **Active**, **Closed**
- Optional statuses: **Marked for Closing**, **Closing Request Sent to Bank**, **Closed at Bank**

Note the following:

- Mandatory statuses are always enabled, regardless of whether there is an entry defined for them. You only need to create an entry for these statuses when you want to specify a bank account control mode different from the control mode defined in the Customizing activity **Define Basic Settings**.
- Optional statuses are enabled by default. If you want to disable an optional status or specify a bank account control mode different from the control mode defined in the Customizing activity **Define Basic Settings**, create an entry for the status.
- For each entry, you define a control mode for the bank account status change. When you are going forward in a bank account lifecycle, the control mode defined with the source status is considered. When you are going backward in the bank account lifecycle, the control mode defined with the target status is considered.

4. Choose the **Simulate** button to review your configuration.

It displays the statuses and processes defined for managing bank account status changes.

## Configuration Example

You have enabled the bank account contract type, and the control mode defined in the **Define Basic Settings** activity is **Workflow**. Now you want to define a one-step closing process for bank accounts with the contract type **Technical Account**, whereas a two-step closing process is applied if the account type is AA.

You create the following entries in the activity:

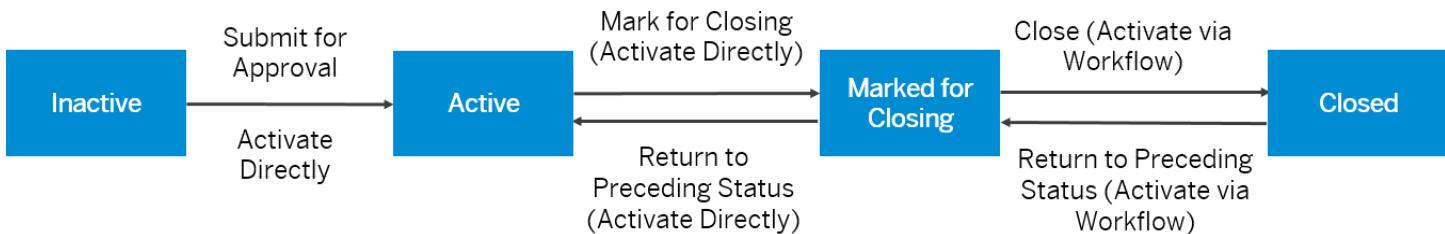
Configuration Example

Contract Type	Account Type	Company Code	Status	Enable Status	Control Mode
Technical Account			Active	Yes	Direct Change
Technical Account			Marked for Closing	No	
Technical Account			Closing Request Sent to Bank	No	
Technical Account			Closed at Bank	No	
Technical Account	AA		Inactive	Yes	Direct Change
Technical Account	AA		Active	Yes	Direct Change
Technical Account	AA		Marked for Closing	Yes	Workflow
Technical Account	AA		Closing Request Sent to Bank	No	
Technical Account	AA		Closed at Bank	No	

Consequently, the lifecycle of bank account A (contract type **Technical Account**, account type BB) is as follows:



The lifecycle of bank account A (contract type **Technical Account**, account type AA) is as follows:



## Situation Handling Scenarios

### Bank Account Revisions to Be Activated

In the dual control mode, you can configure a situation type to inform a specific group of users about when bank account revisions are pending activation for a certain number of days.

To do so, proceed as follows:

1. Open the [Manage Situation Types](#) app.
2. Search for the `FIN_BANKACCOUNTREVT0BEPROCESSED` template.
3. Select the template, and then choose the [Copy](#) button to copy the template to a new situation type.
4. In the new situation type, define the following settings according to your needs:
  - o **Conditions:** Define the conditions for triggering the notification. For example, you can define the account type, company code, and a pending period for triggering the situation (in the [Not Processed For \(Days\)](#) field).  
For the dual control scenario, the [Revision Status](#) needs to be kept as **02**.
  - o **Notification Details:** Define the notification message. You can choose to aggregate notifications and resend notifications each day.
  - o **Situation Monitor:** Define whether you want to monitor this situation type in the [Monitor Situations](#) app.  
For more information, see [Monitor Situations](#).
  - o **Batch Job Scheduling:** Schedule a time for running the batch job.
  - o **Manage Responsibilities:** Define recipients for notifications. You can use either the default team or the default responsibility rule, or both.
    - **Responsibility by Teams:** Add the default team **Bank Account Management** and select the [Function for Dual Control Situation](#) option.  
You can define users for this team in the [Manage Teams and Responsibilities](#) app. For more information, see [Manage Teams and Responsibilities](#).
    - **Responsibility Rules:** Add the default rule **Authorized User for Activating Revision**.

With this rule, users who have roles that contain the writing authorizations of the business catalog **SAP\_CMD\_BC\_BP\_DISP\_PC** (**Master Data - Business Partner Display**) and **SAP\_FIN\_BC\_CM\_BAM\_BASIC\_PC** (**Cash Management - Bank Accounts Management Basic**) can receive the notifications and activate bank account revisions.

5. Save and enable the situation type.

## House Bank Account to Be Checked (Deprecated)

**Technical Name:** FIN\_CLOSEDACCOUNTINPAYCONFIG

**Delivered for App:** [Manage Bank Accounts](#)

[Situation Template](#) for situation handling that you use to inform specific members in your organization that a house bank account is still used in payment configuration while its linked bank account is already closed.

For more information, see [Situation Handling](#) and [Key Concepts in Situation Handling](#).

### Business Value

You can use this standard template for the following situation: You want your configuration experts to be informed automatically when a bank account is closed but its house bank accounts are still defined in payment configuration settings.

After receiving the notification, configuration experts can then check the relevant house bank account in the **Set Up Bank Determination for Payment Transactions** Customizing activity and decide whether to keep or remove the setting for this house bank account.

The Customizing activity can be found under [Financial Accounting \(New\)](#) [Accounts Receivable and Accounts Payable](#) [Business Transactions](#) [Outgoing Payments](#) [Automatic Outgoing Payments](#) [Payment Method/Bank Selection for Payment Program](#)

### Default Settings

In the following sections, you find information about how this standard template for situation handling is predefined: The fundamental technical settings such as the trigger object and the trigger type, and the settings that you can edit and need to configure in the [Manage Situation Types](#) app when you copy the standard template to create your own ready-to-use situation type.

#### Situation Trigger and Anchor Object

The situation is triggered when a bank account is closed in the [Manage Bank Accounts](#) app. This event initiates the processing of the conditions that check for its linked house bank accounts in the **Set Up Bank Determination for Payment Transactions** Customizing activity.

#### Conditions

[Conditions](#) belong to the core settings of the [Situation Type](#) because they define the circumstances under which the situation occurs.

The condition in this template defines that a situation is created with the status **Open** and that a notification is sent when the system detects that a house bank account of a closed bank account is still defined in the **Set Up Bank Determination for Payment Transactions** Customizing activity. Filter parameters are available for you to restrict the use of the situation type for certain bank account types and company codes.

## Situation Display

When a [Situation Instance](#) occurs, users are informed through different channels. You can change all predefined texts in this section, as well as other display settings for notifications.

For more information, see [Situation Display](#).

## Notification Recipients

In this section, you need to define the recipients for the notifications that are sent when a situation instance is triggered. For situations based on this template, you can define your notification recipients in the [Manage Teams and Responsibilities](#) app.

To do so, add the default team **Bank Account Management** and select the **Check house bank account in payment configuration** option.

## Situation Monitoring

Monitoring (the tracking of situation instances) is not enabled by default. You need to enable **Monitor Instances** if you want to use the [Monitor Situations](#) app.

### i Note

When you copy the template and adapt it to your needs in the [Manage Situation Types](#) app, you can also change all available text elements. After making the changes in the original language, do not forget to translate these changes into the other languages that you want to use. The standard template comes with translations that can be changed directly when you copy the template. For more information, see [Translate Situation Types](#).

# Email Notification Templates

How to customize email notification templates for bank account management.

SAP has predefined email notification templates for bank account management processes. You can customize these template according to your specific requirements.

## Email Notification Templates

The table below lists the predefined email templates for bank account management.

Scenario	Send Email When	Recipient	Template ID
Flexible Workflow	A work item has been triggered. If you have defined several workflow steps in a template, a work item will be triggered for each workflow step when the define condition is met.	Authorized approvers  Approvers are defined in the <a href="#">Manage Workflows - For Bank Accounts</a> app.	You can use either of the following templates: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• SWF_CRT_NOTIFY_RECIPIENTS</li> <li>• FCLM_BAM_REQ_DEADLINE_EMAIL</li> </ul> Compared to the template above, this template provides a URL link to the Fiori app <a href="#">My Inbox - For Bank Accounts</a> in email notifications. In addition, you can define a deadline for each workflow step for triggering the email notifications.  For more information on how to use this template, see the section “Implement Email Template <a href="#">FCLM_BAM_REQ_DEADLINE_EMAIL</a> ”

Scenario	Send Email When	Recipient	Template ID
	The change request has been approved by the last approver.	Change requester	FCLM_BAM_REQ_APPROVED_EMAIL
	An approver has rejected the change request.	Change requester	FCLM_BAM_REQ_REJECTED_EMAIL
Dual Control	A bank account has been submitted for activation.	Authorized approvers  Users who are authorized to activate bank accounts (authorization object F_CLM_BAM, activity 63 <a href="#">Activate</a> )	FCLM_BAM_REV_SUBMITTED_EMAIL  <b>i Note</b> To enable this notification email, you must first activate the notification provider ID BAM_NOTIFICATION_PROVIDER in the Customizing activity <a href="#">Manage Notification Templates</a> (transaction code /N/IWNGW/VB_REG_P).
	A bank account has been activated.	Change requester	FCLM_BAM_REV_ACTIVATED_EMAIL
Two-Person Verification	A bank account has been submitted for verification.	Authorized approvers  Users who are authorized to activate bank accounts (authorization object F_CLM_BAM, activity 63 <a href="#">Activate</a> ) are considered as authorized approvers.	FCLM_BAM_REV_VERIFIED_EMAIL
	An approver has approved the change.	Change requester	FCLM_BAM_REV_APPROVED_EMAIL
	An approver has rejected the change.	Change requester	FCLM_BAM_REV_REJECTED_EMAIL

Scenario	Send Email When	Recipient	Template ID
Bank Account Review	A bank account review has been started.	Authorized reviewers  Users who are authorized to review bank accounts (authorization object F_CLM_BAM, activity 31 Confirm) are considered as authorized reviewers.	FCLM_BAM_INI REVIEW EMAIL
	A bank account review has been completed.	Review requester	FCLM_BAM_REQ REVIEWED EMAIL
Bank Account Application	A bank account application has been approved.	Applicant	FCLM_BAM_BAOR_ACT_APPROVED
	A bank account application has been rejected.	Applicant	FCLM_BAM_BAOR_ACT_REJECTED
	A withdrawal of bank account application has been confirmed by an approver.	Applicant	FCLM_BAM_BAOR_CANC_REQ_APR
	A bank account application has been submitted for approval.	Authorized approvers  Users who are authorized to activate bank accounts (authorization object F_CLM_BAOR , activity 31 Confirm) are considered as authorized approvers.	FCLM_BAM_BAOR_ACTIVATION_REQ
	A withdrawal of bank account application can't be performed because the bank account has already been created and activated.	Applicant	FCLM_BAM_BAOR_CANC_REQ_REJ
	A withdrawal of bank account application has been automatically confirmed because the application has not yet been approved.	Applicant	FCLM_BAM_BAOR_REQ_CANCELLED
	A withdrawal of bank account application has been	Authorized approvers	FCLM_BAM_BAOR_CANCEL_REQ

Scenario	Send Email When	Recipient	Template ID
	submitted.	Users who are authorized to activate bank accounts (authorization object F_CLM_BAOR , activity 31 <b>Confirm</b> ) are considered as authorized approvers.	

## How to Customize Email Templates

With the administrator's role, you customize predefined email templates using the [Maintain Email Templates](#) app. To do so, proceed as follows:

- **SWF\_CRT\_NOTIFY\_RECIPIENTS:** To customize this email template, you copy the predefined email template into your custom name space as <custom name space>\_78500050\_CRT\_10, for example YY1\_78500050\_CRT\_10.
- For other email templates, you copy the predefined email template into your custom name space.

Once you have copied and saved a custom email template, the system uses this template for sending emails. If no custom email template exists, the system uses the predefined email templates.

For more information, see [Maintain Email Templates](#).

## Disable Email Notifications

You can disable email notifications using the **Disable Email Notifications** Customizing activity.

You can find this Customizing activity under **Financial Supply Chain Management** **Cash and Liquidity Management** **Bank Account Management** .

## Implement Email Template **FCLM\_BAM\_REQ\_DEADLINE\_EMAIL**

To use this email notification template, proceed as follows:

1. To enable the recipient of a notification email to navigate directly to the corresponding workflow task instance in the **My Inbox - For Bank Accounts** app, maintain the URL setting in the Customizing activity **Maintain URL Settings** in your backend system.

You can find the Customizing activity **Maintain URL Settings** under **SAP NetWeaver** **Application Server** **Business Management** **SAP Business Workflow** **Basic Settings (Workflow System)**.

For details, see the implementation guide of the Customizing activity.

2. In the [Maintain Email Templates](#) app, copy the predefined template **FCLM\_BAM\_REQ\_DEADLINE\_EMAIL** into your custom name space.
3. In the **Manage Workflow - For Bank Accounts** app, create a new workflow.

4. For each workflow step, you can define a deadline. If the workflow step is not completed by the defined deadline, email notifications will be triggered.
5. Save and activate your workflow.

## Extensibility Options

The following extensibility options are available for you to enhance Bank Relationship Management:

- Add customer-defined fields to the bank account master data
  - For customers who use SAP Fiori apps:

You can add fields to the following UI element using UI adaptations at runtime:

UI Element	Business Context
The <b>General Data</b> section of the bank account master data	Manage Bank Accounts

For more information about how to adapt an SAP Fiori UI at runtime, see [Making UI Changes \(Object Pages\)](#).

- For customers who use SAP NetWeaver Business Client (NWBC) as their user interface:

You can add custom fields to the structure **FCLM\_BAM\_AMD**. After you activate the fields, you can add the fields to existing tabs of the bank account master data.

For more information, see [https://help.sap.com/viewer/p/SAP\\_NETWEAVER\\_740](https://help.sap.com/viewer/p/SAP_NETWEAVER_740) under **Application Help** **UI Technologies in SAP NetWeaver** **Web Dynpro ABAP and Floorplan Manager** **Floorplan Manager for Web Dynpro ABAP** **Adapting FPM Applications** **Customizing FPM Applications**.

- Business Add-Ins (BAdls)

You can find the BAdls for Bank Account Management under **Financial Supply Chain Management** **Cash and Liquidity Management** **Bank Account Management** **Business Add-Ins (BAdls)**:

- **Automatic Field Population upon Field Update** and **Automatic Field Population upon Account Creation**

You can use these BAdls to define how the fields in the **Manage Bank Accounts** app, including custom fields, are filled automatically when certain fields are filled with particular values or when users create new bank accounts.

- **BAdl: Field Statuses and Field Checks**

You can use this BAdl to define the following:

- Field statuses for fields that are used in bank account master data, such as whether a field is read-only, modifiable, mandatory, or hidden.

To do so, you can either create your own implementation or use the default implementation **FCLM\_BAM\_FIELDS\_CTRL**.

### i Note

In addition to this Business Add-In, you can also use the Customizing activity **Manage Field Status Groups** to control the fields on the app screens. The settings made for field status groups take precedence over the default BAdl implementation **FCLM\_BAM\_FIELDS\_CTRL**.

- Additional checks for bank account master data.

- Whether it is mandatory for users to enter a note when they approve or reject a workflow request.

- **Field Status Control for Bank Accounts in Flexible Workflows**

You can use this BAdI to enable approvers to make changes to bank accounts in workflow approval steps, and you can define field statuses for bank account fields in different workflow scenarios.

- **BAdI: Bank Account Number Mapping Between BAM and HBA**

You can use this BAdI to define how bank account numbers are mapped to fields in a house bank account. For example, due to the length limit of a house bank account number, you can use this BAdI to specify another field in which to store the bank account number, for example, **Alternative Acct No..**

- **BAdI: Events After Bank Account Activation**

**i Note**

This BAdI is only intended for customers who use SAP NetWeaver Business Client (NWBC) as the user interface for Bank Relationship Management.

You can use this BAdI to define events that you want to trigger after a bank account master record is activated, such as sending a notification to inform affected parties.

- **BAdI: Bank Account Master Data Fields in Change Requests**

**i Note**

This BAdI is only intended for customers who use SAP NetWeaver Business Client (NWBC) as the user interface for Bank Relationship Management.

You can use this BAdI to define which fields in bank account master data are recorded in change requests when their values are changed. Changes made to fields included in change requests can be tracked by the change history.

- **BAdI: Payment Approval Pattern Determination**

You can use this BAdI to override the payment approval patterns defined in the Customizing activity **Define Settings for Bank Account Master Data** with your own logic and definition.

- **BAdI: Processing Logic for IDoc Message Type HBABAMAST and BAdI: Processing Logic for IDoc Message Type BAMMAST**

You can use these BAdIs to enhance the processing logic of the tool for replicating house banks, house bank accounts, and bank accounts.

## ICF Services

Before you use the Web Dynpro application for Bank Account Management, you need to activate the following services.

To do so, in **Maintain Services** (transaction code **SICF**), search for a service by entering the service name, and then activate it.

To activate a service, right click on the service and then choose **Activate Service**.

The following services must be activated:

- Web Dynpro services
  - WDA\_FCLM\_BAM\_ACC\_MASTER
  - WDA\_FCLM\_BAM\_ACC REVIEW

- WDA\_FCLM\_BAM\_ADAPT\_SIGN
- WDA\_FCLM\_BAM\_BANK\_DATA
- WDA\_FCLM\_BAM\_CHGREQ
- WDA\_FCLM\_BAM\_HIERARCHY
- WDA\_FCLM\_BAM\_HIER\_BP
- WDA\_FCLM\_BAM\_HIER\_MAINTAIN
- WDA\_FCLM\_BAM REVIEW REPORT
- WDA\_FCLM\_BAM\_REQOVERVIEW
- WDA\_FCLM\_UPLOAD\_DOWNLOAD
- Workflow services
  - ibo\_wda\_inbox
  - swf\_formabsenc
  - swf\_workplace
  - UCT\_DISPLAY\_DOCUMENT
  - UCT\_DISPLAY\_INBOX
  - UCT\_DISPLAY\_SIGNOFF
  - UCT\_DISPLAY\_CHANGE
  - USMD\_CREQUEST\_PROTOCOL2
  - USMD\_SSW\_RULE
  - USMD\_WF\_NAVIGATION
- POWL services
  - POWL
  - POWL\_COLLECTOR
  - powl\_composite
  - POWL\_EASY
  - POWL\_ERRORPAGE
  - POWL\_MASTER\_QUERY
  - POWL\_PERS\_COMP

## Data Replication

With the hybrid deployment of Cash and Liquidity Management, your SAP S/4HANA system can integrate with other business systems.

In hybrid scenarios, you can maintain master data for house banks, house bank accounts, and bank accounts in your SAP S/4HANA system where Cash and Liquidity Management is installed. You can then replicate the master data to other integrated

business systems using the [Execute Data Replication](#) program (transaction DRF0UT) via IDoc (Intermediate Document). This way, you ensure that the master data is identical and in sync across all the systems in the landscape. The following features are supported:

- Replicate existing house banks, house bank accounts, and bank accounts to receiver systems en masse
- Replicate changes that occurred in the sender system during a specified time interval to receiver systems
- Manually select and transfer data to receiver systems

## Integration Scenarios

The following integrations are supported:

Integration Scenario	Sender System	Receiver System
Outbound Integration	SAP S/4HANA	SAP S/4HANA
	SAP S/4HANA	SAP S/4HANA Finance
	SAP S/4HANA	SAP S/4HANA Cloud
	SAP S/4HANA	SAP ECC
Inbound Integration	SAP S/4HANA Cloud	SAP S/4HANA
	SAP S/4HANA Finance	SAP S/4HANA
	SAP S/4HANA	SAP S/4HANA

### i Note

Starting from SAP S/4HANA 2021 and SAP S/4HANA Cloud 2108, the bank account contract type has been introduced and is used as one of the parameters that form the unique logical key of a bank account. As a result, we do not recommend that you replicate bank accounts from these versions and above to lower versions because bank account contract types are not supported in lower versions.

When you replicate bank accounts between systems that support bank account contract types, please ensure that the settings for bank account contract types are the same in both systems.

### i Note

- For replication from or to SAP S/4HANA 1809 or higher releases, please note that the following fields in bank account master data will not be replicated. If necessary, you can manually define them in the receiver system.
  - [General Contact](#)
  - [Relationship Manager](#)
- For replication between SAP S/4HANA 1809 and SAP S/4HANA Cloud 1808 and higher releases, please note that the following fields in bank account master data will not be replicated. If necessary, you can manually define them in the receiver system.
  - [General Contact](#)
  - [Relationship Manager](#)
  - [Contact Person](#)

- [Bank Account Supervisor](#)
- [Payment Signatory](#) (renamed [Payment Approver](#) in SAP S/4HANA Cloud 1911)

## Supported Software Component Versions

Product	Software Component Versions
SAP S/4HANA	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• For integrations between SAP S/4HANA and SAP S/4HANA Cloud, only S4CORE 103 SP00 and higher versions are supported.</li> <li>• For other integrations, the following versions are supported:           <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>◦ S4CORE 101 SP00 and higher software versions</li> <li>◦ S4CORE 100 SP03 and higher support package versions</li> </ul> </li> </ul>
SAP S/4HANA Finance	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• SAP_FIN 720 SP05 and higher software versions</li> <li>• SAP_FIN 730 SP04 and higher support package versions</li> </ul>
SAP ERP	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• SAP_FIN 618 SP03 and higher software versions</li> <li>• SAP_FIN 617 SP12 and higher support package versions</li> <li>• SAP_FIN 616 SP11 and higher support package versions</li> </ul>
SAP S/4HANA Cloud	SAP S/4HANA Cloud 1808 and higher

## Message Types

SAP has provided the following message types for using the replication program to replicate house banks, house bank accounts, and bank accounts.

The use of the message types depends on whether the receiver system is an SAP S/4HANA system. The table below explains the use of the message types in different scenarios.

Message Type	SAP S/4HANA system	Not an SAP S/4HANA system
BAMMAST	Replicate bank account master data including bank accounts and house bank accounts	Not applicable
HBHBAMAST	Replicate house banks	Replicate house banks and house bank accounts

For more information about this program, choose the [Information](#) button in the transaction DRFOUT.

## Schedule a Job for Automatic Replication

To automate the replication, you can schedule a job to automatically replicate house banks, house bank accounts, and bank accounts to receiver systems. To do so, you can use transaction SM36 to schedule a job for program RDRF\_MESSAGE\_OUT.

## Prerequisites

Before configuring the settings for using this program to replicate house banks, house bank accounts, and bank accounts, make sure that you have performed the following steps for IDoc and Application Link Enabling (ALE) in the sender system and the receiver systems.

1. Create users for ALE transfer.
2. Create logical systems and assign clients to logical systems.
3. Create RFC connections.

For more information, search for the topic *IDoc Interface/ALE* at <https://help.sap.com/>.

## Configuration in the Sender System

### Configuration for the Customizing Activity Distribute ALE Master Data

In the sender system, configure the following in the Customizing activity **Distribute ALE Master Data**. You can find this Customizing activity under **Quality Management** **Environment** **Tools** .

#### 1. Maintain Partner Profile (transaction WE20)

Maintain the partner profile for each receiver system as follows:

- a. In the structure, select **Partner Type LS** and then select a receiver system.
- b. In the **Outbound Parameters** section, choose **Create Outbound Parameter** to create two parameters as follows:

	Receiver Port	Message Type	Basic Type	Output Mode	IDoc Type
Parameter 1	The port ID of the receiver system	HBHBAMAST	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ HBHBAMAST02: Use this type for the following scenarios:           <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Both the sender and receiver systems are SAP S/4HANA 1709 or higher versions</li> <li>■ Replication between SAP</li> </ul> </li> </ul>	Select the <b>Pass IDoc Immediately</b> checkbox	Select the <b>Cancel Processing After Syntax Error</b> checkbox

	Receiver Port	Message Type	Basic Type	Output Mode	IDoc Type
			<p>S/4HANA and SAP S/4HANA Cloud</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ HBHBAMAST01: Use this type in all other cases.</li> </ul>		
Parameter 2	The port ID of the receiver system	BAMMAST	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ BAMMAST03: Use this type for the following scenarios:           <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Replication between SAP S/4HANA 1809 systems</li> <li>■ Replication between SAP S/4HANA and SAP S/4HANA Cloud</li> </ul> </li> <li>■ BAMMAST02: Use this type for the following scenarios:           <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Replication between SAP S/4HANA 1709 systems</li> <li>■ Replication between SAP S/4HANA 1709 and SAP S/4HANA 1809</li> </ul> </li> <li>■ BAMMAST01: Use this type for all other cases.</li> </ul>	<p>Select the <a href="#">Pass I Doc Immediately</a> checkbox</p> <p>Select the <a href="#">Cancel Processing After Syntax Error</a> checkbox</p>	

## 2. Object with Change Document: Activate Change Indicators (Generally)

Make sure this checkbox is selected.

### 3. Object with Change Document: Set Up Change Indicators for Table Fields

With this setting, you configure fields in bank account master data that can trigger synchronization from the sender system to the receiver systems.

To register a field, enter the message type BAMMAST or HBHBAMAST, and then specify the corresponding object name as shown in the table below and the field technical name.

You can obtain the technical information about the bank account master data fields from the following table:

Message Type	Object	Tables
HBHBAMAST	FCLM_HOUSEBANK	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>◦ FCLM_BAM_ACLINK2</li> <li>◦ FCLM_BAM_AMD_T</li> <li>◦ T012</li> <li>◦ T012D</li> </ul>
BAMMAST	FCLM_BAM3	<p><b>i Note</b></p> <p>Make sure that you register the field KEY for all of the following tables.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>◦ FCLM_BAM_ACLINK2</li> <li>◦ FCLM_BAM_AMD</li> <li>◦ FCLM_BAM_SIG</li> <li>◦ FCLM_BAM_AMD_LIM</li> <li>◦ FCLM_BAM_AMD_T</li> </ul>

### 4. Object with Change Document: Activate Change Indicators for Message Type

- Add message types BAMMAST and HBHBAMAST.
- Select the active checkbox for both entries.

### 5. Object with Change Document: Maintain Additional Data for Message Type

Create two new entries as follows:

Message Type	Reference Message Type	Format Function Module	Reducable Message Type
BAMMAST	Leave blank	MASTERIDOC_CREATE_SMD_BAMMAST	Deselect the checkbox
HBHBAMAST	HBHBAMAST	MASTERIDOC_CREATE_SMD_HBANK	Select the checkbox

## Configuration for Transaction DRFIMG

In the sender system, make the following settings using transaction DRFIMG.

### 1. Define business systems for receiver systems.

- a. Go to ►Define Custom Settings for Data Replication► Define Technical Settings► Define Technical Settings for Business Systems ▶

- b. Define a business system for each receiver system.

To do so, create a new entry and specify the logical system information of the receiver system.

## 2. Define replication models.

- a. Go to **Define Custom Settings for Data Replication** **Define Replication Models**.

- b. Create a new replication model for message type HBHBAMAST and then do the following:

- i. Select the entry created and then double-click **Assign Outbound Implementation**.
  - ii. Enter the outbound implementation HBANK\_IMP and select **Replication via I Doc** for the **Communication Channel** field.

1. Select the implementation created and double-click **Assign Target Systems for Repl. Model/OutbImpl**.

2. Choose **New Entries**. Enter the business systems and save.

3. Go back to the **Define Replication Model** view and choose **Activate** to activate your settings.

- c. Create another replication model for message type BAMMAST.

- i. Select the entry created and then double-click **Assign Outbound Implementation**.

- ii. Enter the outbound implementation BAMMAST and select **Replication via I Doc** for the **Communication Channel** field.

1. Select the implementation created and double-click **Assign Target Systems for Repl. Model/OutbImpl**.

2. Choose **New Entries**. Enter the business systems and save.

3. Go back to the **Define Replication Model** view and choose **Activate** to activate your settings.

## 3. Enable the replication mode in transaction DRFOUT.

1. Go to **Define Custom Settings for Data Replication** **Define Business Object Settings**.

### 2. Create the following entries:

Business Object Type	Message Type	Retention Period
BAMMAST	BAMMAST	100
HBHBA_OBJ	HBHBAMAST	100

## 3. Check settings for the replication mode

- a. Go to **Business Add-Ins (BAdIs)** **BAdI: Creation of MDG Change Pointers from ALE Change Pointer**.

- b. Make sure that the implementation **DRF\_CP\_PROCESSING** is active.

# Configuration in Receiver Systems

## 1. Run transaction WE20.

## 2. Select **Partner Type LS** and then create a new partner.

3. In the **Inbound Parameters** section, create two new entries respectively for the two messages types with the following information:

- **Message Type:** HBHBAMAST, BAMMAST
- **Process Code:** BAPI
- Select the **Cancel Processing After Syntax Error** checkbox.
- Select the **Trigger Immediately** option.

Additionally, you can monitor the processing status of dispatched IDocs in the receiving system using ALE Audit. With this feature, you can receive confirmation messages and check the confirmation log in the source system. For more information about the use and configuration of ALE Audit, search for the topic *Monitoring the Status of Inbound IDocs Using ALE Audit* at <https://help.sap.com/>.

## Configuration for Integration with SAP S/4HANA Cloud

For replication from or to an SAP S/4HANA Cloud system, you must make required settings in the SAP S/4HANA Cloud system.

To do so, follow the “Set-up instructions” of scope item 34P to set up the system. You can find this document on SAP Best Practices Explorer at <https://rapid.sap.com/bp/#/browse/scopeitems/34P>.

## Message Monitoring

### Prerequisites

Make sure that you have assigned relevant users as recipients of the messages. To do so, proceed as follows:

1. Run transaction /n/AIF/CUST.
2. Go to **System Configuration** **Recipients** **Assign Recipients** .
3. In this Customizing activity, specify /FINBA as the **Namespace** and IDOC\_FIN\_FCLM\_BAM\_RECIPIENT as the **Recipient for Alert**.
4. In the **Assign Users** view, specify the users who need to monitor the messages for data replication.
5. Save your changes.

### Process

SAP Application Interface Framework (AIF) enables you to monitor the inbound and outbound messages for data replication.

To monitor the messages, proceed as follows:

1. Run transaction /n/AIF/CONTENT\_EXTRACT.
2. Activate the deployment scenarios SAP\_COM\_0278 and SAP\_COM\_0279.
3. Run transaction /n/AIF/ERR.
4. In the **Application-Specific Selection** area, enter /FINBA for the **Namespace** field.
5. In the **Generic Selection** area, specify the date range to view the triggered messages.

## 6. Execute the program.

You can see the messages for data replication and check the log details.

The table below explains the use of IDoc messages:

IDoc Message	Use
BAMMAST03	This message replicates bank accounts and house bank accounts.
HBHBAMAST02	This message replicates house banks.

# Configuration for One Exposure from Operations

## Use

The One Exposure from Operations hub is a central storage location for operational data that is relevant for managing cash and liquidity. The provision of the data in the One Exposure from Operations hub facilitates funds planning and risk management across multiple companies. Currently, SAP S/4HANA Finance for cash management uses One Exposure from Operations to acquire both data from the central system and remote systems that serve as subsystems of the central system. The integration is either real-time (one-system scenario) or periodic (side-by-side scenario with remote systems).

## More Information

[Integration with Source Applications in the Central System](#)

[Integration with Remote Systems](#)

# Planning Levels and Planning Groups

The planning level reflects typical financial transactions, for example, posting to a bank account, posting to a clearing account, confirmed or unconfirmed payment notes, and so on. It explains the origin of the data and thus enables you to better estimate its reliability. A planning group represents a group of customers or vendors with particular characteristics, behaviors or risks. With this attribute, you can break down incoming and outgoing payments according to the amount, the probability of the cash inflow or outflow, and the type of business relationship.

Before you use SAP S/4HANA Finance for cash management, configure planning levels and planning groups under [Financial Supply Chain Management](#) [Cash and Liquidity Management](#) [Cash Management](#) [Planning Levels and Planning Groups](#).

Note the following:

- To populate key information for cash management in accounting entries for G/L line items, assign planning levels to relevant G/L accounts, for example bank accounts, bank clearing accounts, payment request accounts.
- To populate key information for cash management in accounting entries for vendor and customer line items, in customer and vendor master records, specify the planning group information.

# Liquidity Items and Liquidity Item Hierarchies

Liquidity items represent the source and use of cash flows in your company. They serve as an import dimension for financial planning and reporting in SAP S/4HANA Finance for cash management. Configure the following under ►Financial Supply Chain Management ➤ Cash and Liquidity Management ➤ Cash Management ➤ Liquidity Items ▶.

## Define Liquidity Items

To define liquidity items, use the [Edit Liquidity Items](#) activity.

## Derive Liquidity Items for Accounting Documents

- For accounting documents (in database table BSEG), if liquidity items can be determined by G/L accounts, you may use the [Define Default Liquidity Items for G/L Accounts](#) activity to define the derivation rules.
- If you need more complex logic to derive liquidity items from various fields of the accounting document, then you need to define queries and query sequences using the following activities:
  - [Define Queries for Liquidity Item Derivation](#)
  - [Define Query Sequences](#)
  - [Assign Queries to Query Sequences](#)

You should always specify the [Origin](#) as D or C when defining queries and query sequences for accounting documents.

- Origin C applies to line items with account type D (customer) or K (supplier).
- Origin D applies to line items with account types other than D (customer) or K (supplier).

When deriving liquidity items, the system first tries to apply the assigned query sequences; if not successful, then it turns to the default liquidity items defined for G/L accounts.

## Derive Liquidity Items for Source Application Data in One Exposure from Operations

For data integrated into the One Exposure from Operations hub from source applications in the central system, such as TRM, CML, or FI-CA data, there is no default derivation rules for liquidity items. You need to define query and query sequences for this purpose. In this case, you should always specify the [Origin](#) as X, meaning that the derivation logic is executed against the structure of the One Exposure from Operations hub.

For more information on how to configure the One Exposure from Operations hub to extract data from source applications in the central system, see [Integration with Source Applications in the Central System](#).

## Derive Liquidity Items for Remotely Integrated Data in One Exposure from Operations

Data integrated from remote systems falls into the following types:

- Classic Cash Management data from remote systems: Define queries and query sequences with the [Origin](#) as X.
- Liquidity Planner actuals: The original liquidity item values in the source data are transferred into the One Exposure from Operations hub. Therefore it has to be assured that the liquidity items exist in both systems (remote and central). For this purpose you can use the Customizing activity [Import and Export Liquidity Items](#) to create liquidity items massively in different systems, under ►Financial Supply Chain Management ➤ Cash and Liquidity Management ➤ Cash Management ➤ Tools ▶.

For more information on how to configure the One Exposure from Operations hub to integrate with data from remote systems, see [Integration with Remote Systems](#).

## Define Liquidity Item Hierarchies

To group liquidity items into hierarchical structures, define hierarchies for liquidity items using the [Manage Liquidity Item Hierarchies](#) app.

For more information, see [Managing Liquidity Item Hierarchies](#).

## Flow Types

### Definition

Flow types classify the lifecycle of cash flows, for example, it distinguishes forecasted cash flows from confirmed cash flows. Only transaction data that is assigned with flow type information can be consumed and used in Cash Management applications.

SAP predefines a set of flow types. If you do not have special requirements, you can rely on the standard flow types delivered by SAP.

### Flow Type Assignment for Accounting Documents

The flow types listed here are uploaded to the Accounting Document Segment (table BSEG) and serve as a trigger for the flow builder. The flow builder then derives cash flows and stores the flow types to the One Exposure from Operations hub for analytical purposes.

In general, the integration of Financial Operations into One Exposure from Operations covers information on invoices, payments, and bank statements. Within this integration, the system classifies accounting document line items into the following categories:

- Line item posting on a customer or vendor account (Receivables or Payables)
- Line item posting on a bank clearing account (Cash in Transit)
- Line item posting on a bank account (Cash)

The determination of the category is done by the system in the following way:

- Receivable or Payable
- Items from invoices having account type K (Vendor) or D (Customer)

- Cash in Transit
- Items having a G/L account that has one of the following characteristics:

- Maintained in account determination of payment program ( T042I ), is a balance sheet account ( SKA1-XBILK ), and is not a reconciliation account ( SKB1-MITKZ )
- Maintained in account determination of bank-to-bank transfer ( T042Y ), is a balance sheet account ( SKA1-XBILK ), and is not a reconciliation account ( SKB1-MITKZ )
- Marked as cash relevant ( SKB1-XGKON ) and with open item management (SKB1-XOPVW )

- Cash

Items having a G/L account that has one of the following characteristics:

- Maintained in house bank accounts ( T012K )
- Marked as cash relevant ( SKB1-XGKON ) without open item management ( SKB1-XOPVW )

For these accounting document items, the system derives the following flow types:

- Receivable or Payable
  - 600000 - Regular Receivables Increase
  - 600001 - Regular Payables Increase
  - 600200 - Unallocated Receivables Increase
  - 600201 - Unallocated Payables Increase
- Revenue and Expenses
  - 600500 - Delivered Goods/Services Increase
  - 600501 - Received Goods/Services Increase
  - 600510 - Received Goods/Services Decrease
  - 600511 - Delivered Goods/Services Decrease
- Tax
  - 300000 - Input Tax Increase
  - 300001 - Output Tax Increase
  - 300010 - Output Tax Decrease
  - 300011 - Input Tax Decrease
- Cash in Transit
  - 800006 - Incoming Cash in Transit Increase
  - 800008 - Outgoing Cash in Transit Increase
- Cash
  - 900006 - Incoming Bank Confirmed Cash Increase
  - 900008 - Outgoing Bank Confirmed Cash Increase

For items representing payables, receivables, revenues, invoices, tax, or cash in transit, One Exposure from Operations derives cash forecasts. Accounting documents containing other items than the ones described above are not handled by the integration of Financial Operations into One Exposure from Operations.

## Assign Flow Types to G/L Accounts

If you want (as an exception) additional accounting document items to be processed by the integration of Financial Operations into One Exposure from Operations, you have to define them using the Customizing activity **Assign Flow Types to G/L Accounts** under **Financial Supply Chain Management** **Cash and Liquidity Management** **Cash Management** **Flow Types**.

You do this by assigning the corresponding G/L accounts to the following flow types, which are currently available to you. For example:

- Cash in Transit
  - 800006 - Incoming Cash in Transit Increase
  - 800008 - Outgoing Cash in Transit Increase
- Cash
  - 900006 - Incoming Bank Confirmed Cash Increase
  - 900008 - Outgoing Bank Confirmed Cash Increase
- Payment Request Clearing
  - 700000 - Incoming Payment Request
  - 700001 - Outgoing Payment Request

### Caution

Do not assign flow types to a G/L account that is characterized as a reconciliation account.

## Field Status

By default, house bank and house bank account are optional fields in payments and bank statements. To ensure the information is recorded for relevant transactions, you may consider to set the two fields as mandatory for G/L accounts that work as bank clearing accounts and bank accounts by using the Customizing activity **Define Field Status Variants**, under **Financial Accounting**  **Accounts Receivable and Accounts Payable**  **Business Transactions**  **Incoming Payments**  **Incoming Payments Global Settings**  **Make and Check Document Settings** .

## Build Key Information in Accounting Documents

### Context

Data such as liquidity items, flow types, house banks, and house bank accounts are key to the calculation of Cash Management. To build key information in accounting documents that are already posted to ledgers, perform the following Customizing activities under **Financial Supply Chain Management**  **Cash and Liquidity Management**  **Cash Management**  **Data Setup** 

- **Rebuild Planning Levels, Groups, Dates in Accounting Documents**

This activity is to populate attributes or attribute changes to customers and vendors master data in one shot. With the **Data Setup** function, you can rebuild the **Planning Level** and **Planning Group** fields in database table BSEG. When you change the assignment of planning levels to G/L accounts, or the assignment of planning groups to customers or vendors, you can execute the **Data Setup** function to fill in the updated planning level and planning group information into the existing BSEG records.

- **Rebuild Flow Types in Accounting Documents**

This activity is to derive flow types for accounting document line items that have already been posted. Typically, flow types are automatically derived as postings are made. However, you must run this Customizing activity to derive flow types for accounting document line items that have already been posted but for which the flow types are missing.

The way the system derives flow types for accounting document line items is described in the documentation of the Customizing activity **Assign Flow Types to G/L Accounts** under **Financial Supply Chain Management**  **Cash and Liquidity Management**  **Cash Management**  **Flow Type** .

- [Rebuild Liquidity Items in Accounting Documents](#)

This activity is to derive liquidity items for line items that are already posted to ledgers. Typically, liquidity items are automatically derived as postings are made. However, you must run this Customizing activity to generate liquidity items data for line items that are already posted but are missing liquidity items. When building liquidity items data, the system reads required data from the BSEG table, which stores line items that are posted on accounting documents. Then it populates the derived liquidity items data back to the BSEG table so that other application features can consume the liquidity information directly.

- [Insert House Bank and House Bank Account Data to Accounting Documents](#)

This activity is to insert house bank (field HBKID) and house bank account (field HKTID) data into table BSEG before you use the applications that use historical cash management data.

For Flow Builder, it may happen that many entries exist in the delta table, and it will result in long running jobs.

To avoid the situation, you can clean up the delta table before running the program:

- Clean up the delta table of accounting documents (Cash Position)

You can run Flow Builder with the running type [Cash Position: Delta Run from Staging](#).

- Clean up the delta table of accounting documents (Liquidity Analysis)

You can run Flow Builder with the running type [Liquidity Analysis: Delta Run from Staging](#).

- Clean up the delta table of Material Management

You can run Flow Builder with the running type [Delta Run from Staging for Material Management](#).

## Delete Data from One Exposure

To delete data from One Exposure, perform the Customizing activity [Delete Data from One Exposure from Operations Hub](#) under [Financial Supply Chain Management](#) [Cash and Liquidity Management](#) [Cash Management](#) [Data Setup](#). Alternatively, you can run transaction code FQM\_DELETE and see the details in the program documentation.

## Customize the Flow Builder

Customize the settings and tools for Flow Builder.

For sources applications of FI and MM, you must run the [Flow Builder](#) program or [Flow Builder Plus](#) program to generate cash-relevant flows, which are then imported to One Exposure from Operations.

For more information, please refer to the following:

- [Flow Builder](#)

- To enable the [Flow Builder](#) to run automatically, add the job FCLM\_FLOWBUILDER\_JOB to the Customizing activity [Activation of Scope-Dependent Background Job Definitions](#). You can find this activity under [SAP NetWeaver](#) [Application Server](#) [System Administration](#).
- To customize the settings and tools for the [Flow Builder Plus](#) Program, perform the Customizing activity [Define Runtime Parameters for Flow Builder](#) under [Financial Supply Chain Management](#) [Cash and Liquidity Management](#) [Cash Management](#) [Data Setup](#).

- [Flow Builder Plus](#)

- To enable the **Flow Builder Plus** program, you need to activate **Optimized data model and algorithm in Define Basic Settings**. Once it is activated, it is not possible to switch back to **Flow Builder**.
- To enable the **Flow Builder Plus** to run automatically, add the job FCLM\_FLOWBUILDER\_JOB to the Customizing activity **Activation of Scope-Dependent Background Job Definitions**. You can find this activity under **SAP NetWeaver > Application Server > System Administration**.
- To customize the settings and tools for the **Flow Builder Plus Program**, perform the Customizing activity **Define Runtime Parameters for Flow Builder** under **Financial Supply Chain Management > Cash and Liquidity Management > Cash Management > Data Setup**.
- To make additional configuration for Financial Accounting in One Exposure for **Flow Builder Plus**, perform the Customizing activity **Define Source Application Accounting** under **Financial Supply Chain Management > Cash and Liquidity Management > Cash Management > Data Setup**.
- To define generic settings for Program **Flow Builder Plus**, perform the Customizing activity **Define Default Liquidity Items for Liquidity Analysis** under **Financial Supply Chain Management > Cash and Liquidity Management > Cash Management > Data Setup**.

For more information, see [Build Cash Flows from Operations](#).

## Source Applications

For company codes that are going to use Cash Management related functions, you need to determine which information sources are relevant for Cash Management for each company code. To do so, activate source applications for company codes using either of the following two activities under **Cash Management > Data Setup**:

- **Activate Individual Source Applications:** Activate a single source application for a company code
- **Activate Multiple Source Applications:** Activate several source applications for one or more company codes
- [Build Cash Flows from Operations](#): Build flows for source application of FI and MM

You may need to activate the following source applications:

- To build key information in accounting documents, activate source application **One Exposure**.
- To use data of a particular category stored in the One Exposure from Operations hub, activate the corresponding source application according to your business needs.

## Integration with Source Applications in the Central System

The following source applications can be integrated for real-time update into One Exposure from Operations and the transaction data can be consumed by SAP S/4HANA Finance for cash management and relevant cash management apps :

- Financial Operations (including Parked Document)
  - Accounting Documents (FI)
  - Day-end Bank Statement
  - Intra-day Bank Statement (via Memo Record)
- Treasury and Risk Management (TRM)
- Consumer and Mortgage Loans (FS-CML)

- Contract Accounts Receivable and Payable (FI-CA)
- Purchasing in Materials Management (MM)
- Sales in Sales and Distribution (SD)
- Bank Communication Management Approval Process
- Payment Request
- Payment Order
- Promise to Pay (Collection Management)
- Lease and Contract Management
- Memo Record

To set up the real-time integration of source applications, configure the following Customizing activities under **Financial Supply Chain Management** **Cash and Liquidity Management** **Cash Management** **Data Setup** .

1. To activate source applications for company codes, configure either of the following two Customizing activities:
  - **Activate Individual Source Applications:** Activate a single source application for a company code
  - **Activate Multiple Source Applications:** Activate several source applications for one or more company codes
2. The load of existing transaction data from the source applications is optional and can be performed as a mass upload using the Customizing activity **Load Trans. Data from Source Appl. into One Exposure from Operations Hub.**

#### Note

Note: This step should be executed after you finished the steps in the [Configuration for Cash Operations](#).

## More Information

For sources applications of FI and MM, you must run the flow builder program to set up the data.

For more information, see [Customize the Flow Builder](#).

## Integration with Remote Systems

Periodic integration of data into the One Exposure from Operations hub can be set up for:

- Manual Entry of Bank Cash Balances
- Classic Cash Management
- SAP Liquidity Planner
- Inbound SOAP Webservice for Cash Flows

## Manual Entry of Bank Cash Balances

In the **central system**, configure the following:

In the **Manage Bank Accounts** app, maintain the house bank account connectivity for bank accounts that exist in a remote system by defining an entry with the ID category of **Remote System: G/L Account**.

## Classic Cash Management

In both the **central system** and the **remote systems**, configure the following:

Configure the following Customizing activities for using IDoc under **IDoc Interface / Application Link Enabling (ALE)** using transaction SALE:

- Define Logical System, under **Basic Settings > Logical Systems**
- Create RFC Connections, under **Basic Settings > Communication**
- Generate Partner Profiles, under **Modelling and Implementing Business Processes > Partner Profile**

In the **central system**, configure the following:

- Define the distribution model using message types CMSEND and CMREQU and distribute it to all the remote systems in Customizing activity **Maintain Distribution Model and Distribute Views**, under **IDoc Interface / Application Link Enabling (ALE) > Modelling and Implementing Business Partners**.
- In the **Manage Bank Accounts** app, maintain the house bank account connectivity for bank accounts that exist in a remote system by defining an entry with the ID category of **Remote System: G/L Account**.
- In the SAP GUI application, configure the following Customizing activities to define how to convert company codes, planning groups, planning levels, and business areas from remote systems for use in the central system, under **Financial Supply Chain Management > Cash and Liquidity Management > Cash Management > Data Setup > Inbound Mapping for Integration of Remote Data into One Exposure**:
  - Assign Company Codes
  - Convert Sender Planning Groups
  - Convert Sender Planning Levels
  - Convert Sender Business Areas
- Flow types are derived by a default logic, but an additional differentiation for **confirmed cash** can be configured with Customizing activity **Assign Flow Types to Planning Levels** under **Financial Supply Chain Management > Cash and Liquidity Management > Cash Management > Flow Types**.
- To define the liquidity item derivation rules, configure queries and query services as described in [Liquidity Items and Liquidity Item Hierarchies](#).

## SAP Liquidity Planner

To enable the Web service, the **system administrator** configures the following in **SOA Management** (transaction SOAMANAGER):

- In the central system, configure a Web service based on the service definition FQM\_WS\_DISTRIBUTE.
- In the remote systems, define a logical port for each remote system based on the consumer proxy C0\_FQM\_WS\_DISTRIBUTE.

To enable the data transfer and conversion, the **application consultant** configures the following:

- In the central system, configure the following activities to define how to convert company codes and business areas from remote systems for the use in the central system, under **Financial Supply Chain Management > Cash and Liquidity Management > Cash Management > Data Setup > Inbound Mapping for Integration of Remote Data into One Exposure** :

- [Assign Company Codes](#)
- [Convert Sender Business Areas](#)

- In the remote systems, configure the following:
  - Define source applications, company codes, and payment dates (optional) to control data transfers into the One Exposure from Operations hub in Customizing activity [Activate Source Application Liquidity Planner for One Exposure Transfer](#) under [Financial Supply Chain Management](#) ➤ [Cash and Liquidity Management](#) ➤ [Liquidity Planner](#) ➤ [Tools](#) ➤.
  - If you have additional mapping requirements, you also have the option of using the BAdI `BADI_FQM_FLOW_ADJUST_CORE`. The BAdI includes a sample implementation.
- Make sure you have liquidity items defined in both the central system and the remote systems. For more information, see [Liquidity Items and Liquidity Item Hierarchies](#).

## Inbound SOAP Webservice for Cash Flows

Cash flows are fundamental in cash management.

This web service enables you to create cash flows through an API call from a source system outside SAP S/4HANA system.

Furthermore, the service enables you to read, update, delete and erase existing cash flow data from the SAP S/4HANA system.

The operations to create, update, delete and erase cash flows are available. For more information, see [Cash Flow](#)

## Import Initial Bank Account Balances

To import initial bank account balances, you can run the transaction code `FQM_INIT_BALANCES` (Import Initial Bank Account Balances) and see the details in the program documentation.

### Use

You use the report [Import Initial Bank Account Balance](#) (`FQM_INITIAL_BALANCE_UPLOAD`) to upload initial balances only for bank accounts with either of the ID categories [Central System: House Bank Account](#) or [Central System: G/L Account](#) in the connectivity path of the master data.

### Integration

This applies in cases where the initial balance cannot be initialized by the FI Flow Builder, such as in the case of FI documents that have been archived before a system upgrade.

### Feature

This report uploads initial balances in [Microsoft Excel](#) format into the [One Exposure from Operations](#) hub.

## Load Data into One Exposure from Operations Hub

The One Exposure from Operations hub is a central storage location for operational data that is relevant for managing cash and liquidity. The provision of the data in the One Exposure from Operations hub facilitates funds planning and risk management

across multiple companies. Currently, SAP S/4HANA Finance for cash management uses One Exposure from Operations to acquire the following data:

- Transaction data from source applications in the central system of SAP S/4HANA Finance for cash management:
  - Financial Operations
    - Accounting Documents (FI)
    - Bank Statements
    - Promise to Payment (P2P)
  - Treasury and Risk Management (TRM)
  - Consumer and Mortgage Loans (FS-CML)
  - Contract Accounts Receivable and Payable (FI-CA)
  - Materials Management (MM)
  - Sales and Distribution (SD)

To upload existing data from these source applications, perform the Customizing activity **Load Transaction Data from Source Applications into One Exposure from Operations Hub** under **Financial Supply Chain Management > Cash and Liquidity Management > Cash Management > Data Setup**.

For more information, see [Integration with Source Applications in the Central System](#) in [Configuration for One Exposure from Operations](#)

- Data from integrated remote systems:

- Manual Entry of Bank Cash Balances

To upload bank account balances (derived from external sources), in the central system, perform the activity **Import Bank Cash Balances**, in the SAP menu under **Accounting > Financial Supply Chain Management > Cash and Liquidity Management > Tools > One Exposure from Operations**.

- Classic Cash Management

To transfer classic cash management data to the One Exposure from Operations hub, in the remote systems, perform the activity **Send TR-CM Data**, in the SAP menu under **Accounting > Financial Supply Chain Management > Cash and Liquidity Management > Tools > Distribution > TR-CM Subsystems**. This activity is available in ECC system.

The transfer of the classic cash management data is triggered by a request of the central system. To do this, in the central system, perform the activity **Retrieve CM Data**, in the SAP menu under **Accounting > Financial Supply Chain Management > Cash and Liquidity Management > Tools > Distribution**. This activity is available in SAP S/4HANA system.

- SAP Liquidity Planner

To transfer data from SAP Liquidity Planner into the One Exposure from Operations hub, in the remote systems, perform the activity **Initial and Periodic Update**, in the SAP menu under **Accounting > Financial Supply Chain Management > Cash and Liquidity Management > Liquidity Planner > One Exposure Update**.

For more information, see [Integration with Remote Systems](#) in [Configuration for One Exposure from Operations](#)

## More Information

For sources applications of FI and MM, you can run the flow builder program to set up the data.

# Build Cash Flows from Operations

Build flows for FI and MM documents.

For sources applications of FI and MM, you can run the Flow Builder program (transaction code: FCLM\_FLOW\_BUILDER\_2) to generate cash-relevant flows, which are then imported to One Exposure from Operations.

To do so, perform the SAP Menu **Flow Builder: Build Cash Flows from FI & MM** under **Accounting ➤ Financial Supply Chain Management ➤ Cash and Liquidity Management ➤ Tools ➤ One Exposure from Operations ➤ Data Setup**.

## Configuration for Cash Operations

### Use

This activity is to set up transactional data that will be consumed by Cash Management applications. Applications in SAP S/4HANA Finance for cash management consume data from the One Exposure from Operations (database table FQM\_FLOW). It contains cash management data such as memo records, and data from other components like accounting, end-of-day bank statements, TRM, CML, FI-CA, and integrated data from remote systems.

To use Cash Operations, make the following configuration settings:

- Flow types

With built-in semantics, flow types classify information from different source components or different steps in the cash flow lifecycle from forecast to actual.

- Liquidity items

Liquidity items represent the use and purpose of the cash flow. Typically with liquidity items and the defined hierarchical structures, cash flows can be classified into different categories and sub-categories in a hierarchical view, for example, cash flows for operations, cash flows for financing, and cash flows for investment.

- Planning levels and planning groups

Planning levels and planning groups help customers to filter and categorize cash data for different reporting and analytical purposes. The two attributes enable the integration between Cash Management and other components.

- House banks and house bank accounts

House bank accounts specify the bank accounts used or to be used for payments.

- Source Applications

Source applications represent the information sources relevant for Cash Management. Only activated source applications will be taken into account. For more information, see [Configuration for One Exposure from Operations](#).

### More Information

[Memo Records](#)

[Source Applications](#)

## [Flow Types](#)

[Liquidity Items and Liquidity Item Hierarchies](#)

[Planning Levels and Planning Groups](#)

[Field Status](#)

# Memo Records

## Use

Incoming and outgoing payments that are not transferred to the system of SAP S/4HANA Finance for cash management via actual postings, can be entered manually in the planning.

To work with memo records, define the following settings:

- Activated the source application **One Exposure (FI)** for relevant company codes in the [Activate Individual Source Applications](#) or the [Activate Multiple Source Applications](#) Customizing activity.

Memo records are stored in One Exposure from Operations (table FQM\_FL0W). As a result, you must activate One Exposure from Operations before you work with memo records.

You can find these Customizing activities in Customizing under **Financial Supply Chain Management** **Cash and Liquidity Management** **Cash Management** **Data Setup** .

- You have defined a planning level for memo records in the [Define Planning Levels](#) Customizing activity.

You can find this Customizing activity in Customizing under **Financial Supply Chain Management** **Cash and Liquidity Management** **Cash Management** **Planning Levels and Planning Groups** .

- Adapt your custom code to fit the new structure of memo records. For more information, see SAP Note [2781585](#).

# Cash Trade Requests

Required settings for using cash trade requests.

To use cash trade requests, define the following settings:

- In the Customizing activity [Define Basic Settings](#), select the **Enable Cash Request Integration** checkbox.

You can find this Customizing activity in Customizing under **Financial Supply Chain Management** **Cash and Liquidity Management** **General Settings** .

- In the Customizing activity [Assign Planning Levels to Cash Trade Requests](#), assign planning levels to different statuses of cash trade requests.

You can find this Customizing activity in Customizing under **Financial Supply Chain Management** **Cash and Liquidity Management** **Cash Management** **Memo Records** .

# Bank Transfers

To enable bank transfers between bank accounts in your company, define the following in Customizing activities under **Financial Accounting** **Bank Accounting** **Business Transactions** **Payment Transactions** :

- Under **Payment Request**, define clearing accounts for receiving banks in the Customizing activity **Define Clearing Accts for Receiving Bank for Acct Transfer**.
- Under **Payment Request**, define clearing accounts for paying banks in the Customizing activity **Define Clearing Accounts for Cross-Country Bank Account Transfers**.
- Under **Payment Handling** **Bank Clearing Account Determination** , define the bank clearing account determination logic in the Customizing activity **Define Account Determination**.

## Cash Concentration

To set up cash concentration, proceed as follows:

1. Define the required settings for making bank-to-bank transfers.

For more information, see [Bank-to-Bank Transfers](#).

2. Define bank account balance profiles and assign planning levels to the profiles for the calculation of bank account balance in cash concentration.

You define this setting in the Customizing under **Financial Supply Chain Management** **Cash and Liquidity Management** **Bank Account Balance Calculation** **Assign Planning Levels to Profiles** .

3. Define cash pools.

For more information, see [Defining Cash Pools](#).

4. Define cash pool hierarchies.

For more information, see [Defining Cash Pool Hierarchies](#).

## Intraday Bank Statements

If you work with intraday bank statements, configure the intraday bank statement settings that are required for the following apps:

- [Cash Flow Analyzer](#)
- [Reconcile Cash Flows - Intraday Memo Records](#)
- [Reconcile Cash Flows - Memo Records](#)
- [Bank Statement Monitor - Intraday](#)

## Related Information

[Cash Flows from Intraday Bank Statements](#)

[Cash Flow Reconciliation](#)

[Bank Statement Monitor - Intraday](#)

## Cash Flows from Intraday Bank Statements

To view cash flows from intraday bank statements in the **Cash Flow Analyzer** app, make sure that you have defined planning level for each bank account that is set for intraday bank statements in the **Manage Bank Accounts** app. Otherwise, the system cannot generate intraday memo records from intraday bank statements.

You make the specification in the **Planning Level (Memo Record)** field. You can find the field under the **Bank Statement Data** section on the **Bank Relationship** tab.

## Cash Flow Reconciliation

Before you use the **Reconcile Cash Flows - Intraday Memo Records** and **Reconcile Cash Flows - Memo Records** app, make the following settings:

### General Settings

- Define the required settings for importing bank statements.

For more information, see [Importing Bank Statements](#).

- Define the tolerance groups for cash flow reconciliation in the **Define Tolerance Groups for Cash Flow Reconciliation** Customizing activity.

When you reconcile memo records with forecasted cash flows, there might be an amount difference. The system then checks if the bank account has a defined tolerance group. If the bank account has no tolerance group assigned, or the difference exceeds the defined limit of the tolerance group, the system prompts a warning message to warn you about the notable difference.

You can find this Customizing activity in Customizing under **Financial Supply Chain Management** **Cash and Liquidity Management** **Cash Management** **Cash Flow Reconciliation** .

- In the **Manage Bank Accounts** app, define the following for relevant bank accounts on the **Bank Relationship** tab:
  - Tolerance Group for Reconciliation**: Specify the tolerance group that you want to use for this bank account.
  - Reconcile End-of-Day Memo Records**: Specify if you want to include this bank account in cash flow reconciliation for end-of-day memo records.
  - Planning Level (Memo Record)**: Specify a planning level for generating intraday memo records from intraday bank statements.
  - Reconcile Intraday Memo Records**: Specify if you want to include this bank account in cash flow reconciliation for intraday memo records.

### Settings for Reconcile Cash Flows - Memo Records

To identify memo records that represent end-of-day bank statements, define the settings in the Customizing activity **Determine End-of-Day Memo Records**.

You can find this Customizing activity under **Financial Supply Chain Management** **Cash and Liquidity Management** **Cash Management** **Cash Flow Reconciliation** .

## Bank Statement Monitor - Intraday

To use the **Bank Statement Monitor - Intraday** app, configure the following settings:

## 1. Define the bank accounts to be monitored:

Only bank accounts that are set to be monitored appear in this app. To monitor a bank account for intraday bank statements, in the [Manage Bank Accounts](#) app, select the [Upload of Intraday Statements](#) checkbox for this bank account.

### **i Note**

Bank accounts can be linked to **multiple** house bank accounts by using the **House Bank Account Connectivity** setting. However, only bank accounts that are linked to **one** house bank account can currently be monitored by the [Bank Statement Monitor - Intraday](#) app.

## 2. Define monitoring rules for checking the import status of intraday bank statements:

Depending on how banks send out intraday bank statements, you can define monitoring rules for bank accounts that have a recurring schedule for intraday bank statements.

To define monitoring rules, you use the [Define Monitoring Rules - Intraday Statements](#) app, or transaction **FCLM\_BAM\_RULE**.

For more information, see [Define Monitoring Rules - Intraday Statements](#).

## 3. Generate appointments from monitoring rules

To generate recurring appointments from monitoring rules, proceed as follows:

- a. Run transaction **SM38**.
- b. Run the program **FCLM\_BRM\_GENERATE\_APPT**.
- c. Specify the start time and end time and then run the program.

The system then generates appointments according to the defined monitoring rules for the specified period. For details, you can check the log for object **BRM\_RULE** in transaction **SLG1**.

For the [Bank Statement Monitor - Intraday](#) app to work correctly, you must make sure the appointments are generated in time. In addition to the manual process described above, you can also schedule a job in transaction **SM36** for job **SAP\_FIN\_FCLM\_BAM\_GEN\_APPTS**. For more information about the job, see SAP Note [2190119](#).

## 4. Assign monitoring rules to banks and bank accounts:

If you have opted to monitor a bank account, you must at least assign a monitoring rule to the bank account either at bank level or at bank account level. You can find the settings in the following apps:

- o In the [Manage Banks](#) app, on the **Control Data** section of the **General Data** tab, use the **Intraday Statements Rule (Bank Level)** field to define a monitoring rule at bank level.
- o In the [Manage Bank Accounts](#) app, on the **Bank Statement Data** section of the **Bank Relationship Data** tab, use the **Intraday Statements Rule (Bank Account Level)** field to define a monitoring rule at bank account level.

The rule assigned at bank level applies to all the bank accounts in this bank if there are no other rules specified for individual bank accounts.

# End-of-Day Bank Statements

If you work with end-of-day bank statements, configure the bank statement settings that are required for the following apps:

- [Cash Flow Analyzer](#)
- [Bank Statement Monitor - End of Day](#)

- **Bank Statement Monitor** (transaction FTE\_BSM)

# Cash Flows from End-of-Day Bank Statements

You can view cash flow items from end-of-day bank statements in the following apps:

- **Cash Flow Analyzer**
- **Cash Position**
- **Check Cash Flow Items**

To enable this feature, you can adopt either of the following approaches:

## Caution

Implementing both approaches at the same time may lead to duplicate cash flows in your apps.

- Retrieve bank statement items from imported end-of-day bank statements.

To use this approach, you define the following settings:

## i Note

Depending on how you would like to post your bank statements after importing them, the settings may vary. For different use cases and required settings, see the table [Settings for Integration with End-of-Day Bank Statements](#) below.

1. Make sure that you have defined required settings for the One Exposure from Operations hub and activated the required source applications accordingly.

For more information, see [Configuration for One Exposure from Operations](#) and [Financial Operations in One Exposure from Operations](#).

2. Define **Posting Category** and **Transfer Mode** settings for integrating end-of-day electronic bank statements with cash management at company code level.

You can define the company code settings in the Customizing activity **Define Settings for Bank Statements** under  **Financial Supply Chain Management**  **Cash and Liquidity Management**  **Bank Account Management** .

3. Retrieve default settings for company codes and define settings specific to bank accounts.

You do so in the [Define Bank Account Settings - Bank Statements](#) app.

Settings for Integration with End-of-Day Bank Statements

Use Case	Source Application	Posting Category	Transfer Mode
You post your bank statements immediately after importing them, so you want to see them only as accounting cash flows.	<b>One Exposure (FI)</b>	<b>Posting to Be Processed</b>	<b>Bank Statement Items Only or Balance and Bank Statement Items</b>

Use Case	Source Application	Posting Category	Transfer Mode
You post your bank statements but it's usually done at a later stage, so you want to see them as bank statement cash flows before the posting and accounting cash flows after the posting is done.	One Exposure (FI) and Bank Statement (BS)	Posting to Be Processed	Bank Statement Items Only or Balance and Bank Statement Items
You don't want to post your bank statements, so you want to see them only as bank statement cash flows.	One Exposure (FI) and Bank Statement (BS)	No Posting Processing	Bank Statement Items Only or Balance and Bank Statement Items

- Generate memo records for line items and balances from imported end-of-day bank statements.

Cash flows are then displayed in the form of memo records in the apps above.

To use this approach, set the **CM Payment Advice** indicator when importing bank statements using the **Manage Incoming Payment Files** app or in transaction FF . 5.

To avoid duplicate cash flows, you may use the following methods:

- Define different planning levels for memo records and bank statements.

You can then use the planning level filter to separate memo records that represent end-of-day bank statements from bank statement cash flows in reporting apps.

- Deactivate the source application **Bank Statement** in the One Exposure from Operations hub.

### i Note

To deactivate the source application, in the Customizing activity **Activate Individual Source Applications**, you must create an entry for the source application **Bank Statement** and mark it as **Inactive**.

This way, bank statement cash flows will not be generated in One Exposure. It ensures that you only see memo records generated from bank statements in reporting apps.

## Bank Statement Monitor - End of Day

Settings required for monitoring end-of-day bank statements.

You can monitor end-of-day bank statements using either of the following applications:

- The **Bank Statement Monitor - End of Day** app
- The **Bank Statement Monitor** SAP GUI program (transaction FTE\_BSM)

To monitor the end-of-day bank statements using the above applications, make sure you have defined the required settings below.

## General Settings

To monitor end-of-day bank statements, you must define the required settings in the **Bank Statement Data** section of the **Manage Bank Accounts** app.

If you have defined settings in the Customizing activity **Settings for Bank Statement Monitor** (transaction FTE\_BSM\_CUST), you must migrate existing settings to the **Manage Bank Accounts** app using the migration program **Migrate Settings for Bank Statement Monitor** (transaction FCLM\_BSM\_MIGRATION).

For more information, see the program documentation.

## Settings for the Bank Statement Monitor - End of Day app

To monitor a bank account in the **Bank Statement Monitor - End of Day** app, make sure the following settings have been made:

- Set the **Processing Status** indicator.

This indicator determines whether the bank statements of a bank account are monitored in the **Bank Statement Monitor - End of Day** app.

- Make sure there is at least one valid house bank account defined on the **House Bank Account Connectivity** tab of the **Manage Bank Accounts** app.
- Implement SAP Note [2964638](#).

In addition, the following settings are relevant:

- Interval** and **Interval Unit**: You can specify how often the bank statements for a bank account are imported to your system.
- Factory Calendar ID**: You can specify a calendar so that the Bank Statement Monitor ignores the import status of bank statements on non-working days.

## Settings for the Bank Statement Monitor SAP GUI Program

The following settings are relevant to the transaction FTE\_BSM:

- To monitor a bank account in this program, make sure that at least one of the following indicators have been set:
  - Processing Status**
  - Difference Status**
  - Serial Number Status**
  - Reconciliation Status**
- Define the following settings as needed:
  - Processing Status**: This indicator determines whether this status appears in the **Bank Statement Monitor**..  
The processing status indicates whether the bank statement has been processed correctly.
  - Difference Status**: This indicator determines whether this status appears in the **Bank Statement Monitor**.  
The difference status indicates whether there is a difference between the internal G/L account balance and the bank statement balance.
  - Difference Amount**: You specify a tolerance amount for the difference status.

- **Serial Number Status:** This indicator determines whether this status appears in the **Bank Statement Monitor**.

The serial number status indicates whether the sequence of the last five bank statements is complete.

- **Reconciliation Status:** This indicator determines whether this status appears in the **Bank Statement Monitor**.

The reconciliation status indicates whether there are open items in the internal account.

- **Display Item**

It determines the position at which the bank statement for this account is displayed in the **Bank Statement Monitor**.

- **Interval** and **Interval Unit:** You can specify how often the bank statements for a bank account are imported into your system.
- **Factory Calendar ID:** You can specify a calendar so that the **Bank Statement Monitor** ignores the import status of bank statements on non-working days.

## Payment Approval Process

With Bank Relationship Management, you can define different approval processes for different bank accounts by configuring payment approver groups and approval patterns. To use this function, you need to perform the following steps:

### Enable Payment Approval Process

To enable the payment approval process with payment approvers, you first need to perform the following Customizing activities for Bank Communication Management, under **Financial Supply Chain Management** **Bank Communication Management** .

1. In the Customizing activity **Payment Grouping** **Rule Maintenance** , create a rule for payment approvals.

In the rule definition, you can use payment attributes (such as company code, payment method, and currency) to define the coverage of the payment approval process. The payment approval process applies only to payments that are covered by the rule.

2. In the Customizing activity **Payment Grouping** **Additional Criteria for Payment Grouping** , define a grouping method for the rule you have defined.

To use the payment approval process with payment approvers in Bank Account Management, you need to group payment batches by house bank account. To do so, specify the rule ID and enter HKTID as the **Grpng. Field 1**. You can specify another criterion for grouping payments in **Grpng. Field 2**, if necessary.

3. (Optional) If you want to define a scenario in which payment approval is not required, for example, for payments with small amounts, you can define a rule in the Customizing activity **Release Strategy** **Marking Rules for Automatic Payment (No Approval)** .

4. (Optional) If a signature is required when users approve payments, you can configure this in the Customizing activity **Basic Settings** **Basic Settings for Approval** by creating an entry and selecting the **Signature Required** checkbox.

5. (Optional) If you want to define the signature method for approving payments, you can do so in the Customizing activity **Release Strategy** **Digital Signatures** **Specify Signature Method for Approval Using Simple Signature** .

### Configure Payment Approvers

After you enable the payment approval process in Bank Communication Management, you can proceed to configure the payment approvers and payment approval patterns in Bank Account Management. To do so, follow the process below:

## 1. Enable the payment approver function

To do so, start the Customizing activity **Enable Payment Approver Control** under **Financial Supply Chain Management** **Cash and Liquidity Management** **Bank Account Management** and enable the function by assigning the required function modules.

## 2. Define payment approver groups, approval patterns, and pattern priorities

To do so, start the Customizing activity **Define Settings for Bank Account Master Data** under **Financial Supply Chain Management** **Cash and Liquidity Management** **Bank Account Management** **Basic Settings** and configure the following:

### a. Define payment approver groups

You can group payment approvers into different business groups. For example, in your company, payments made on salary accounts need to be approved first by the HR department and then by the Finance department. In this case, you can define two payment approver groups respectively for users in these two departments.

In the bank account master data, you can define multiple payment approvers for each bank account. The system automatically sends the approval request to eligible payment approvers according to the payment approver group they belong to, the validity of the payment approver, and the amount limit the payment approver is entitled to.

### b. Define approval patterns

Approval patterns represent different approval processes. To define an approval pattern, you specify the payment approver groups involved and their corresponding approval sequences.

You can configure the approval patterns for the following scenarios:

- The payment is approved by a single signature

For this, define a sequential approval pattern with only one step.

- The payment is approved by a joint signature where more than one signature is required and payment approvers approve the payment in a certain order.

For this, define a sequential approval pattern with two to four payment approver groups.

- The payment is approved by a joint signature where more than one signature is required and payment approvers approve the payment regardless of the sequential order.

For this, define a non-sequential approval pattern with two or more payment approver groups.

### c. Assign approval patterns

You assign approval patterns to bank account types and company codes. For information about how the assignment works, see the documentation for the Customizing activity **Define Settings for Bank Account Master Data**.

## 3. Define automatic approval or rejection for cases where the system cannot find any approver or approval pattern for a payment.

To do so, you define rules for automatic approval or rejection in the **Define Automatic Approval/Rejection** view of the Customizing activity **Define Settings for Bank Account Master Data**.

By default, payments are rejected in such cases. You can make different settings for each of your company codes.

## Free Form Payments

For information about how to configure free form payments, see [Free Form Payments](#).

# Configuration for Liquidity Management

You can use either of the following approaches to perform liquidity planning:

- [Liquidity Planning with SAP Analytics Cloud](#)

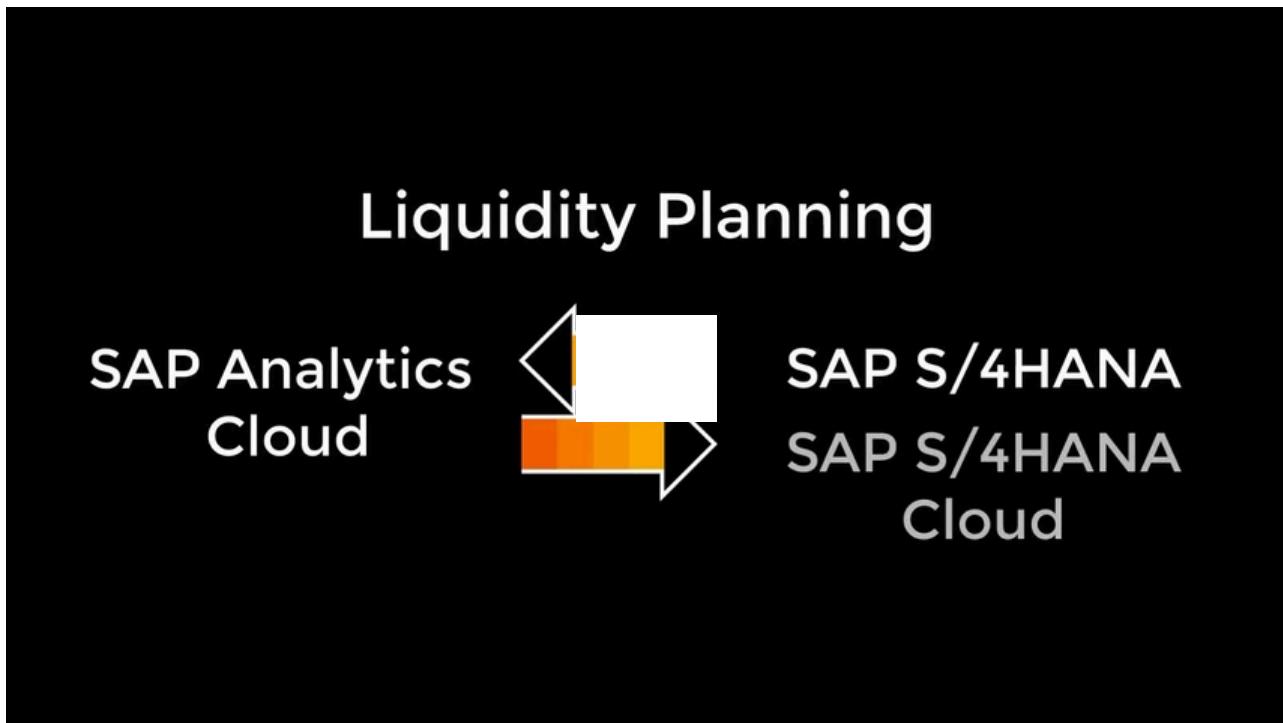
## Liquidity Planning with SAP Analytics Cloud

You can plan your future liquidity using the liquidity planning feature of SAP Analytics Cloud. After setting up the connection between SAP S/4HANA and SAP Analytics Cloud, you can develop liquidity plans in SAP Analytics Cloud based on the integrated data sources from SAP S/4HANA.

For more information about how to set up the feature, see the documents at <https://rapid.sap.com/bp/scopeitems/3L5> and <https://rapid.sap.com/bp/scopeitems/3Y0>.

Find general information about SAP Analytics Cloud, see <https://www.sapanalytics.cloud/product>.

### Liquidity Planning with SAP Analytics Cloud (English only)



[Open this video in a new window](#)

#### i Note

Captions are available for **multiple languages**. Use the **CC** (Closed Captions) button in the video player to see which languages are supported.

You can also use the **Search within video** field to search for specific text in the English or German captions.

## Configuration Tips for SAP Liquidity Planner Customers

The following should be considered if you migrate from the classic SAP Liquidity Planner to the new SAP S/4HANA Finance for cash management:

- From actual/info accounts to flow types

The classic SAP Liquidity Planner distinguishes actual accounts from info accounts. Actual accounts are G/L accounts that reflect actual incoming or outgoing payments.

In the new SAP S/4HANA Finance for cash management, the concept of flow types was introduced. The flow types classify the lifecycle of cash flows and only data assigned with flow type information can be consumed and used in Cash Management applications. To use the new SAP S/4HANA Finance for cash management, it is important to understand the new flow type concept and available configuration options before you adapt your original account settings to flow type assignment. For more information, see [Flow Types](#).

- Liquidity items and Liquidity Item Hierarchies

- In the new SAP S/4HANA Finance for cash management, the Customizing activity [Edit Liquidity Items](#) has been enhanced with a new attribute **Cash Flow Direction**. After the migration, you must specify a cash flow direction for each of the liquidity items.

For more information, see [Liquidity Items and Liquidity Item Hierarchies](#).

- Liquidity Item Hierarchy

The Customizing activity [Liquidity Item Hierarchies](#) is a mandatory customizing activity in the new SAP S/4HANA Finance for cash management. It allows you to group liquidity items into different hierarchical structures for various business uses.

You must set up this Customizing activity if you haven't done so in classic SAP Liquidity Planner.

- Liquidity item definition for Liquidity Management

If you want use the Liquidity Management functions in the new SAP S/4HANA Finance for cash management, note that SAP has provided predefined liquidity items and sample liquidity item hierarchy.

- Liquidity item derivation

- In the classic SAP Liquidity Planner, the transaction FLQINFACC is used to define liquidity items for info accounts. In the new SAP S/4HANA Finance for cash management, the transaction can still be used to define default liquidity items for G/L accounts. It can also be accessed via the Customizing activity [Define Default Liquidity Items for G/L Accounts](#). Liquidity items are first derived according to the customer-configured query sequences. If the query sequence fails to determine a liquidity item, default liquidity item defined here is used and recorded in accounting document line items table.

### **i Note**

The Customizing activity [Define Default Liquidity Items for G/L Accounts](#) is not cross-client.

- Queries and query sequences

Queries and query sequences are still used to derive liquidity items. To reuse your configuration settings, note the following:

- Query origins except C (other types of accounting documents) and D (invoices) are no longer supported.
- Queries that are defined with origin C or D are supported with the new SAP S/4HANA Finance for cash management.

You are recommended to evaluate and test the queries before you go live with SAP S/4HANA Finance for cash management, just to ensure that they work as expected with the new SAP S/4HANA Finance for cash

management.

For more information, see [Derive Liquidity Items for Accounting Documents](#) in [Liquidity Items and Liquidity Item Hierarchies](#).

- In the new SAP S/4HANA Finance for cash management, the concept One Exposure from Operations was introduced. The One Exposure from Operations hub works as a central storage location of operation data that is relevant for cash management. Source applications, for example bank statements (origin B in the classic SAP Liquidity Planner), can be set up for the One Exposure from Operations hub. You can use query origins C and D to derive liquidity item for Financial Operations, and query origin X to derive liquidity items for all other source applications integrated into the One Exposure from Operations hub.

For more information, see [Configuration for One Exposure from Operations](#).

- Exit function and other extensions

- If you have used exit functions in the classic SAP Liquidity Planner, you need to review the logic and adapt the code to the new exit function template `FCLM_LQF_DERIVE_LQITEM_SAMPLE`.
- If you have implemented other extensions, they may not be supported any more. For example, you have added custom fields to the liquidity planner tables (`FLQ*` tables) in the classic SAP Liquidity Planner. However, the fields are no longer supported as the new SAP S/4HANA Finance for cash management consumes data only from the `BSEG` table and the `FQM_FL0W` table.

You are recommended to evaluate if the extensions are still needed with the new SAP S/4HANA Finance for cash management, as with the new document chain derivation mechanism, most of the important analysis dimensions are available for analyzing the source and use of cash, for example, liquidity item, house bank account, WBS element, profit center, and so on.

## One Exposure from Operations

### Definition

The One Exposure from Operations hub is a real-time collection point and storage location for operational data that is relevant for managing cash and liquidity. The provision of the data in the One Exposure from Operations hub facilitates funds planning and risk management across multiple companies.

### Concept

A certainty level describes the likelihood, or reliability, of a cash flow forecast. Certainty levels are assigned internally by the program based on the source application and the process that generated the cash flow.

A flow type describes the liquidity-related property of the accounting line item. The financial accounting Flow Builder uses this property to interpret accounting line items and generate appropriate cash flows in One Exposure from Operations.

Flow types are assigned to flow categories, which are predefined and cannot be changed. Each flow category belongs to a specific flow category level. The numeric sequence of the flow category level determines the order of the line items within the document chain. The financial accounting Flow Builder uses this order to build the cash flow in One Exposure from Operations. The order represents the complete lifecycle of the cash flow.

### Use

The One Exposure from Operations hub can receive operational data from sources within the system in which it runs itself, as well as from external sources. Currently it can receive data from the following sources:

## Sources Within the Same System (one-system scenario)

Source Application	Source ID	Default Flow Types	Flow Types Available for Configuration
<a href="#">Financial Operations</a>	BKPF P2P	900900 – Incoming Cash from Invoices  900901 – Outgoing Cash from Invoices  900902 – Incoming Cash from Payments  900903 – Outgoing Cash from Payments  900910 – Incoming Cash from Bank Statements  900911 – Outgoing Cash from Bank Statements  900900 - Incoming Forecast Cash (P2P)	Not applicable
<a href="#">Treasury and Risk Management</a>	TRM	900100 – Incoming Bank Cash (TRM)  900101 – Outgoing Bank Cash (TRM)	Not applicable
<a href="#">Consumer and Mortgage Loans</a>	CML	900104 – Incoming Bank Cash (CML)  900105 – Outgoing Bank Cash (CML)	Not applicable
<a href="#">Contract Accounts Receivable and Payable</a>	FICA	900106 – Incoming Cash (FI-CA)  900107 – Outgoing Cash (FI-CA)	Not applicable
<a href="#">Materials Management</a>	MM	900000 – Incoming Bank Cash  900001 – Outgoing Bank Cash	Not applicable
<a href="#">Sales and Distribution</a>	SDCM	900000 – Incoming Bank Cash  900001 – Outgoing Bank Cash  900018 – Incoming Bank Cash (Tax)  900019 – Outgoing Bank Cash (Tax)	Not applicable
<a href="#">End-of-Day Bank Statements</a>	BS	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• 900002 (<a href="#">Incoming Bank Confirmed Cash in Transit Increase</a>)</li> <li>• 900003 (<a href="#">Incoming Bank Confirmed Cash</a>)</li> </ul>	Not applicable

Source Application	Source ID	Default Flow Types	Flow Types Available for Configuration
		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• 900004 (<a href="#">Outgoing Bank Confirmed Cash in Transit Increase</a>)</li> <li>• 900005 (<a href="#">Incoming Bank Confirmed Cash Increase</a>)</li> <li>• 900006 (<a href="#">Incoming Bank Confirmed Cash Increase</a>)</li> <li>• 900008 (<a href="#">Outgoing Bank Confirmed Cash Increase</a>)</li> <li>• 900014 (<a href="#">Incoming Bank Cash Increase</a>)</li> <li>• 900015 (<a href="#">Incoming Bank Cash Decrease</a>)</li> <li>• 900017 (<a href="#">Outgoing Bank Cash Decrease</a>)</li> </ul>	
<a href="#">Memo Records</a>	MMRD	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• 900000 (<a href="#">Incoming Bank Cash</a>)</li> <li>• 900001 (<a href="#">Outgoing Bank Cash</a>)</li> </ul>	Not applicable

## External Sources (side-by-side scenario)

Source Name	Source ID	Default Flow Types	Flow Types Available for Configuration
<a href="#">Classic Cash Management</a>	CMSND, CMDSR	900110 – Incoming Cash (IDoc) 900111 – Outgoing Cash (IDoc)	900108 – Cash Balance Increase (IDoc) 900109 – Cash Balance Decrease (IDoc)
<a href="#">Manual Entry of Bank Cash Balances</a>	MEBAC	900102 – Bank Cash Balance Increase 900103 – Bank Cash Balance Decrease	Not applicable
<a href="#">SAP Liquidity Planner</a>	LPA	900112 – Incoming Cash (LP) 900113 – Outgoing Cash (LP)	Not applicable
Inbound SOAP Webservice for Cash Flows		900900 - Incoming Bank Cash from Invoices	Not applicable

Source Name	Source ID	Default Flow Types	Flow Types Available for Configuration
		900910 – Outgoing Cash Bank Cash from Invoices	

The source application **One Exposure (FI)** is a prerequisite for all other source applications. You must activate this source application for a company code first to enable the One Exposure from Operations hub to receive data. Then you can activate additional source applications for that company code.

You activate source applications in the Customizing activities under **Financial Supply Chain Management** **Cash and Liquidity Management** **Cash Management** **Data Setup**.

To give users access to the data stored in the **One Exposure from Operations** hub, you use the following authorization object: **FQM\_FLOW**.

### i Note

Original System is a key information to differentiate flows that are stored in One Exposure. If the original system is changed, it will probably cause severe data issue in One Exposure. The flows in the old original system cannot be updated automatically in the new original system.

In the case when the original system is changed, you are suggested to delete flows with the old original system using the **FQM\_DELETE** program and rebuild flows with the new original system using the **FQM\_INITIALIZE** and the **FCLM\_FLOW\_BUILDER** programs, in order to avoid the issue.

## Financial Operations in One Exposure from Operations

### Use

You can integrate invoices and payments from Accounts Receivable/Accounts Payable (AR/AP) into One Exposure from Operations. In this integration scenario, the source application Financial Operations and One Exposure from Operations run in the same system (one-system scenario).

### Prerequisites

You have activated the source application **Financial Operations** for a company code using the following Customizing activity: **Financial Supply Chain Management** **Cash and Liquidity Management** **Cash Management** **Data Setup** **Activate Individual Source Applications**.

### Activities

The information is then consumed by cash management apps, such as:

- [Cash Flow Analyzer](#)
- [Check Cash Flow Items](#)

### More Information

[Integration of Accounting Documents](#)

# Integration of Accounting Documents

## Use

The system classifies accounting document (journal entry) line items into the following categories:

- Posting on a customer or vendor account (Receivables or Payables)
- Posting on a bank clearing account (Cash in Transit)
- Posting on a bank account (Cash)

The system distinguishes the different categories as follows:

- Receivable or Payable
  - Items with account type D (Customer) or K (Vendor)

- Cash in Transit
  - Items with a G/L account that is:

Either

- Maintained in account determination of payment program (T042I)
- A balance sheet account (SKA1-XBILK)
- Not a reconciliation account (SKB1-MITKZ)

Or

- Maintained in account determination of bank-to-bank transfer (T042Y)
- A balance sheet account (SKA1-XBILK)
- Not a reconciliation account (SKB1-MITKZ)

Or

- Marked as cash relevant (SKB1-XGKON) and
- With open item management (SKB1-XOPVW)

- Cash

- Items with a G/L account that is:

Either

- Maintained in house bank accounts (T012K)

Or

- Marked as cash relevant (SKB1-XGKON) and
- Without open item management (SKB1-XOPVW)

For these accounting document items, the system derives the following **flow types**:

## i Note

The system only recognizes “positions”, examples of which are Regular Receivables, Unallocated Receivables, or Incoming Bank Confirmed Cash. Every position is considered separately and thus, first added to then subtracted from One Exposure. For further information, see the examples in [Integration of Bank Statements](#).

Accounting Document Item	Default Flow Types
Receivable or Payable	600000 - Regular Receivables Increase 600001 - Regular Payables Increase 600200 - Unallocated Receivables Increase 600201 - Unallocated Payables Increase
Revenue and Expenses	600500 - Delivered Goods/Services Increase 600501 - Received Goods/Services Increase 600510 - Received Goods/Services Decrease 600511 - Delivered Goods/Services Decrease
Tax	300000 - Input Tax Increase 300001 - Output Tax Increase 300010 - Output Tax Decrease 300011 - Input Tax Decrease
Cash in Transit	800006 - Incoming Cash in Transit Increase 800008 - Outgoing Cash in Transit Increase
Cash	900006 - Incoming Bank Confirmed Cash Increase 900008 - Outgoing Bank Confirmed Cash Increase

## Date and Amount

The transaction date and amount are determined based on the billing date and the invoiced amount together with the payment terms.

For these accounting document items, the system offers the following options to derive **liquidity items**:

- Based on G/L accounts

Use the following Customizing activity: [Financial Supply Chain Management](#) [Cash and Liquidity Management](#) [Cash Management](#) [Liquidity Items](#) [Derivation Rules for Liquidity Items](#) [Define Default Liquidity Items for G/L Accounts](#) .

- Based on queries of origin C (for Receivables or Payable) or D (Cash in Transit or Cash)

Use the following Customizing activity: [Financial Supply Chain Management](#) [Cash and Liquidity Management](#) [Cash Management](#) [Liquidity Items](#) [Derivation Rules for Liquidity Items](#) [Define Queries for Liquidity Item Derivation](#) .

- Based on a derivation function (exit)

Use the following Customizing activity: [Financial Supply Chain Management](#) [Cash and Liquidity Management](#) [Cash Management](#) [Liquidity Items](#) [Derivation Rules for Liquidity Items](#) [Define Liquidity Item Derivation Settings for](#)

## Company Codes

For these accounting document items, the system offers the following options to derive **planning levels**:

- From the G/L account, where it is defined in the master record for company code-specific data.
- For customer or vendor postings, it is derived from the planning group.

Use the following Customizing activity:  **Financial Supply Chain Management**  **Cash and Liquidity Management**  **Cash Management**  **Planning Levels and Planning Groups**  **Define Planning Groups** .

- For special G/L transactions, such as down payment requests, you can derive specific planning levels.

Use the following Customizing activities:  **Financial Supply Chain Management**  **Cash and Liquidity Management**  **Cash Management**  **Planning Levels and Planning Groups**  **Special G/L Transaction Levels** .

- Customers upgrading from the classic cash management can use the existing settings for the planning level when integrating **Accounting Documents** into One Exposure.

One Exposure derives cash forecasts for items representing receivables, payables, or cash in transit, and it stores actual cash from items representing cash. It stores this information with the following certainty levels.

Certainty Level	Description	Meaning
ACTUAL	Actual	Accounting document line items from bank statements or accounting document line items with G/L accounts representing cash
SI_CIT	Self-Initiated Cash in Transit	Cash forecast from a self-initiated payment
REC_N	Regular Receivable	Cash forecast from an open item of a receivable
PAY_N	Regular Payable	Cash forecast from an open item of a payable

These forecasts and actuals contain information inherited from the offsetting accounting document line items of the corresponding receivable or payable. They are split based on this inherited information. The inheritance uses the linkage between the affected accounting document items to analyze these accounting document chains. By doing so, the following information from the offsetting accounting document line items of the receivable or payable is available in the forecasts and actuals:

- Accounting Assignments:
  - Business Area
  - Profit Center
  - Cost Center
  - WBS Element or a Project
  - Segment
  - Company
  - Material
- Liquidity Item

## Example

The following example illustrates the inheritance and split logic for both forecasts and actuals:

1. A company receives a vendor invoice. The company purchased materials for two different cost centers, CC01 and CC02. This information is passed on to the cash forecast of the payable and thus this cash forecast is split into two flows according to the expense line items.

Vendor Invoice	Cash Forecast
Expense 01: 60 EUR for CC01	Forecast from Payable for CC01: 60 EUR
Expense 02: 40 EUR for CC02	Forecast from Payable for CC02: 40 EUR
Account Payable: 100 EUR	

2. The company then pays this vendor invoice. The cost center information is passed on to the cash forecast from cash in transit and thus this cash forecast is split into two flows according to the expense line items.

Vendor Payment	Cash Forecast
Account Payable: 100 EUR	Forecast from Cash in Transit for CC01: 60 EUR
Bank Clearing Account: 100 EUR	Forecast from Cash in Transit for CC02: 40 EUR

3. This payment is then confirmed by a bank statement. The cost center information is passed on to the actual cash from the bank statement and thus this actual cash is split into two flows according to the expense line items.

Bank Statement	Actual Cash
Bank Account: 100 EUR	Actual Cash for CC01: 60 EUR
Bank Clearing Account: 100 EUR	Actual Cash for CC02: 40 EUR

The following flow types are generated for forecasts and actuals in One Exposure:

Forecasts and Actuals	Default Flow Types
Cash Forecasts from Receivables or Payables	900900 - Incoming Cash from Invoices 900901 - Outgoing Cash from Invoices
Cash Forecasts from Cash in Transit	900902 - Incoming Cash from Payments 900903 - Outgoing Cash from Payments
Actuals from Cash	900910 - Incoming Allocated Cash Increase 900911 - Outgoing Allocated Cash Increase

## Central Finance

If Central Finance is deployed, all accounting documents that were created based on the accounting documents from your local systems can also be integrated into One Exposure. Accounting document line items in a Central Finance system are, then categorized in the same way as described above and integrated into One Exposure accordingly. With Central Finance, therefore, a side-by-side scenario for integrating accounting documents into One Exposure is also possible.

# Activities

## Customizing Activities

- **Assign Flow Types to G/L Accounts**

If you want additional accounting document items to be processed by One Exposure from Operations, you have to define them using this Customizing activity. You do this by assigning the corresponding G/L accounts to the following flow types, which are currently available to you. For example:

Category of Accounting Document Item	Default Flow Types
Cash in Transit	800006 - Incoming Cash in Transit Increase 800008 - Outgoing Cash in Transit Increase
Cash	900006 - Incoming Bank Confirmed Cash Increase 900008 - Outgoing Bank Confirmed Cash Increase

If an item debits an account of this type, the system uses the first flow type; if an item credits the account, the system uses the second flow type. These flow types are provided as standard. There is no need to create additional customer-specific flow types in this case.

 **Caution**

Do not assign flow types to a G/L account that is characterized as a reconciliation account.

 **Note**

You repeat the following Customizing activities each time an additional company code is activated for the source application **Financial Operations**.

- **Rebuild Flow Types in Accounting Documents**

If you want to process existing accounting document line items, you use this activity to derive and rebuild flow types for those line items.

- **Rebuild Liquidity Items in Accounting Documents**

If you want to process existing accounting document line items, you use this activity to derive and rebuild liquidity items for those line items. This Customizing activity offers two modes to derive liquidity items:

- **Initial Load** for initial runs
- **Rebuild** for rebuilding liquidity items subsequent to an initial run

- **Rebuild Planning Levels, Groups, Dates in Accounting Documents**

If you want to process existing accounting document line items, you use this activity to derive and rebuild planning levels, planning groups, and planning dates for those line items.

- **Load Transaction Data from Source Applications into One Exposure from Operations Hub**

If you want to integrate transaction data that had already been created before the source application **Financial Operations** was activated, you use this Customizing activity.

Alternatively, you can also use the Customizing activity **Build Cash Flows from Operations** to load transaction data from the source application **Financial Operations** into One Exposure.

- [Customize the Flow Builder](#)

If you want the system to trigger regular updates of accounting documents into One Exposure, you use this activity to schedule automatic background jobs.

For more information, see [Flow Builder](#).

- [Delete Data from One Exposure from Operations Hub](#)

If you want to use a new starting point within an implementation project, you can use this Customizing activity to delete all existing data or the source application **Financial Operations** from One Exposure. You do this for each company code and source application.

For more information, see [Flow Builder](#).

## More Information

[Integration of Bank Statements](#)

[One Exposure from Operations](#)

## Flow Builder Plus

### Business Context

Flow Builder Plus introduces new configuration which enables generating cash position cash flows and liquidity analysis cash flows by:

- Tracing the original document line items from the related Financial Accounting (FI) and Materials Management (MM) tables.
- Analyzing the document flow back to the source (original) document. The analysis is based on virtually clearing the open items in the preceding and subsequent documents, which results in precise amount, date, and account assignment. Items in the preceding documents are called base items, while items in the subsequent documents are called offsetting items.
- Generating cash flows, according to the remaining offsetting items that are not cleared in the source (original) document. Each cash flow is split according to the offsetting items in the subsequent documents and the account assignment as inherited from the offsetting items in the source (original) document.
- Importing the cash flows with the split amounts, dates, and liquidity items over into the One Exposure from Operations hub. Cash flows are then categorized into different certainty levels in One Exposure from Operations for further calculation and consumption.

### Overview

Cash position cash flow is the cash flow from the FI data source which does not include the liquidity analysis (document chain tracing). It can be used in daily cash position operation scenarios with fast, accurate and easy to transfer attributes.

Cash position as the real time integration with FI, all account assignments available in both FQM\_FLOW and BSEG will be covered.

Liquidity analysis cash flow is the cash flow from the FI data source which includes the liquidity analysis (liquidity item information with document chain tracing). It can be used in detail liquidity analysis scenarios like actual cash flow analysis, long term cash flow forecast with the liquidity item. In some cases, liquidity analysis cash flows still can be used in daily cash position reports if liquidity item derivation can be executed in a short time interval.

## Process

The following figure shows how the Flow Builder works. Based on the original transactional data from the related FI and MM tables, the Flow Builder generates cash-relevant flows, reflecting amount, date, flow level, liquidity item and other account assignments, which are then imported to One Exposure from Operations.

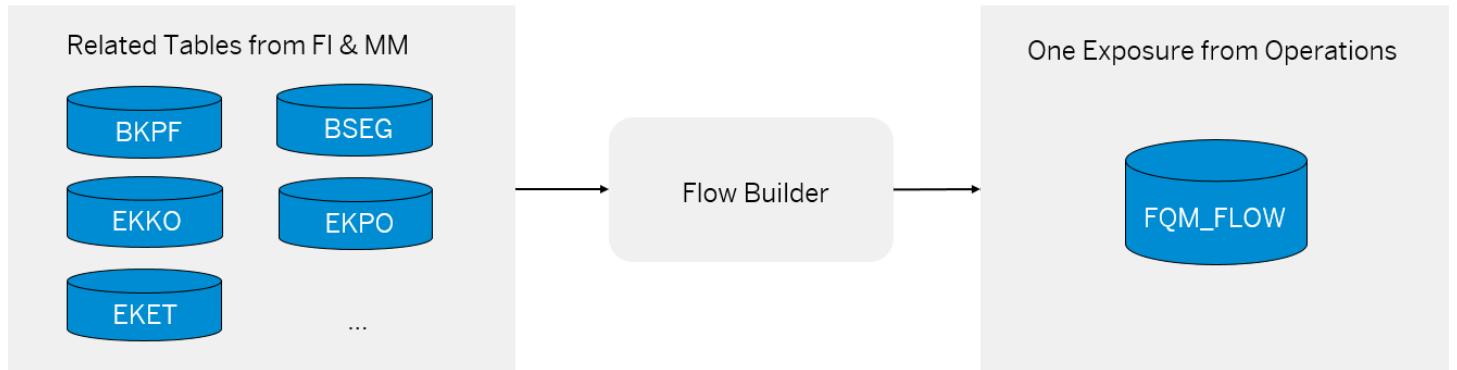


Figure 1. How Flow Builder works

## Example

The following example is based on a supplier invoice. The incoming invoice (1a) is cleared via an outgoing payment (2a). Posting on the supplier account is categorized as **PAY\_N**, cash forecast from an open item of a payable. After that, the amount can be found in a bank clearing account for outgoing payments. Posting on the bank clearing account is categorized as **cash in transit** with certainty level **SI\_CIT**, cash forecast from a self-initiated payment. Then the bank clearing account is debited and the transaction is posted at which point the bank clearing account is cleared (3a). This posting is categorized as **cash** with certainty level **ACTUAL**, accounting document line items from bank statements.

Based on flow types, the Flow Builder traces the document chain back to its source. In the example below, this is the expense account, which shows a cash outflow of 100 EUR in liquidity item E01. The expense account shows other account assignment information, such as cost center, company code, and so on.

## Retrograde Tracing

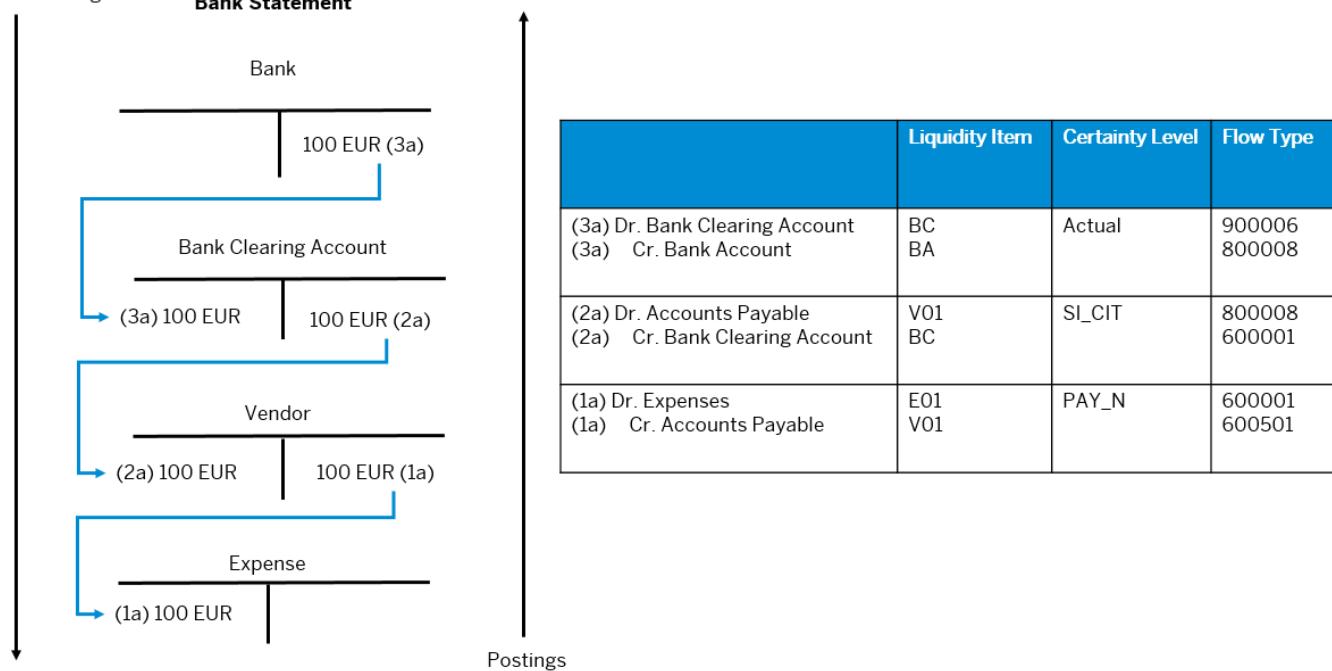


Figure 2. An Example of Document Chain Analysis

Typical accounting scenarios in Flow Builder Plus:

- Account payable and account receivable (considering VST/VAT)
- Incoming payment and outgoing payment (considering WHT in liquidity analysis)
- Bank statement related posting

### i Note

In the configuration activity **Define Liquidity Item Derivation Mode for Flow Builder** under **Financial Supply Chain Management** **Cash and Liquidity Management** **Cash Management** **Data Setup**, you have the following two options for liquidity item derivation mode:

- **Derive Liquidity Item Online:** Query sequences are evaluated during the chain tracing to derive liquidity items.
- **Fetch Liquidity Item from Table BSEG:** Liquidity items are directly fetched from BSEG which were derived when the accounting document is posted.

If you want to have liquidity items derived from query sequences in real-time, choose **Derive Liquidity Item Online**. This mode only works when the liquidity analysis update mode of the corresponding company code is **Deferred**.

In this case, if you want to support query sequences of the bank statement, select the checkbox **Liquidity Item on Bank Account** in the configuration activity **Define Basic Settings for Liquidity Analysis** under **Financial Supply Chain Management** **Cash and Liquidity Management** **Cash Management** **Liquidity Items** **Derivation Rules for Liquidity Items**.

- G/L manual posting to bank or bank clearing G/L accounts
- Down payment request and F110 payment request
- Partial payment and residual payment
- Reset document and reverse document
- Cross company code posting
- Parked documents

- Payment order
- Promise order
- Promise to pay
- Payment request
- Bill of exchange
- Cash journal posting to accounting

## Prerequisites

To use the Flow Builder Plus, make the required settings in the configuration guide under **Financial Supply Chain Management**  **Cash and Liquidity Management**  **Cash Management** .

Most of the source applications can be integrated for real-time update into One Exposure from Operations and the transactional data can be consumed by SAP S/4HANA Finance for cash management and the relevant Cash Management apps. The key change in Flow Builder Plus is related to one source Accounting Documents (FI). You can set different accounting scopes as per different company codes.

**Example A: Focus on Cash Position Only for all Company Codes**

If you want to support this use case, select **Optimized data model and algorithm** in the configuration guide under **Financial Supply Chain Management**  **Cash and Liquidity Management**  **General Settings**  **Define Basic Settings** .

In the configuration guide under **Financial Supply Chain Management**  **Cash and Liquidity Management**  **Cash Management**  **Data Setup**  **Define Source Application Accounting** , set the company code as blank, set the accounting scope as **Cash Position Only**, set the liquidity analysis update mode as **Not Relevant**.

By this configuration, you can get the instant cash position per bank account based on the bank account balance. You do not need to go through the document chain tracing for the liquidity item derivation. Simple liquidity item determination or manual input is enough.

**Recommended Frontend Apps:**

- Bank Account Balance
  - **Manage Bank Account Balances**
  - **Monitor Bank Account Balances**
- Short-Term Cash Positioning
  - **Define Cash Position Profiles**
  - **Short-Term Cash Positioning**
- Other Cash Management Apps

In the configuration guide under **Financial Supply Chain Management**  **Cash and Liquidity Management**  **Cash Management**  **Data Setup**  **Define default liquidity items for liquidity analysis** , set the dummy / default liquidity items is not needed in this case.

**Example B: Focus on Liquidity Analysis Only for all Company Codes**

If you want to support this use case, select **Optimized data model and algorithm** in the configuration guide under **Financial Supply Chain Management**  **Cash and Liquidity Management**  **General Settings**  **Define Basic Settings** .

In the configuration guide under **Financial Supply Chain Management** **Cash and Liquidity Management** **Cash Management** **Data Setup** **Define source application accounting** , set company code as blank, set the accounting scope as **Liquidity Analysis Only**.

In this case, you have three options for the liquidity analysis update mode:

- **Deferred - Delta Table Update**
- **Close to Real Time**
- **Deferred - No Delta Table Update**

Liquidity Analysis Update Mode **Close to Real Time** means that the mode can be integrated for real time update into One Exposure.

Deferred - Delta Table Update means that in this mode, you need to run a job to generate liquidity analysis cash flows, and there's data stored in the delta table to generate flows.

Deferred - No Delta Table Update means that in this mode, you need to do mass run to generate liquidity analysis cash flows from scratch, and there's no data stored in the delta table.

By this configuration, you can analyze the actual cash flows in the past. The main data source is the actual cash flows in Accounting. You can rely on the document chain in Accounting to do the liquidity item derivation. The detail analysis report is prepared on a regular basis.

Recommended Frontend Apps:

- Liquidity Analysis
  - **Cash Flow Analyzer**
  - **Check Cash Flow Item**
- Other Cash Management Apps
  - for actual Cash Flow Analysis

In the configuration guide under **Financial Supply Chain Management** **Cash and Liquidity Management** **Cash Management** **Data Setup** **Define Default Liquidity Items for Liquidity Analysis** , set the dummy / default liquidity items is suggested in this case.

Four default dummy liquidity items could be assigned:

- Non-Assigned Incoming Payments
- Non-Assigned Outgoing Payments
- Incoming Cash Transfer
- Outgoing Cash Transfer

The dummy / default liquidity items keep the amount value for some time and then the value is settled to the info / detailed liquidity items you have defined in the system.

Example C: Focus both on Cash Position and Liquidity Analysis for all Company Codes

If you want to support this use case, select **Optimized data model and algorithm** in the configuration guide under **Financial Supply Chain Management** **Cash and Liquidity Management** **General Settings** **Define Basic Settings** .

In the configuration guide under [Financial Supply Chain Management](#) [Cash and Liquidity Management](#) [Cash Management](#) [Data Setup](#) [Define Source Application Accounting](#) , set company code as blank, set accounting scope as [Cash Position & Liquidity Analysis](#).

In this case, you have three options on the liquidity analysis update mode:

- [Deferred - Delta Table Update](#)
- [Close to Real Time](#)
- [Deferred - No Delta Table Update](#)

[Close to Real Time](#) means that this mode can be integrated for real time update into One Exposure.

[Deferred - Delta Table Update](#) means that in this mode you need to run a job to generate liquidity analysis cash flows, and there's data stored in the delta table to generate cash flows.

[Deferred - No Delta Table Update](#) means that in this mode when you do mass run, the liquidity analysis cash flows will be generated, and there's no data stored in the delta table.

By this configuration, you can get the instant cash position (both balance and forecasted cash flows). You can rely on the document chain in Accounting to do the liquidity item derivation for both forecasted and actual cash flows. You can use different update models to generate liquidity analysis cash flows.

Recommended Frontend Apps:

- Bank Account Balance
  - [Manage Bank Account Balances](#)
  - [Monitor Bank Account Balances](#)
- Short Term Cash Positioning
  - [Define Cash Position Profiles](#)
  - [Short-Term Cash Positioning](#)
- Liquidity Analysis
  - [Cash Flow Analyzer](#)
  - [Check Cash Flow Item](#)
- Other Cash Management Apps
  - [for Liquidity Analysis](#)

In the configuration guide under [Financial Supply Chain Management](#) [Cash and Liquidity Management](#) [Cash Management](#) [Data Setup](#) [Define Default Liqduidity Items for Liquidity Analysis](#) , set the dummy / default liquidity items is suggested in this case.

Four default dummy liquidity items could be assigned:

- Non-Assigned Incoming Payments
- Non-Assigned Outgoing Payments
- Incoming Cash Transfer

- Outgoing Cash Transfer

The dummy / default liquidity items keep the amount value for some time and then the value is settled to the info / detailed liquidity items you have defined in the system.

Example D: Focus both on Cash Position and Liquidity Analysis per Company Code

If you want to support this use case, select **Optimized data model and algorithm** in the configuration guide under **Financial Supply Chain Management** ➤ **Cash and Liquidity Management** ➤ **General Settings** ➤ **Define Basic Settings**.

In the configuration guide under **Financial Supply Chain Management** ➤ **Cash and Liquidity Management** ➤ **Cash Management** ➤ **Data Setup** ➤ **Define Source Application Accounting**, set company code as needed, set the accounting scope and liquidity analysis update mode as per each company code.

By this flexible configuration, it will not be necessary to generate liquidity analysis cash flows for some non-critical company codes. You can generate both cash position and liquidity analysis cash flows for critical company codes.

Recommended Frontend Apps:

- Bank Account Balance
  - **Manage Bank Account Balances**
  - **Monitor Bank Account Balances**
- Short-Term Cash Positioning
  - **Define Cash Position Profiles**
  - **Short-Term Cash Positioning**
- Liquidity Analysis
  - **Cash Flow Analyzer**
  - **Check Cash Flow Items**
- Other Cash Management Apps
  - for Liquidity Analysis

## Activities

The Flow Builder program uses the accounting interface (RWIN) to trace back to the original documents, which are stored in delta tables. The Setting and Tools feature controls the background jobs based on the delta tables. Flows are then built automatically or manually.

### **Flow Builder Plus (FCLM\_FLOW\_BUILDER\_2)**

You can run this transaction to run Flow Builder Plus. Flows are built either in the **Delta Run** mode, or in the **Mass Run** mode:

- In the **Delta Run** mode, flows are built automatically as the back-end job of the program is triggered after online posting of FI documents.
- In the **Mass Run** mode, however, flows are built manually with certain search criteria, such as company code, fiscal year, document number, and line item. As an example, in the case of an initialization and flow rebuild, you would want to use the Mass Run mode instead of the Delta Run mode.

## i Note

For MM documents, the selection criteria differs according to different data sources:

- For purchase orders (PO) and scheduling agreements, you can select company code, fiscal year, document number and line item.
- For purchase requisitions (PR), you can select from several criteria, such as purchase requisitions, item of requisitions, document type, and so on.

Flow Builder also allows you to perform the following activities:

- **Merge Tax Items**

Merge Tax Items is an indicator for processing amount of Value-Added Tax (VAT) in Cash Management. If you clear this indicator, flow for VAT will be stored as a separated flow in Cash Management. If you set this indicator, flow for VAT will merge with corresponding flow for purchase or sales amount in the same Accounting document.

**Example**

You have one supplier invoice document. All amounts are in currency EUR.

Post Key	Account	Description	Account	Transaction
31	S01	My Supplier	-100.00	EGK
40	400000	Raw material	93.46	
40	154000	Input tax	6.54	VST

## Extensibility

### Enhancement Points

Enhancement Point FCLM\_FB2\_EXT

This enhancement provides the below interfaces:

- **DOC\_FKONT\_EXT**

This interface is to adjust FKONT of a document item in offsetting document. FKONT of an item affects how the item would be paired to other items in a document and how account assignments are replaced in chain tracing. The interface provides the document keys and the document item keys together with amounts and flow type (also flow level), as well as the FKONT decided by default.

- **CLR\_FKONT\_EXT**

This interface is to adjust FKONT of a document item in offsetting clearing. FKONT of an item affects how the item would be paired to other items in a clearing relationship and how account assignments are replaced in chain tracing. The interface provides the clearing information together with account information, and the document item keys together with amounts and flow type (also flow level), as well as the FKONT decided by default.

- **DOC\_LR\_EXT**

This interface is to adjust pairing side of a document item in offsetting document. It directly decides how the item would be paired to other items in a document, overwriting the default decision by FKONT. The interface provides the document keys

and the document item keys together with amounts and flow type (also flow level), as well as the side (value 'L' or 'R') decided by default.

- CLR\_LR\_EXT

This interface is to adjust pairing side of a document item in offsetting clearing. It directly decides how the item would be paired to other items in a clearing relationship, overwriting the default decision by FKONT. The interface provides the clearing information together with account information, and the document item keys together with amounts and flow type (also flow level), as well as the side (value 'L' or 'R') decided by default.

- FINAL\_DECISION\_EXT

This interface is to adjust the decision whether a flow has been completely built in Flow Builder 2.0. The interface provides the original item and offset item of a flow together with FKONTs on both side and current split amounts, as well as the final flag decided by default. You can change the final flag if you think the flow tracing should stop or go further. Final flag is the only field which could be modified. Changing the item keys would possibly cause flow lost.

#### Enhancement Point ES\_FQM\_FLOW\_ADJUST\_CORE

This enhancement is reused for all the source applications considered in OneExposure. You can adjust all aspects of the resulting flows to your needs. Validation is applied afterwards. The origin reference together with origin flow id must be unique; origin transaction must not be created; and company code must note be changed.

## More Information

- [One Exposure from Operations](#)
- [Integration of Accounting Documents](#)
- [Integration of Bank Statements](#)

### i Note

One Exposure from Operations generates actual cash flows for bank statements that are imported with no posting. If bank statements are imported with FI document posting, the Flow Builder generates actual cash flows based on the FI document and also clears the flows in One Exposure from Operations.

- [Materials Management in One Exposure from Operations](#)

## Integration of Promise to Pay

Promise to Pay integrates into One Exposure from Operations.

## Use

With the Promise to Pay (from Collections Management) integration, you can now get an updated forecasted cash flows whenever there's the creation of promise to pay document against customer invoice and the updates of its follow-up activity.

In this integration scenario, the source application Promise to Pay and One Exposure from Operations run in the same system (one-system scenario). Forecasted cash contains the following information from Promise to Pay:

- **Account Assignments**

Account assignments are inherited from customer invoice against which the promise to pay document is created.

- **Certainty Level**

One Exposure from Operations derives cash forecasts for items representing promise to pay. It stores this information with the certainty level **FIP2P**.

- **Flow Type**

The system uses the following flow type for forecast cash in One Exposure from Operations:

Default Flow Types
900900 - Incoming Forecast Cash (P2P)

- **Planning Group**

The system uses the planning group that is defined in the customer master data.

If errors occur during data upload, the system collects these errors in an application log. You can access it with transaction code FQM\_APPLICATION\_LOG.

## Activities

To enable the integration, make the required data initialization that are located in the Customizing activities under **Financial Supply Chain Management** **Cash and Liquidity Management** **Cash Management** .

### [Load Transaction Data from Source Applications into One Exposure from Operations](#)

You use this Customizing activity to load transaction data into One Exposure from Operations. You choose the **BKPF** source application to load transaction data from accounting documents (journal entries), where the corresponding customer invoice of promise to pay document is stored.

### [Build Cash Flows from Operations](#)

Alternatively, you use the **Flow Builder** program to build flows from the existing transaction data into One Exposure from Operations. You choose the **Financial Accounting** source application to build flows from accounting documents (journal entries), where the corresponding customer invoice of promise to pay document is stored.

### [Load Promise to Pay \(from Collections Management\) to One Exposure from Operations](#)

You use the program **FCLM\_P2P\_MIGRATE** to directly integrate transaction data of promise to pay into One Exposure from Operations. You can use this program to load data that have been created but not integrated during the initial load of One Exposure from Operations.

## More Information

For more information, see [Flow Builder](#) about how the flows are built and [One Exposure from Operations](#).

# End-of-Day Bank Statements in One Exposure from Operations

## Use

Line items of end-of-day bank statements can be integrated into One Exposure from Operations. This way, you can view bank statement flows in cash management reports.

## Key Attributes

- **Source Application:** BS
- **Flow Types:**
  - 900002 (**Incoming Bank Confirmed Cash in Transit Increase**)
  - 900003 (**Incoming Bank Confirmed Cash in Transit Decrease**)
  - 900004 (**Outgoing Bank Confirmed Cash in Transit Increase**)
  - 900005 (**Incoming Bank Confirmed Cash Increase**)
  - 900006 (**Incoming Bank Confirmed Cash Increase**)
  - 900008 (**Outgoing Bank Confirmed Cash Increase**)
  - 900014 (**Incoming Bank Cash Increase**)
  - 900015 (**Incoming Bank Cash Decrease**)
  - 900017 (**Outgoing Bank Cash Decrease**)

- **Certainty Level:** ACTUAL (Actual Cash Flows)

- **Planning Levels:**

Planning levels are derived from flow types. You can assign planning levels to flow types. For more information, see the “Configuration” section below.

- **Planning Groups:** Empty
- **Liquidity Items:** Empty

## Important Fields

### Bank Account

The system identifies the technical ID of a bank account by matching the company code, house bank, and house bank account information received from the end-of-day bank statements.

### Transaction Date and Amount

The transaction dates of bank statement flows are determined based on the value date of bank statement line items and the bank statement date. The transaction amounts are taken from the amounts of bank statement line items.

### Example

The following example illustrates how information from bank statements is recorded in One Exposure:

A bank statement dated 02/24/2016 is imported with two items for which the value date is the same date. The system creates two flows in the One Exposure for the two items respectively:

One Exposure		
Date	Flow Type	Amount
02/24/2016	900008 ( <b>Outgoing Bank Confirmed Cash Increase</b> )	-300

**One Exposure**

02/24/2016	900006 (Incoming Bank Confirmed Cash Increase)	+500
------------	--	------

## Configuration

1. To enable integration with end-of-day bank statements, in the Customizing activity **Activate Individual Source Applications**, you need to activate the source application BS (**Bank Statements**) for the relevant company codes.
  2. In the Customizing activity **Define Settings for Bank Statements** and the **Define Bank Account Settings - Bank Statements** app, make sure the field **Transfer Mode (End of Day)** is set as **Balance and Bank Statement Items** or **Bank Statement Items Only**.
- This is to ensure the line items of bank statements can be passed onto One Exposure.
3. To ensure planning levels are derived correctly for bank statement flows, assign relevant flow types to planning levels in the Customizing activity **Assign Flow Types to Planning Levels**.

## Other Activities

If you want to use a new starting point within an implementation project, you can use the program **Delete Data from One Exposure** (transaction **FQM\_DELETE**) to delete all existing data for the source application BS from One Exposure.

## More Information

[One Exposure from Operations](#)

## Memo Records in One Exposure from Operations

### Use

Memo records can be integrated into One Exposure from Operations. This way, you can view memo records in cash management reports.

Memo records created from the following sources are supported:

- Memo records created manually from the **Manage Memo Records** app.  
For more information, see [Manually Created Memo Records](#).
- Memo records created from APM and displayed in the **Manage Memo Records** app.
- Intraday memo records that are generated from intraday bank statements.  
For more information, see [Intraday Memo Records](#).
- Memo records created from the **Manage Memo Records 2.0** and **Import Memo Records 2.0** apps are replicated automatically to One Exposure.  
For more information, see [Manage Memo Records 2.0](#).

## More Information

# Intraday Memo Records

## Use

Intraday memo records that are generated from line items of intraday bank statements can be integrated into One Exposure from Operations.

## Key Attributes

- **Source Application:** CMMRD
- **Flow Types:**
  - 900000 (**Incoming Bank Cash**): The flow type is assigned to memo records that have a **positive** amount.
  - 900001 (**Outgoing Bank Cash**): The flow type is assigned to memo records that have a **negative** amount.

- **Certainty Level:** INTRM (**Intraday Memo Record**)

- **Planning Levels:**

For intraday memo records, planning levels are derived from memo record types. The derivation logic for memo record types are defined in the configuration activity **Define Memo Record Settings for Bank Statements**. For more information, see the “Configuration” section below.

- **Planning Group:** Empty
- **Liquidity Item:** Empty

## Important Fields

### [Bank Account](#)

The system identifies the technical ID of a bank account by matching the company code, house bank, and house bank account information received from the intraday bank statements.

### [Transaction Date and Amount](#)

The transaction date of an intraday memo record is taken from the value date of the corresponding line item of the intraday bank statement. The transaction amount is taken from the amount of the line item.

### Example

The following example illustrates how information from intraday bank statements is recorded via intraday memo records in One Exposure:

An intraday bank statement dated 02/24/2016 is imported with two items for which the value date is the same date. The system creates two flows in One Exposure for the two items respectively:

One Exposure		
Date	Flow Type	Amount

One Exposure		
02/24/2016	900001 (Outgoing Bank Cash)	-300
02/24/2016	900000 (Incoming Bank Cash)	+500

## Configuration

In the Customizing activity **Define Memo Record Settings for Bank Statements**, set the option **Activate New Integration Strategy for Memo Records and Bank Statements**, and define the derivation logic for memo record types.

## Other Activities

If you want to use a new starting point within an implementation project, you can use the program **Delete Data from One Exposure** (transaction FQM\_DELETE) to delete all existing data for the source application CMMRD from One Exposure.

## More Information

[One Exposure from Operations](#)

## Manually Created Memo Records

### Use

Memo records that are manually created from the **Manage Memo Records** app can be integrated into One Exposure from Operations.

### Key Attributes

- **Source Application:** CMMRD
- **Flow Types:**
  - 900000 (Incoming Bank Cash): The flow type is assigned to memo records that have a **positive** amount.
  - 900001 (Outgoing Bank Cash): The flow type is assigned to memo records that have a **negative** amount.
- **Certainty Level:** MEMO (Memo Record)
- **Planning Levels:** You define a planning level when you create a memo record.
- **Planning Groups:**

The **Planning Group** field is visible only when you have selected a planning level related to bank subledger accounting. You can then specify a planning group for this memo record.

If you use a planning level related to bank accounting, you specify a bank account instead of a planning group.

- **Liquidity Items:** Liquidity item is an optional attribute that can be specified by users.

## Configuration

No configuration required.

## Other Activities

If you want to use a new starting point within an implementation project, you can use the program **Delete Data from One Exposure** (transaction FQM\_DELETE) to delete all existing data for the source application CMMRD from One Exposure.

## More Information

[One Exposure from Operations](#)

# Treasury and Risk Management in One Exposure from Operations

## Use

You can integrate forecasted cash from financial transactions into One Exposure from Operations. In this integration scenario, the source application Treasury and Risk Management and One Exposure run in the same system (one-system scenario).

The forecasted cash from TRM contains the following information:

- Reference to the business transaction and the flow in TRM
- Company Code
- Business Partner (filled with the counterparty of the financial transaction and with the issuer for business transactions from security account positions, such as interests of bonds)
- Specific TRM parameters:
  - Product Type
  - Transaction Type
  - Transaction Activity Category
  - Security ID Number
  - Securities Account
  - Portfolio
  - Internal Reference
  - Characteristics
  - Assignment

### i Note

The TRM parameters are available during configuration but are not made visible externally, for example, the fields are not visible in the cash flow items.

- House bank account and bank account
- Date and Amount

- The forecast transaction date is determined based on the transaction payment date.
  - The forecast transaction amount is determined based on the transaction payment amount.
- Certainty Level

One Exposure derives cash forecasts for items representing financial instruments. It stores this information with the following certainty levels:

Certainty Level	Description	Meaning
TRM_0	Optional Financial Instrument	Cash forecast from an option in TRM
TRM_D	Financial Instrument	Cash forecast from all other TRM instruments

## ❖ Example

For example, you enter an option with an underlying FX transaction. The forecasted cash flows for the FX transaction have certainty level TRM\_0. After the option is exercised, the forecasted cash of the foreign exchange transaction has certainty level TRM\_D.

- Flow Type

The system uses the following flow types for forecasts from TRM in One Exposure:

Default Flow Types
900100 - Incoming Bank Cash (TRM)
900101 - Outgoing Bank Cash (TRM)

## i Note

The flow type is used internally by the system and is also available during configuration, but is not made visible externally, for example, it is not visible in the cash flow items.

- Planning Level

The planning level is used to control displays in Cash Management.

Dependent on the chosen **Derivation Category for Planning Levels** in the **Basic Settings for Cash Management Integration** Customizing activity, the planning level is either derived based on your settings in the **Assign Planning Levels** Customizing activity or based on the substitution rules defined in the **Substitution Rules for Planning Levels - Treasury Flows** app.

- Planning Group

If the cash flow from TRM has no house bank account, the system tries to determine a planning group instead. To do so, it takes the business partner (for example the counterparty in a money market transaction), reads the corresponding customer (from database table CVI\_CUST\_LINK), and takes the planning group from the corresponding company-code-dependent data (database table KNB1). If no customer exists for this business partner, or if the customer has no planning group assigned to the given company code, the cash flow is updated with an empty planning group. The planning group is then also empty in cash management.

- Liquidity Item

The system generates liquidity items based on the queries defined by you in the [Define Queries for Liquidity Item Derivation](#) and [Assign Queries to Query Sequences](#) apps.

## Data Transfer Process from Treasury and Risk Management to One Exposure from Operations Hub

### Classic Data Transfer Process from Treasury and Risk Management to One Exposure from Operations Hub

The data transfer from Treasury and Risk Management to One Exposure from Operations hub of Cash and Liquidity Management consists of several steps that you can influence at certain points.

1. System generates flows with the following flows types for the CM-relevant flows of Treasury and Risk Management:

- o For product categories 600 and 760 flows with the following flow types are generated:
  - 200200 Increase FX Forward Purchase
  - 200201 Increase FX Forward Sale
  - 200010 Fee Receivable
  - 200011 Fee Payable

#### **i Note**

These flow types are only relevant for the configuration of the liquidity item derivation. In the further process, a flow with flow type 900100 or 900101 is generated for each of these flows because only the flows with flow types 900100 or 900101 are consumed by Cash Management apps, such as [Cash Flow Analyzer](#).

- o For product categories 510 - 550 flows with the following flow types are generated:
  - 201000 Fin. Instrument Receivable
  - 201001 Fin. Instrument Payable
  - 200100 Increase Investment
  - 200101 Increase Borrowing
  - 200020 Interest Receivable Increase
  - 200021 Interest Payable Increase
  - 200010 Fee Receivable
  - 200011 Fee Payable

#### **i Note**

These flow types are only relevant for the configuration of the liquidity item derivation. In the further process, a flow with flow type 900100 or 900101 is generated for each of these flows because only the flows with flow types 900100 or 900101 are consumed by Cash Management apps, such as [Cash Flow Analyzer](#).

- o For all other product categories flows with the flow types 900100 and 900101 are generated.

#### **i Note**

In the Customizing activity [Specify Update Types for Cash Management](#), you can remove specific update types from the data transfer to Cash and Liquidity Management.

2. System enriches the flows by deriving the following data:

- Planning level  
Based on your settings in the Customizing activity [Assign Planning Levels](#).
- Planning group
- Bank account ID (from house bank and house bank account)

3. Liquidity items

- The system calls the [BAdI: TRM Integration into One Exposure](#) (BADI\_FQM\_DERIVE\_LQITEM\_TRM) to derive liquidity items. You can use this BAdI, for example, if the available source fields in the origin X under [Define Queries for Liquidity Item Derivation](#) are not sufficient.
- For all flows for which the [BAdI: TRM Integration into One Exposure](#) has not derived a liquidity item, system generates liquidity items based on the queries defined by you in the Customizing activity [Define Queries for Liquidity Item Derivation](#).

4. For the flows generated for product categories 600, 760, and 510 - 550 system now also generates flows with flow type 900100 and 900101. The newly generated flows also include the derived data.

**i Note**

This step is necessary because only flows with flow type 900100 and 900101 are consumed by Cash Management apps, such as [Cash Flow Analyzer](#).

5. Now the system calls the [BAdI: Adjustment of Flows in One Exposure](#) (BADI\_FQM\_FLOW\_ADJUST\_CORE). With this BAdI, you can change the flows, for example, you can overwrite the flow type.

6. If the liquidity item is initial for a flow, system again starts the derivation of liquidity items based on the queries defined for the origin X.

7. System derives the FI account from the bank account.

8. The flows from Treasury and Risk Management are now available in the [One Exposure from Operations hub](#).

### Simplified Data Transfer Process from Treasury and Risk Management to One Exposure from Operations Hub

If you activated the simplified data transfer process from Treasury and Risk Management to One Exposure from Operations Hub in the [Basic Settings for Cash Management Integration](#) Customizing activity, you still can influence the process at certain points. The data transfer process is executed as follows:

1. System generates flows with the following flows types for all CM-relevant flows of Treasury and Risk Management:

- 900100 – Incoming Bank Cash (TRM)
- 900101 – Outgoing Bank Cash (TRM)

**i Note**

In the Customizing activity [Specify Update Types for Cash Management](#), you can remove specific update types from the data transfer to Cash and Liquidity Management.

2. System enriches the flows by deriving the following data:

- Planning level

- Dependent on the chosen **Derivation Category for Planning Levels** in the **Basic Settings for Cash Management Integration** Customizing activity, the planning level is either derived based on your settings in the **Assign Planning Levels** Customizing activity or based on the substitution rules defined in the **Substitution Rules for Planning Levels - Treasury Flows** app.
- Planning group
  - Bank account ID (from house bank and house bank account)

### 3. Liquidity items

The system generates liquidity items based on the queries defined by you in the Customizing activity **Define Queries for Liquidity Item Derivation** based on origin U **From Treasury and Risk Management**.

### 4. System derives the FI account from the bank account.

### 5. The flows from Treasury and Risk Management are now available in the **One Exposure from Operations** hub.

## Customizing

- **Activate Individual Source Applications** and **Activate Multiple Source Applications**

You can activate the source application **TRM - Treasury and Risk Management** in this Customizing activity. Data coming from TRM is only updated in One Exposure if the application is activated and successfully initialized.

The Customizing activities are available under **Cash and Liquidity Management** **Cash Management** **Data Setup** .

- **Basic Settings for Cash Management Integration**

In this Customizing activity, you choose the **Derivation Category for Planning Levels**. This derivation category controls how the planning level is derived for Cash Management-relevant Treasury flows. The following values are available:

- **Classic Assignment** (Default setting)

If you use this derivation category, you define the planning level assignment explicitly for each relevant combination of company code, product type, and activity category in the **Assign Planning Levels** configuration activity.

- **Derivation**

If you use this derivation category, you can define derivation rules for the planning level assignment in the **Substitution Rules for Planning Levels - Treasury Flows** app.

- **Assign Planning Levels**

Assign the planning levels to Cash Management-relevant treasury flows.

**i Note**

You define planning levels in the **Define Planning Levels** Customizing activity of Cash and Liquidity Management.

This configuration activity is only relevant if you have chosen **Classic Assignment** in the **Derivation Category for Planning Level** field in the **Basic Settings for Cash Management Integration** Customizing activity.

The Customizing activity is available under **Treasury and Risk Management** **Transaction Manager** **General Settings** **Link to Cash Management** .

**i Note**

Customers upgrading from the classic cash management can use the existing settings for the planning level when integrating **TRM** into One Exposure.

- [Substitution Rules for Planning Levels - Treasury Flows app](#)

#### Note

With this app, you can display, change, and create substitution rules for assigning cash management planning levels to the internal flows that are generated by system for each Cash Management-relevant flow in Treasury and Risk Management.

#### i Note

This app is only relevant if you have chosen **Derivation** in the **Derivation Category for Planning Level** field in the **Basic Settings for Cash Management Integration** Customizing activity.

For more information, see also [Substitution Rules for Planning Levels - Treasury Flows](#).

- [Specify Update Types for Cash Management](#)

All CM-relevant flows are transferred to Cash Management. These are all flows with update types that lead to FI postings with posting category 2 (**Subledger Posting in Payment Currency**) or 3 (**Bank Posting in Payment Currency**). In this Customizing activity, you can deactivate Cash Management integration for specific update types.

The Customizing activity is available under **Treasury and Risk Management** **Transaction Manager** **General Settings** **Link to Cash Management** .

- [Simplify Flow Generation](#)

If you are using the integration with Cash and Liquidity Management via One Exposure for Operations, internal flows are generated by system for each Cash Management-relevant flow in Treasury and Risk Management.

The default flow types of the internal flows relevant for Cash Management updates are:

- 900100 – [Incoming Bank Cash \(TRM\)](#)
- 900101 – [Outgoing Bank Cash \(TRM\)](#)

Flows with these flow types are visible in the Cash Management apps.

In this Customizing activity, you can influence the flow generation.

- If you do **not** set this indicator, the classic data transfer process from Treasury and Risk Management to One Exposure from Operations is executed.

During the classic data transfer process, the system generates the internal flows for Cash Management update with different flow types depending on the product category. For some product categories other flow types than the default flow types are used. You can use these different flow types to define the derivation rules for liquidity items.

As an additional step during the process for all flows primarily created with other flow types than 900100 or 900101, also flows with flow types 900100 or 900101 are generated. This ensures that all Cash Management-relevant flows from Treasury and Risk Management are visible in the Cash Management apps, such as the [Cash Flow Analyzer](#) app.

In addition, the BAdls [BAdl: TRM Integration into One Exposure](#) (BADI\_FQM\_DERIVE\_LQITEM\_TRM) and [BAdl: Adjustment of Flows in One Exposure](#) (BADI\_FQM\_FLOW\_ADJUST\_CORE) are called during the classic data transfer process, that you can use to influence the liquidity items and flows generated for Treasury and Risk Management data.

- If you set the **Simplify Flow Generation** indicator, the simplified data transfer process from Treasury and Risk Management to One Exposure from Operations is executed.

During the simplified data transfer process, the system generates the internal flows for the Cash Management update only with flow types 900100 or 900101. You can still use the [Define Queries for Liquidity Item Derivation](#) Customizing activity to define derivation rules for liquidity items based on origin X [One Exposure from Operations \(except accounting documents\)](#).

The BAdls **BAdl: TRM Integration into One Exposure** (BADI\_FQM\_DERIVE\_LQITEM\_TRM) and **BAdl: Adjustment of Flows in One Exposure** (BADI\_FQM\_FLOW\_ADJUST\_CORE) are **not** called during the simplified data transfer process.

The Customizing activity is available under **Treasury and Risk Management** **Transaction Manager** **General Settings** **Link to Cash Management** .

- **Edit Liquidity Items**

Create and change liquidity items that represent the source and use of cash flows in your company.

The Customizing activity is available under **Cash and Liquidity Management** **Cash Management** **Liquidity Items** .

- **Define Queries for Liquidity Item Derivation**

Define queries to derive liquidity items for the flows from **Treasury and Risk Management**.

Use the **origin X One Exposure from Operations (except accounting documents)** or **U From Treasury and Risk Management** for the derivation of liquidity items for **Treasury and Risk Management**.

In a query you define the derivation rules for a specific liquidity item. This derivation is based on the data available in the origin.

- Origin X

Among many other fields (such as product type, transaction type, activity, securities account, and so on), origin X also provides the flow type, which you can also use to derive the liquidity items.

**i Note**

Available flow types for liquidity item derivation using the **classic data transfer process** from **Treasury and Risk Management** to **One Exposure from Operations**:

- For FX spot/forward transactions (product category 600), FX options (product category 760), and money market transactions (product categories 510 - 550), you can use the following flow types to derive separate liquidity items for purchase side, sale side, investment, repayment, interests, and fees.
  - You can use the following flow types for product categories 600 and 760:
    - 200200 Increase FX Forward Purchase
    - 200201 Increase FX Forward Sale
    - 200010 Fee Receivable
    - 200011 Fee Payable

**i Note**

These flow types are only relevant for the configuration of the liquidity item derivation. In the further process, a flow with flow type 900100 or 900101 is generated for each of these flows because only the flows with flow types 900100 or 900101 are consumed by **Cash Management** apps, such as **Cash Flow Analyzer**.

- You can use the following flow types for product categories 510 - 550:
  - 201000 Fin. Instrument Receivable
  - 201001 Fin. Instrument Payable
  - 200100 Increase Investment

- 200101 Increase Borrowing
- 200020 Interest Receivable Increase
- 200021 Interest Payable Increase
- 200010 Fee Receivable
- 200011 Fee Payable

**i Note**

These flow types are only relevant for the configuration of the liquidity item derivation. In the further process, a flow with flow type 900100 or 900101 is generated for each of these flows because only the flows with flow types 900100 or 900101 are consumed by Cash Management apps, such as [Cash Flow Analyzer](#).

- For all other product categories you use the flow types 900100 and 900101 to define queries for liquidity item derivation.

If you are using the **simplified data transfer process** from Treasury and Risk Management to One Exposure from Operations, you can use the flow types 900100 and 900101 to define queries for liquidity item derivation.

- Origin U

**i Note**

You can only use the new origin if you are using the simplified data transfer process from Treasury and Risk Management to the One Exposure from Operations hub.

Origin U also provides the following fields, which you can also use to derive the liquidity items:

- Company Code
- Product Type
- Transaction Type
- Portfolio
- Activity Category
- Hedging Classification
- WBS Element
- Profit Center
- Cost Center
- Update Type
- Sec. Class ID Number
- Securities Account

If no liquidity item can be determined, the system updates the flow with an empty liquidity item.

The Customizing activity is available under [▶Cash and Liquidity Management ▶ Cash Management ▶ Liquidity Items ▶ Derivation Rules for Liquidity Items](#) ▶.

- [BAdI: TRM Integration into One Exposure \(BADI\\_FQM\\_DERIVE\\_LQITEM\\_TRM\)](#)

## i Note

Only relevant for classic data transfer process from Treasury and Risk Management to One Exposure from Operations.

You can use this BAdI to derive a liquidity item based on additional TRM-specific parameters if the source fields are not sufficient for a thorough liquidity item derivation. You can also use this BAdI to overwrite flow types in One Exposure that originate from the source application TRM.

The Customizing activity is available under **Cash and Liquidity Management** **> Cash Management** **> Business Add-Ins (BAdIs)** **> One Exposure from Operations**.

- BAdI: Adjustment of Flows in One Exposure (BADI\_FQM\_FLOW\_ADJUST\_CORE)**

With this BAdI, you can change the flows, for example, you can overwrite the flow type.

The Customizing activity is available under **Cash and Liquidity Management** **> Cash Management** **> Business Add-Ins (BAdIs)** **> One Exposure from Operations**.

## Additional Tools

- Load Transaction Data from Source Applications into One Exposure from Operations Hub**

If you want to integrate transaction data that had already been created before the source application **Treasury and Risk Management** was activated, you use the function **Load Transaction Data from Source Applications into One Exposure from Operations Hub** (transaction FQM\_INITIALIZE) available in area menu under **Cash and Liquidity Management** **> Tools** **> One Exposure from Operations**.

- Delete Data from One Exposure from Operations Hub**

If you want to use a new starting point within an implementation project, you can use this the function **Delete Data from One Exposure from Operations Hub** (transaction FQM\_DELETE ) available in area menu under **Cash and Liquidity Management** **> Tools** **> One Exposure from Operations** to delete all existing data or the source application **TRM** from One Exposure. You do this for each company code and source application.

## More Information

The information is then consumed by cash management apps, such as:

- Cash Flow Analyzer**
- Check Cash Flow Items**

For further information, see [One Exposure from Operations](#)

# Consumer and Mortgage Loans in One Exposure from Operations

## Use

You can integrate forecasted cash from consumer and mortgage loans into One Exposure from Operations. In this integration scenario, the source application Consumer and Mortgage Loans and One Exposure from Operations run in the same system (one-system scenario).

Forecasted cash contains the following information from CML:

- Reference to the contract and flow in CML

- Account Assignments:
  - Business Area
  - Company
- Business Partner (filled with main loan partner if the partner also exists in the role customer)
- Product Type
- House bank account and bank account

### Certainty Level

One Exposure derives cash forecasts for items representing CML. It stores this information with the certainty level TRM\_D.

### Flow Type

The system uses the following flow types for forecasts in One Exposure:

Default Flow Types
900104 - Incoming Bank Cash (CML)
900105 - Outgoing Bank Cash (CML)

### Planning Group

The system determines the planning group from the loan partner if the partner also exists in the role customer

## Activities

### Customizing Activities

- [Activate Individual Source Applications](#) and [Activate Multiple Source Applications](#)

You can activate the source application **CML - Consumer and Mortgage Loans** in this Customizing activity. Data coming from CML is only updated in One Exposure if the application is activated and initialized successfully.

- [Define Queries for Liquidity Item Derivation](#)

This offers you the possibility to enter derivation rules for data coming from **Consumer and Mortgage Loans**. The liquidity item can be determined, the system updates the flow with an empty liquidity item.

The liquidity item derivation is based on a subset of information available in One Exposure (origin X).

- [Assign Planning Levels](#)

You can define the planning level for CML in the customizing activity [SAP Banking](#) [Loans Management](#) [Transaction Management](#) [Assign Planning Levels](#)

Customers upgrading from the classic cash management can use the existing settings for the planning level when integrating **CML** into One Exposure.

- [Load Transaction Data from Source Applications into One Exposure from Operations Hub](#)

If you want to integrate transaction data that had already been created before the source application **Consumer and Mortgage Loans** was activated, you use this Customizing activity.

- [Delete Data from One Exposure from Operations Hub](#)

If you want to use a new starting point within an implementation project, you can use this Customizing activity to delete all existing data or the source application **CML** from One Exposure. You do this for each company code and source application.

## More Information

The information is then consumed by cash management apps, such as:

- [Cash Flow Analyzer](#)
- [Check Cash Flow Items](#)

For further information, see [One Exposure from Operations](#)

## Contract Accounts Receivable and Payable (FI-CA) in One Exposure

### Use

You can integrate forecasted cash from contract accounts receivable and payable into One Exposure from Operations. In this integration scenario, the source application Contract Accounts Receivable and Payable and One Exposure run in the same system (one-system scenario).

Forecasted cash contains the following information from FI-CA:

- Account Assignments:
  - Business Area
  - Company

### i Note

Compared to other source applications, One Exposure does not contain any reference to the documents in FI-CA. The upload to One Exposure is done on a summary level (for each company code, transaction currency, transaction date, planning level, planning group, or G/L account)

### Certainty Level

One Exposure derives cash forecasts for items representing contract accounts receivable and payable. It stores this information with the certainty level FICA.

### Flow Type

The system uses the following flow types for forecast in One Exposure:

Default Flow Types
900106 - Incoming Bank Cash (FI-CA)
900107 - Outgoing Bank Cash (FI-CA)

### Planning Group

The system uses the planning group that is defined in the section **general data** of the contract account.

If errors occur during data upload, the system collects these errors in an application log. You can access it with transaction code **FQM\_APPLICATION\_LOG**.

### Number of a FI-CA Document (**FCA\_DOC\_NUMBER**), Item Number in FI-CA Document (**FCA\_DOCITEM\_NUMBER**)

There are two fields **Number of a FI-CA Document** and **Item Number in FI-CA Document** in the table **FQM Flows (FQM\_FL0W)**. The two fields are only related to FI-CA VIP Customers. Customers need to flag them as VIP so that all the attributes in FI-CA are available. Otherwise, customers who are not flagged as VIP can only get the aggregated amount.

## Activities

### Customizing Activities

- **Activate Individual Source Applications** and **Activate Multiple Source Applications**

You can activate the source application **FICA - Contract Accounts Receivable and Payable** in this Customizing activity. Data coming from FICA is only updated in One Exposure if the application is activated and initialized successfully.

#### i Note

The source application **FICA - Contract Accounts Receivable and Payable** is only available for activation if the software component FI-CA is installed.

- **Define Queries for Liquidity Item Derivation**

It offers the possibility to enter derivation rules for data coming from **Contract Accounts Receivable and Payable**. The liquidity item derivation is based on a subset of information available in One Exposure (origin X).

If no liquidity item can be determined, the system updates the flow with an empty liquidity item.

#### i Note

As mentioned above, please keep in mind that the data coming from FICA is uploaded to One Exposure on a summary level.

- **Define Alternative Planning Levels for Locks** and **Define Alternative Planning Levels for Transactions**

Planning Levels are determined either on the basis of the planning group (▶ **Financial Supply Chain Management** ▶ **Cash and Liquidity Management** ▶ **Cash Management** ▶ **Planning Levels and Planning Groups** ▶ **Define Planning Groups** ▶) or on the basis of the company-code-dependent data of the G/L account (SKB1 - FDLEV). With these two Customizing activities, however, you can determine a planning level on a more detailed basis (both are available in ▶ **Financial Accounting (New)** ▶ **Contract Accounts Receivable and Payable** ▶ **Integration** ▶ **Cash Management** ▶).

Customers upgrading from the classic cash management can use the existing settings for the planning level when integrating FI-CA into One Exposure.

- **Load Transaction Data from Source Applications into One Exposure from Operations Hub**

If you want to integrate transaction data that had already been created before the source application **Contract Accounts Receivable and Payable** was activated, you use this Customizing activity.

- **Delete Data from One Exposure from Operations Hub**

If you want to use a new starting point within an implementation project, you can use this Customizing activity to delete all existing data or the source application FI-CA from One Exposure. You do this for each company code and source application.

## More Information

The information is then consumed by cash management apps, such as:

- [Cash Flow Analyzer](#)
- [Check Cash Flow Items](#)

For further information, see [One Exposure from Operations](#)

# Sales and Distribution in One Exposure from Operations

## Use

You can integrate forecasted cash from sales order items and scheduling agreement items into One Exposure from Operations. Creating sales orders or scheduling agreements leads to forecasted cash that is adjusted by subsequent billing processes. In this integration scenario, the source application Sales and Distribution and One Exposure run in the same system (one-system scenario).

The following business processes in Sales and Distribution can be integrated into One Exposure:

- Sales Orders and Scheduling Agreements with the following:
  - Price and quantity changes
  - Billing plans (periodic and milestone billing) including
    - Invoice and down payment items
    - Down payment requests and down payments
    - Consignment-, third party-, rush- and cross-company sales orders
- Billing with the following:
  - Order-related invoice
  - Delivery-related invoice
    - Invoice splits
    - Separate invoices
    - Collective invoices
    - Invoices according to an invoice calendar
  - Credit/debit memo
- Complaints with the following:
  - Returns
  - Credit/debit memo requests
  - Invoice correction requests

### i Note

Scheduling agreements with release are not incorporated.

Forecasted cash contains the following information from the sales document:

- Reference to Sales Document and item of the Sales Document
- Account Assignments:
  - Business Area
  - Profit Center
  - Cost Center
  - WBS Element or a Project
  - Segment
  - Company
  - Material
- Business Partner (filled with the payer of the sales order or scheduling agreement)

#### Date and Amount

The transaction date is determined based on the expected billing date or dates of the item of the sales order or scheduling agreement, and considers the payment terms of the sales order or scheduling agreement. Regarding cash discount, the system uses the latest possible date to get the maximum possible cash discount (independent of anything else, for example, payment history of the customer).

The system creates two separate flows; one for the forecasted cash from the net amount of an item, and one for the forecasted cash of the tax amount of an item.

Other condition types such as cash discount, freight, or other discounts are not shown separately. They are merged in the forecasted cash for the net amount. Regarding cash discount, the system calculates the cash forecast amount with the maximum possible cash discount (on the corresponding date from the payment terms).

#### Certainty Level

One Exposure derives cash forecasts for items representing sales orders and scheduling agreements. It stores this information with the following certainty levels:

Certainty Level	Description	Meaning
SDSO	Sales Order	Cash forecast from sales orders
SDSA	Sales Scheduling Agreement	Cash forecast from scheduling agreements

#### Flow Type

The system uses the following flow types for forecasts in One Exposure:

Cash	Default Flow Types
Cash forecast of a net amount	900000 - Incoming Bank Cash
	900001 - Outgoing Bank Cash

Cash	Default Flow Types
Cash forecast of a tax amount	900018 - Incoming Bank Cash (Tax)
	900019 - Outgoing Bank Cash (Tax)

If errors occur during data upload, the system collects these errors in an application log. You can access it with transaction code FQM\_APPLICATION\_LOG .

## Planning Group

The system uses the planning group that is defined in the **company code** section of the master data of the payer of the sales order or scheduling agreement. If the master data of the payer does not contain the **company code** section, the system uses the planning group from the Customizing activity **Define Planning Levels for Logistics**.

## Activities

### Customizing Activities

- **Activate Individual Source Applications** and **Activate Multiple Source Applications**

You can activate the source application **SDCM - Sales and Distribution (CM)** in this Customizing activity. Data coming from SD is only updated in One Exposure, if the application is activated and successfully initialized.

- **Define Queries for Liquidity Item Derivation**

This offers the possibility to enter derivation rules for data coming from Sales and Distribution. The liquidity item derivation is based on a subset of information available in One Exposure (origin X).

#### i Note

It is possible to derive separate liquidity items for forecasted cash from net amount and forecasted cash from tax amount based on the flow type.

If no liquidity item can be determined, the system updates the flow with an empty liquidity item.

- **Define Planning Levels for Logistics**

You can define the planning level for Sales and Distribution with this Customizing activity. The system takes the planning level that is assigned to the internal ID **101 - Order**

Customers upgrading from the classic cash management can use the existing settings for the planning level when integrating SD into One Exposure.

- **Load Transaction Data from Source Applications into One Exposure from Operations Hub**

If you want to integrate transaction data that was already created before the source application Sales and Distribution (SDCM) was activated, you use this Customizing activity.

- **Delete Data from One Exposure from Operations Hub**

If you want to use a new starting point within an implementation project, you can use this Customizing activity to delete all existing data or the source application SDCM from One Exposure. You do this for each company code and source application.

### Effects on Data Transfer

If cash forecasts from the obsolete source application **SDSO - Sales Orders** exist in One Exposure, users have to delete this data by using the report **FQM\_DELETE\_OBSOLETE\_SO\_ENTRIES**.

## More Information

The information is then consumed by cash management apps, such as:

- [Cash Flow Analyzer](#)
- [Check Cash Flow Items](#)

For further information, see [One Exposure from Operations](#)

## Materials Management in One Exposure from Operations

### Use

You can integrate forecasted cash from materials management into One Exposure from Operations. Creating purchase requisition, purchase orders or scheduling agreements leads to forecasted cash that is adjusted by subsequent invoicing processes. In this integration scenario, the source application Materials Management and One Exposure from Operations run in the same system (one-system scenario).

The following business processes in Materials Management can be integrated into One Exposure:

- Purchase requisition, purchase orders and scheduling agreements with the following:
  - Purchase requisition release
  - Price and quantity changes
  - Invoicing plans
  - Down payment requests and down payments
  - Multiple account assignment and delivery schedule
  - Consignment-, third party-, rush- and cross-company purchase orders
- Service purchase order and its follow-up activities
- Follow-up activities with the following:
  - Goods receipt
  - Invoice receipt
- Purchase order with returned goods
- Cross-company code purchase order

Forecasted cash contains the following information from the materials management document:

- Reference to Materials Management and the items of Materials Management
- Account Assignments:
  - Currency

- Transaction Date
- Business Area
- Liquidity Item
- Profit Center
- Cost Center
- WBS Element or a Project
- Segment
- G/L Account

### Date and Amount

The forecasted payment date is determined based on the following:

- Statistical delivery date that is defined in delivery schedule
- Invoicing date that is defined in invoicing plan
- Posting date of goods receipt if it is complete delivery, but the delivery quantity is over or under order quantity
- Payment terms of the purchase order or scheduling agreement, and vendor master data of purchase requisition
- Cash discount

The system creates the forecasted cash from the net amount of an item and the non-deductible tax amount:

- Net amount of purchase requisition, purchase order and scheduling agreement
- Invoice amount that is defined in invoicing plan
- Condition in payment terms
- Amount of invoice verification is deducted from forecasted amount of purchase order
- Down payment and down payment request is deducted from forecasted amount of purchase order
- For scheduling agreement, only amount defined in delivery schedule is taken into account.

Other condition types, such as non-deductible input tax, are also considered.

### Certainty Level

One Exposure derives cash forecasts for items representing purchase requisition and purchase orders and scheduling agreements. It stores this information with the following certainty levels:

Certainty Level	Description	Meaning
MMPR	Purchase Requisition	Cash forecast from purchase requisition
MMPO	Purchase Orders or Scheduling Agreement	Cash forecast from purchase orders or scheduling agreements

### Flow Type

The system uses the following flow types for forecasts in One Exposure:

Cash	Default Flow Types
Cash forecast of a net amount	900000 - Incoming Bank Cash
	900001 - Outgoing Bank Cash

For more information, see [Flow Types](#).

#### Planning Group

The system uses the planning group that is defined in the **company code** section of the master data of the supplier:

If planning group is not defined, the system uses the planning group from the Customizing activity [Define Planning Levels for Logistics](#).

#### Planning Level

The system uses the planning level from the Customizing activity [Define Planning Levels for Logistics](#). For more information, see [Planning Levels and Planning Groups](#).

#### Liquidity Item

The liquidity item derivation is based on query sequence (origin X), which is determined in the Customizing activity [Customize the Flow Builder](#). For more information, see [Liquidity Items and Liquidity Item Hierarchies](#) and [Flow Builder](#).

## Activities

### IMG Customizing Activities

- [Activate Individual Source Applications](#) and [Activate Multiple Source Applications](#)

You can activate the source application **Materials Management (MM)** in this Customizing activity. Data coming from MM is only updated in One Exposure, if the application is activated and successfully initialized.

- [Build Cash Flows from Operations](#)

You can derive cash flows in this Customizing activity. Data coming from MM is only updated in One Exposure, if the application is activated and successfully initialized.

For more information, see [Flow Builder](#).

- [Customize the Flow Builder](#)

This offers you the possibility to enter derivation rules for data coming from Materials Management.

For more information, see [Flow Builder](#).

## More Information

The information is then consumed by cash management apps, such as:

- [Cash Flow Analyzer](#)
- [Check Cash Flow Items](#)

For further information, see [One Exposure from Operations](#)

# Flow Builder

## Use

### Overview

The Flow Builder generates cash flows detailing current amounts and dates of liquidity items by:

- Tracing the original document line items from the related Financial Accounting (FI) and Materials Management (MM) tables.
- Analyzing the document flow back to the source (original) document. The analysis is based on virtually clearing the open items in the preceding and subsequent documents, which results in precise amount, date, and account assignment. Items in the preceding documents are called base items, while items in the subsequent documents are called offsetting items.
- Generating cash flows, according to the remaining offsetting items that are not cleared in the source (original) document. Each cash flow is split according to the offsetting items in the subsequent documents and the account assignment as inherited from the offsetting items in the source (original) document.
- Importing the cash flows with the split amounts, dates, and liquidity items over into the One Exposure from Operations hub. Cash flows are then categorized into different certainty levels in One Exposure from Operations for further calculation and consumption.

### Process

The following figure shows how the Flow Builder works. Based on the original transactional data from the related FI and MM tables, the Flow Builder generates cash-relevant flows, reflecting amount, date, flow level, liquidity item and other account assignments, which are then imported to One Exposure from Operations.

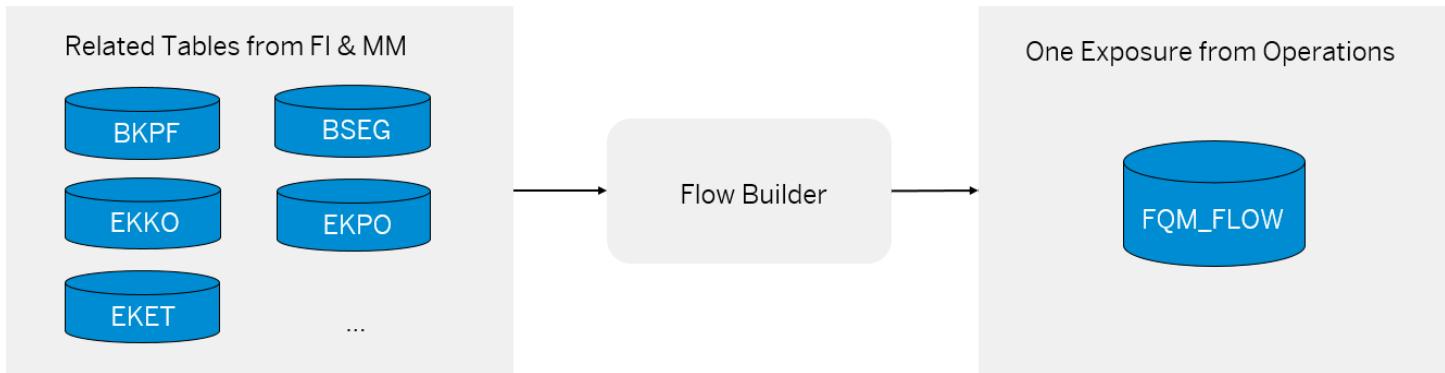


Figure 1. How Flow Builder works

### Example

The following example is based on a vendor invoice. The incoming invoice (1a) is cleared via an outgoing payment (2a). Posting on the vendor account is categorized as **payables** with certainty level PAY\_N, cash forecast from an open item of a payable. After that, the amount can be found in a bank clearing account for outgoing payments. Posting on the bank clearing account is categorized as **cash in transit** with certainty level SI\_CIT, cash forecast from a self-initiated payment. Then the bank clearing account is debited

and the transaction is posted at which point the bank clearing account is cleared (3a). This posting is categorized as **cash** with certainty level **ACTUAL**, accounting document line items from bank statements.

Based on flow types, the Flow Builder traces the document chain back to its source. In the example below, this is the expense account, which shows a cash outflow of 100 EUR in liquidity item E01. The expense account shows other account assignment information, such as cost center, company code, and so on.

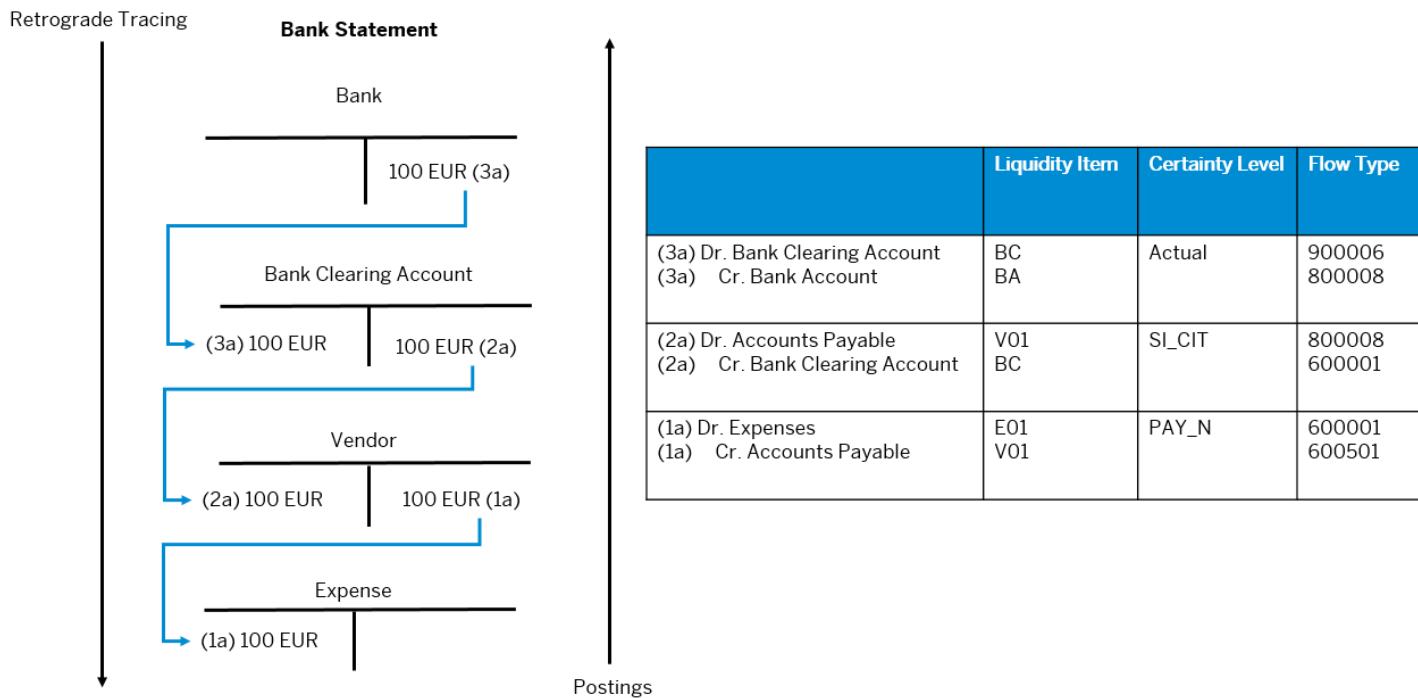


Figure 2. An Example of Document Chain Analysis

## Prerequisites

### IMG Customizing Activities

To use the Flow Builder, make the required settings in Customizing under **Financial Supply Chain Management** **› Cash and Liquidity Management** **› Cash Management**:

### Flow Types

Flow types classify the lifecycle of cash flows. Each flow type is assigned to an SAP-defined flow category. Flow type and flow level are used to differentiate document line items.

- For FI documents, flow types must be defined and uploaded to line items in table BSEG.
- For MM documents, flow types are generated in One Exposure from Operations.

For more information, see [Flow Types](#).

### Liquidity Items

Liquidity items is a customer-defined attribute for categorizing the source and use of cash flows. It serves as an analytical dimension in cash flow statements and forecast reports.

- For FI documents, liquidity items are uploaded to line items in table BSEG.

- For MM documents, currently only the query sequence for liquidity item is supported in Flow Builder for MM, which is used in the generation of MM loading class. However, when you define query sequence, only limited fields are supported. For more information, see SAP Note [2354048](#).

For more information, see Liquidity Items and Liquidity Item Hierarchies.

#### Activate Individual Source Applications and Activate Multiple Source Applications under Data Setup

You can activate the source applications for Financial Operations (FI and BKPF) and Materials Management (MM) for cash flows corresponding to specific company codes.

For more information, see Integration with Source Applications in the Central System.

## Activities

The Flow Builder program uses the accounting interface (RWIN) to trace back to the original documents, which are stored in delta tables. The Setting and Tools feature controls the background jobs based on the delta tables. Flows are then built automatically or manually.

### Flow Builder (FCLM\_FLOW\_BUILDER)

You can run this transaction in two ways, either by running the Flow Builder or by using the Customizing activity **Build Cash Flows from Operations**. Flows are built either in the **Delta Run** mode, or in the **Mass Run** mode:

- In the **Delta Run** mode, flows are built automatically as the back-end job of the program is triggered after online posting of FI documents.
- In the **Mass Run** mode, however, flows are built manually with certain search criteria, such as company code, fiscal year, document number, and line item. As an example, in the case of an initialization and flow rebuild, you would want to use the Mass Run mode instead of the Delta Run mode.

#### i Note

For MM documents, the selection criteria differs according to different data sources:

- For purchase orders (PO) and scheduling agreements, you can select company code, fiscal year, document number and line item.
- For purchase requisitions (PR), you can select from several criteria, such as purchase requisitions, item of requisitions, document type, and so on.

Flow Builder also allows you to perform the following activities:

- Maximum Steps of Chain Tracing

You can define the maximum steps in a document chain trace. For example, if you choose one step of chain tracing, you find the document flow with one preceding document and one subsequent document.

- Merge Tax Items

If you choose to merge tax items, the tax line item, which was previously split as a line item, is merged with other line items. This means that there is no separate line item for tax. For more information, see SAP Note [2221748](#).

### Flow Builder Chain Step

Flow builder chain step defines the tracing step in the document chain analysis in the flow builder.

The details of each chain step are illustrated as follows:

- In Step 0, the flow builder will trace the current documents.
- In Step 1, the flow builder will trace the documents that clear the current documents.
- In Step 2, the flow builder will trace the documents that clear the documents traced in Step 1.
- In Step 3, the flow builder will trace the documents that clear the documents traced in Step 2.
- In Step 4, the flow builder will trace the documents that clear the documents traced in Step 3.

## Settings and Tools (FCLM\_FB\_UTIL )

You can run this transaction in two ways, either by running the Settings and Tools or by using the customizing activity [Customize the Flow Builder](#).

With this transaction, you can perform the following activities:

- [Schedule Background Job](#)

You use this setting to change the pre-defined back-end job parameters, such as: Job Delay in Seconds, Variant for Flow Builder (Delta Run only), or Background User for authorization check. The variants for Flow Builder (FCLM\_FLOW\_BUILDER) are defined in Transaction SE38. The background job name is in the format of FLOW\_FLOW\_BUILDER\_{CLIENT}\*.

- [Check Background Job Logs](#)

You use this setting to check the status of the back-end jobs. This activity is automatically triggered by online posting. By defining the User Name and Job Name, you can check the job status released, ready, active, finished, and canceled) within a time frame that you define.

- [Delete Flows](#)

This tool allows you to define specific search criteria to search for and delete flows from target tables.

- [Change Default Loading Classes](#)

For FI documents, the default loading class is CL\_FCLM\_BSEGFLOW\_SAMPLE. For MM documents, you must use this tool to generate a loading class. You can then designate the query sequence to be used to derive liquidity items from MM transactions.

- [Generate Loading Classes](#)

You use this tool to generate loading classes, by specifying [Package](#), [Exit Class](#) and [Loading Class Name](#).

- FI documents require a [Date](#). By default, the date is determined by the planning date for forecasting cash flows from invoices. For more information, see SAP Note [2273656](#).
- MM documents requires [Query Sequence](#) in order to generate loading class. If you change the liquidity item derivation rules, you need to regenerate and assign your loading class. Please note that only limited fields are supported when you define query sequence. For more information, see SAP Note [2354048](#).

- [Assign Loading Classes](#)

You use this tool to assign loading classes to the Flow Builder. Changes in the loading class is updated to the Flow Builder program.

## Extensibility

Extension is supported. By taking the default exit class as an example, you can define your own exit class for use as the loading class in the Flow Builder. You can choose from the following exit classes:

- For FI documents, you can use the example exit class `CL_FCLM_APAR_HADI_SAMPLE`. The standard ABAP interface is `IF_FCLM_HADI_APAR`.
- For MM documents, such as Purchase Order (PO) Filter, Purchase Requisition (PR) Filter and flow adjustment, you can use the example exit class `CL_FCLM_MM_HADI_SAMPLE`. The standard ABAP interface is `IF_FCLM_HADI_MM`.

You will have to regenerate the loading class after implementing flow adjustments using your own exit class.

## More Information

- [One Exposure from Operations](#)
- [Integration of Accounting Documents](#)
- [Integration of Bank Statements](#)

### **i Note**

One Exposure from Operations generates actual cash flows for bank statements that are imported with no posting. If bank statements are imported with FI document posting, the Flow Builder generates actual cash flows based on the FI document and also clears the flows in One Exposure from Operations.

- [Materials Management in One Exposure from Operations](#)

## Classic Cash Management in One Exposure from Operations

### Use

You can integrate forecasted cash from classic cash management into One Exposure from Operations. In this integration scenario, classic cash management and One Exposure from Operations run in different systems (side-by-side scenario).

Forecasted cash contains the following information from classic cash management:

- Reference to the IDoc and the segment of the IDoc
- Account Assignment:
  - Company
  - Business Area
- Planning Level and Planning Group

### Certainty Level

One Exposure derives cash forecasts for items representing distributed cash. It stores this information with the certainty levels ACTUAL and CMIDOC.

If the flow types **900108 – Cash Balance Increase (IDoc)** or **900109 – Cash Balance Decrease (IDoc)** are assigned to dedicated planning levels in the Customizing activity [Assign Flow Types to Planning Levels](#), the system derives certainty level ACTUAL for these flows.

## Flow Type

The system uses the following flow types for forecasts in One Exposure:

Default Flow Types	Flow Types Available for Configuration
900110 – Incoming Cash (IDoc)	900108 – Cash Balance Increase (IDoc)
900111 – Outgoing Cash (IDoc)	900109 – Cash Balance Decrease (IDoc)

If errors occur during data upload, you can analyze the messages in the central system using transaction FF\$S – Transmission Status.

### i Note

Memo records that are created from remote systems will be excluded in the current system.

## Prerequisites

You need to configure the usage of IDocs in the central and the remote system. In addition, you define the distribution model in the central system using message types CMSENDand CMREQU. For more details see [Integration with Remote Systems](#).

To derive a Bank account, you must maintain [House Bank Account Connectivity](#) information for remote bank accounts in the bank account master data of the activity **Manage Bank Accounts** in the central system. There, you need to fill the ID category field with **Remote System: G/L Account**, and enter the company code and G/L account from the remote system.

## Activities

### Customizing Activities

You perform the following Customizing activities in the **central system**.

- [Reassign Company Codes](#)

You use this Customizing activity to convert the company codes coming from the remote system into company codes in the central system.

- [Convert Sender Business Areas](#)

You use this Customizing activity to convert the business areas coming from the remote system into business areas in the central system.

- [Convert Sender Planning Levels](#)

You use this Customizing activity to convert the planning levels coming from the remote system into planning levels in the central system.

- [Convert Sender Planning Groups](#)

You use this Customizing activity to convert planning groups coming from the remote system into planning groups in the central system.

- [Assign Flow Types to Planning Levels](#)

If you assign the flow types **900108 – Cash Balance Increase (IDoc)** or **900109 – Cash Balance Decrease (IDoc)** to the dedicated planning levels in this Customizing activity, the system derives certainty level ACTUAL for these flows.

- [Define Queries for Liquidity Item Derivation](#)

This offers you the possibility to enter derivation rules for data coming from classic cash management. The liquidity item derivation is based on a subset of information available in One Exposure (origin X).

If no liquidity item can be determined, the system updates the flow with an empty liquidity item.

- [Delete Data from One Exposure from Operations Hub](#)

If you want to use a new starting point within an implementation project, you can use this Customizing activity in the central system to delete all existing data or the source application **Distributed Cash** from One Exposure. You do this for each company code and source application.

## More Information

The information is then consumed by cash management apps, such as:

- [Cash Flow Analyzer](#)
- [Check Cash Flow Items](#)

For further information, see [One Exposure from Operations](#)

## Manual Entry of Bank Cash Balances in One Exposure from Operations

### Use

You can integrate forecasted cash from bank cash balances into One Exposure from Operations. In this integration scenario, you enter the cash balances in a Microsoft Excel sheet and load them into One Exposure. Since you have to upload the balances manually to One Exposure (central system), this integration scenario is also a side-by-side scenario.

Cash inflows and outflows contain the following information from bank cash balance uploads:

- Company
- Business Partner (filled with the bank of the bank account)
- Bank Account

### Certainty Level

One Exposure derives cash inflows and outflows for the given bank account balances. It stores this information with the certainty level ACTUAL.

### Flow Type

The system uses the following flow types for the cash flows from bank cash balances in One Exposure:

Default Flow Types
900102 – Bank Cash Balance Increase
900103 – Bank Cash Balance Decrease

If errors occur during data upload, they are directly displayed in a log after executing transaction FQM21.

## Prerequisites

You have to maintain house bank account connectivity information for remote bank accounts in the bank account master data of the activity **Manage Bank Accounts**. There, you need to fill the ID category field with **Remote System: House Bank Account** or **Remote System: G/L Account**.

## Activities

### Customizing Activities

- [Assign Planning Levels to Flow Types](#)

The system fills the planning level, if the planning level is assigned to the flow types the system uses.

- [Define Queries for Liquidity Item Derivation](#)

This offers you the possibility to enter derivation rules for data coming from bank cash balances. The liquidity item derivation is based on a subset of information available in One Exposure (origin X).

If no liquidity item can be determined, the system updates the flow with an empty liquidity item.

- [Load Transaction Data from Source Applications into One Exposure from Operations Hub](#)

If you want to integrate transaction data that had already been created before the source application **Bank Account Balances** was activated, you use this Customizing activity.

- [Delete Data from One Exposure from Operations Hub](#)

If you want to use a new starting point within an implementation project, you can use this Customizing activity to delete all existing data or the source application **Bank Account Balances** from One Exposure. You do this for each company code and source application.

## More Information

For further information on the import of bank cash balances, see the report documentation available in transaction FQM21.

The information are then consumed by cash management apps, such as:

- [Cash Flow Analyzer](#)
- [Check Cash Flow Items](#)

For further information, see [One Exposure from Operations](#)

## SAP Liquidity Planner in One Exposure from Operations

### Use

You can integrate allocated cash coming from SAP Liquidity Planner into One Exposure from Operations. In this integration scenario, the source application SAP Liquidity Planner and One Exposure from Operations run in different systems (side-by-side scenario). SAP Liquidity Planner runs in SAP Business Suite systems (releases SAP S/4HANA 6.0 EhP 6, EhP 7, or EhP 8).

Allocated cash contains the following information from SAP Liquidity Planner:

- Reference to the original data of SAP Liquidity Planner in the remote system
- Account Assignments:
  - Company
  - Business Area
- Bank Account
- Liquidity Item

### Certainty Level

One Exposure derives cash forecasts for items representing allocated cash. It stores this information with the certainty level **ACTUAL**.

### Flow Type

The system uses the following flow types for forecasts in One Exposure:

Default Flow Types
900112 – Incoming Cash (LP)
900113 – Outgoing Cash (LP)

### Liquidity Item

The system takes the liquidity item from the SAP Liquidity Planner in the remote system. The same liquidity items have to exist in the remote and in the central system.

You use transaction **FQM\_TRANSFER** in the remote system for periodic transfer of data to the central system.

If errors occur during data upload, the system collects these errors in an application log in the remote system. Alternatively, you can also see the messages directly after executing transaction **FQM\_TRANSFER** in the remote system.

## Prerequisites

To derive a bank account, you have to maintain house bank account connectivity information for remote bank accounts in the bank account master data of the activity **Manage Bank Accounts** in the central system. There, you need to fill the ID category field with **Remote System: G/L Account**, and enter the company code and G/L account from the remote system.

In the central system, you have to configure a Web service based on the service definition **FQM\_WS\_DISTRIBUTE**. In the remote system, you have to define a logical port for each remote system based on the consumer proxy **CO\_FQM\_WS\_DISTRIBUTE**.

## Features

In the remote system, you have the following additional functions

- In the event of errors in already transferred data, you can trigger an exceptional transfer with transaction **FQM\_TRANSFER\_MANUAL**.

- You can trigger the deletion of all existing data or the source application LPA from One Exposure in the remote systems with transaction FQM\_DELETE.

## Activities

### Customizing Activities

#### Central System

- [Reassign Company Codes](#)

In this Customizing activity, you assign the paying company codes (FLQ\*-ZBUKRS) and company codes (FLQ\*-BUKRS) of the remote system to company codes in the central system.

- [Convert Sender Business Areas](#)

In this Customizing activity, you assign the business areas of the remote system to business areas in the central system.

- [Delete Data from One Exposure from Operations Hub](#)

If you want to use a new starting point within an implementation project, you can use this Customizing activity to delete all existing data or the source application LPA from One Exposure. You do this for each company code and source application.

#### Remote System

- [Activate Source Application Liquidity Planner for Transfer to One Exposure](#)

You use this Customizing activity to configure for which companies you transfer allocated cash, and the earliest transaction date for each company.

You find this Customizing activity under: [Financial Supply Chain Management](#) [Cash and Liquidity Management](#) [Liquidity Planner](#) [Tools](#)

## More Information

For more information on how to set up the remote and the central system, see [Integration with Remote Systems](#).

The information is then consumed by cash management apps, such as:

- [Cash Flow Analyzer](#)
- [Check Cash Flow Items](#)

For further information, see [One Exposure from Operations](#)

## Apps for Cash Management

### Adapt Inactive Bank Accounts - Origination Process

**App ID: FCLM\_BAM\_MIG\_ORIGIN**

With this app, you can adapt inactive bank accounts for the bank account origination process. The program displays inactive bank accounts that are under the company code and contract type combination for which the bank account origination process has

been enabled. In the bank account origination process, the inactive bank account status is not valid. Therefore, you need to adapt these inactive bank accounts to one of the statuses of the bank account origination process.

## Key Features

You can use this app to do the following:

- View inactive bank accounts that are under the company code and contract type combination for which the bank account origination process has been enabled.
- Adapt these inactive bank accounts to one of the statuses of the bank account origination process.

## How to Use This App

To adapt the inactive bank accounts, proceed as follows:

1. Select one or more bank accounts that you want to adapt to the origination process and then choose the Execute button.

### i Note

If a bank account is already in a workflow process, you cannot change its account status using this program. You can either approve the workflow change request to change its status to Active, or reject the workflow change request. After the workflow change request is rejected, the bank account can be adapted using this program.

2. Select one of the target account statuses.

### i Note

The **Application Approved** status can be selected only if the bank account was created from a bank account application.

3. Save your change.

## Supported Device Types

- Desktop
- Tablet

## Actual Cash Flow

### Use

With this app, you can gain an overview of the daily cash flows for the past 90 days. This KPI helps you identify unusual inflows and outflows and take action accordingly. You can filter and drill down by various dimensions. This app is available for the roles of Cash Manager and Cash Management Specialist.

### Calculation Logic

The calculation logic is simple. The numbers on the app tile are the same as those in the top-right corner of the app.

The amount is the actual amount in bank account currency. The actual cash flows are calculated based on the transaction data from memo records and the One Exposure from Operations hub.

## Key Features

- Display the aggregated cash flows
- Display cash flows by company code
- Display cash flows by liquidity item
- Filter the data with various dimensions, such as calendar day, planning group, and so on
- Navigate to the Check Cash Flow Items application to display the line item details for each cash flow
- Switch the display mode between charts and tables
- Monitor the daily actual cash flows for the past days
- If your company uses SAP Jam, you can post comments there. You can also send emails from this app.

Caching is enabled for this app for better performance. You can click the refresh icon on the app tile and in the bottom-left corner of the app to refresh the data immediately. The data is also updated automatically. The frequency is determined by the cache duration in the tile configuration. For more information, see *Caching* in [Creating Applications](#).

## Supported Device Types

- Desktop

## Relevant Business Catalog

SAP\_SFIN\_BC\_CM\_LM

## More Information

- The SAP Fiori apps reference library has details about the content necessary for giving users access to an app on the SAP [Fiori launchpad](#). The SAP Fiori apps reference library is available here: <https://fioriappslibrary.hana.ondemand.com>

To see this app's Fiori content, search for the app. Then select SAP S/4HANA as the product. On the [Implementation Information](#) tab, select the correct release. The details are in the [Configuration](#) section.

[Configuration Settings: Actual Cash Flow](#)

## Configuration Settings: Actual Cash Flow

This document contains configuration information for the [Actual Cash Flow](#) app.

## SAP Jam Integration

For information on how to configure SAP Jam, see <http://help.sap.com/sapjam>.

## Manage KPIs and Reports

To know more, see [Manage KPIs and Reports](#).

## Group: Cash Position

**Group ID:** SAP.SFIN.CASHMGR.CFA90DAYS**Group Description:** Actual Cash Flow**Goal Type:** Maximizing**KPIs**

The following KPIs are assigned to this group:

- Cash Flows: EUR

**KPI****KPI ID:** SAP.SFIN.CASHMGR.CFA90DAYS**KPI Description:** Cash Trend by Date.**Targets, Thresholds, and Trend**

Parameter	Value	Example Value
Goal Type	Maximizing	
Value Type	Fixed Value	
Critical		
Warning		
Target		
Trend		

This table shows some example values.

**Input Parameters and Filters**

## Input Parameters

Input Parameter	Operator	Example Value	Explanation
P_DisplayCurrency	Equal to	EUR	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• For flows which have bank accounts, choose a bank account currency that is converted from the transaction currency.</li> <li>• For flows without bank accounts, choose the transaction currency as there's no such conversion.</li> </ul> <p>An entry in this field is required.</p>

Input Parameter	Operator	Example Value	Explanation
P_DueDaysRange	Equal to	90	<p>Choose a number of days to define the date range so as to display the actual cash flow. The date range is from the current date number to the number of the last day of the range before the current date.</p> <p>An entry in this field is required.</p>

The following tables show the input parameters, filters, and some preconfigured example values. Use your own values where required, according to the data in your backend system.

#### Drill-Down: Aggregated Cash Flow

View ID: V20151029064115.3534540

View Title: Aggregated Cash Flow

#### Measure and Dimension:

Parameter	Value
Dimension	Calendar Day
KPI Measure	Cash Flow

#### Visualization Type:

- Bar
- Single Axis
- Absolute Values
- Default Colors

#### Drill-Down: Cash Flow by Liquidity Item

View ID: V20151029064115.4822790

View Title: Cash Flow by Liquidity Item

#### Measure and Dimension:

Parameter	Value
Dimension	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Liquidity Item</li> <li>• Liquidity Item Name</li> </ul>
KPI Measure	Cash Flow

**Visualization Type:**

- Bar
- Single Axis
- Absolute Values
- Default Colors

**Drill-Down: Cash Flow by Company Code**

View ID: V20151029064115.5119380

View Title: Cash Flow by Company Code

**Measure and Dimension:**

Parameter	Value
Dimension	Company Code
KPI Measure	Cash Flow

**Visualization Type:**

- Bar
- Single Axis
- Absolute Values
- Default Colors

## Approve Bank Account Applications

With this app, you can view the applications you have received requesting new bank accounts. You can approve or reject the bank account applications.

### Prerequisites

To use this app, make sure you have defined users for submitting bank account applications and approvers for approving bank account applications. You use the authorization object F\_CLM\_BAOR to control the access to bank account applications.

Approvers must acquire the authorization to activity 31 (Confirm).

For details about other activities of the authorization object, see the authorization object documentation using the transaction SU22.

### Key Features

You can use this app to do the following:

- Approve or reject a bank account application

Once a bank account application is approved, the system automatically creates an inactive bank account according to information specified in the application.

An email notification will be sent automatically to the applicant who submitted the application.

- Confirm the withdrawal of a bank account application

Once confirmed, the bank account creation process will be stopped.

If an inactive bank account has already been created, the bank account will be changed automatically to the account status **Withdrawn**.

## Supported Device Types

- Desktop
- Tablet

## More Information

- The SAP Fiori apps reference library has details about the content necessary for giving users access to an app on the **SAP Fiori launchpad**. The SAP Fiori apps reference library is available here: <https://fioriappslibrary.hana.ondemand.com>

To see this app's Fiori content, search for the app. Then select SAP S/4HANA as the product. On the **Implementation Information** tab, select the correct release. The details are in the **Configuration** section.

## Related Information

[Submit Bank Account Applications](#)

[Bank Account Applications](#)

## Approve Bank Account Changes - Two-Person Verification

With this app, you get an overview of the bank account change requests that were triggered in the two-person verification mode and are awaiting approval. You can check the changes and decide whether to approve or reject the change requests.

## Prerequisites

To use this app, you must have the authorization to approve bank account change requests. Make sure that you are assigned with a role that has the authorization to activate bank accounts (authorization object F\_CLM\_BAM, activity 63).

The two-person verification mode must be set up in your system. For more information, see [Defining Approval Processes for Bank Account Management](#).

## Key Features

You can use this app to do the following:

- Check bank account change requests that are awaiting for your approval

Only bank account change requests that were triggered in the two-person verification mode are displayed in this app. To approve change requests that were triggered in the workflow mode, use the **My Inbox - For Bank Accounts** app.

- Get a clear view of the requested changes for each bank account change request

You can see comparisons of old values and new values. You can also use the [Current Version](#) and [Target Version](#) links to see what the bank account object page looks like before and after the proposed changes.

- Approve or reject bank account change requests

After you approve a bank account change request, the requested revision is activated. At the same time, a new version of the bank account is created based on the activated revision.

After you reject a bank account change request, the status of the requested revision is set to [Canceled](#).

## Supported Device Types

- Desktop
- Tablet

## Approve Bank Payments

With this app you can review and process payment batches. You can check the payments within a batch and approve, reject, or defer individual payments or entire batches.

## Features

- Search for payment batches by batch ID, company code, and house bank
- Edit the due dates for payment batches and the instruction keys for individual payments
- Submit your decisions for multiple payment batches at the same time
- Defer payments until a future date

### **i** Note

For external payment batches, some app functionality may differ.

## Optional User Authentication

You have the option to enable two-factor authentication using [SAP Authentication 365](#) or [SAP Cloud Platform Identity Authentication](#) for the [Approve Bank Payments](#) app. If you enable two-factor authentication, the business user submitting payment batches for processing by the bank will be asked to authenticate their identity before the batches can be submitted.

### Prerequisites for User Authentication

To use two-factor authentication with the [Approve Bank Payments](#) app, you must:

- Have an active account in either SAP Authentication 365 or SAP Cloud Platform Identity Authentication
- Make settings in Customizing, under [Financial Supply Chain Management > Bank Communication Management > Basic Settings > Specify Optional User Authentication](#). See the Customizing activity documentation in your system for more information.

### **i** Note

[SAP Authentication 365](#) and [SAP Cloud Platform Identity Authentication](#) are separate products. You must have an active account in one of those products to use two-factor authentication. For more information, see:

- [SAP Authentication 365](#)
- [SAP Cloud Platform Identity Authentication](#)

## Approve in Background

You can extend this app by enabling the **Approve in Background** function. You use this function to initiate the mass approval of payment batches as a background job from within the **Approve Bank Payments** app. For information about enabling this function, see [Extensibility: Approve in Background \(Key User Adaptation\)](#).

## Supported Device Types

- Desktop
- Tablet
- Smartphone

## More Information

- The SAP Fiori apps reference library has details about the content necessary for giving users access to an app on the **SAP Fiori launchpad**. The SAP Fiori apps reference library is available here: <https://fioriappslibrary.hana.ondemand.com>  
To see this app's Fiori content, search for the app. Then select SAP S/4HANA as the product. On the **Implementation Information** tab, select the correct release. The details are in the **Configuration** section.
- App-Specific Implementation Information in the SAP Fiori apps reference library:  
<https://fioriappslibrary.hana.ondemand.com/sap/fix/externalViewer/index.html?appId=F0673A>

## Related Information

[Extensibility: Approve in Background \(Key User Adaptation\)](#)

[Display Bank Payment Approval Jobs](#)

## Extensibility: Approve in Background (Key User Adaptation)

This functionality allows you to initiate the mass approval of payment batches as a background job from within the **Approve Bank Payments** app. The key features of this functionality are:

- Continue working in the app and approving payment batches even after initiating a background job
- Limit the availability of background approval to specific users
- View the status of payment batches included in the running background job

This guide is directed at **Key Users** and assumes you have the appropriate authorizations to perform the necessary changes in your systems.

To enable this function, you must perform the following steps. The result of this procedure is that authorized users will have a new tile on their **SAP Fiori Launchpad**. This new tile will launch an enhanced version of the **Approve Bank Payments** app that allows the user to use the approve in background function.

1. Add a New Button and Tab to the App

2. Create a New Catalog to Store the Enhanced App Tile
3. Create a New Tile to Launch the Enhanced Version of the App
4. Add a Reference to the Enhanced App in the New Catalog
5. Create a New Front-End Role and Add It to the New Catalog
6. Create a New Back-End Role and Add It to the New Catalog
7. Authorize the Enhanced App

These steps are detailed below.

## 1. Add a New Button and Tab to the App

In this step, you will unhide the UI elements related to the **Approve in Background** functionality. (Required role: **SAP\_UI\_FLEX\_KEY\_USER**)

1. Open the app. Enable the UI adaptation mode by clicking on your **Profile** icon and selecting **Adapt UI**.
2. Highlight the header toolbar area by moving your cursor to the region and click to use the  icon to **Add: Content**. The header toolbar is located between the filter bar and the list report. Select the checkbox for **Approve in Background** and click **OK**. Use drag and drop to change the position of the button if you choose.
3. Click **Save As**. You will be prompted to save the adapted app as a variant. Specify a **Title** for the variant, for example **Approve Bank Payments – Approve in Background**, and click **Save**.
4. You will receive an informational message with an **App ID**. Select **Copy ID and Close** to copy the ID to your clipboard and close the message.

### Note

You will need this app ID to add a new tile to your launchpad in Step 3, so make note of it. You can return to this **Adapt UI** screen to retrieve the app ID if needed.

5. Your new variant now appears in the **Overview of App Variants**. Close the overview and click **Save and Exit**.

For more information, see [Adapt User Interfaces at Runtime](#).

## 2. Create a New Catalog to Store the Enhanced App Tile (Optional)

In this step, you will create a new catalog where you can store the app tile for your variant. This step is optional because you can also use an existing catalog to store the tile. We recommend you create a new one.

### Note

If you use an existing catalog instead of creating a new one, then whenever any steps in this overall procedure reference a new catalog, replace it with the existing catalog you want to use.

To create a new catalog:

1. In your front-end system, run transaction **/UI2/FLPD\_CUST** to open your **Fiori Launchpad Designer**.
2. Use the  icon to open the creation dialog for a new catalog. Specify a **Title** and **ID**. For example, **Title: Background Jobs ABP, ID: SAP\_EXAMPLE\_BACKGROUND**.
3. Continue to overall step 3.

For more information, see [Creating or Deleting Catalogs](#).

### 3. Create a New Tile to Launch the Enhanced Version of the App

In this step, you will create a new tile that allows you to launch the **Approve Bank Payments – Approve in Background** app.

1. In your front-end system, run transaction /UI2/FLPD\_CUST to open your **Fiori Launchpad Designer**.
2. Find the new catalog you created in overall step 2, for example SAP\_EXAMPLE\_BACKGROUND.
3. On the catalog details screen, click  to add a new tile. Use the **Dynamic** template.
4. In the new tile window, enter the following details:

Field	Entry
Title	Example: Approve Bank Payments
Subtitle	Example: Approve in Background
Service URL	/sap/opu/odata/sap/FAP_APPROVEBANKPAYMENTS_SRV/C_AbpPaymentBatch/\$count/?\$filter=(IsActiveEntity%20eq%20false%20or%20SiblingEntity/IsActiveEntity%20eq%20null)
Semantic Object	BankOutgoingPaymentCollection
Action	approvePaymentsBackground

Ensure the **Use semantic object navigation** checkbox is selected. **Save** your entries.

5. On the catalog details screen, select the **Target Mappings** tab icon and click **Create Target Mapping**. Enter the same **Title**, **Semantic Object**, and **Action** as in the previous step.
6. In **ID**, enter the **App ID** you copied in overall step 1. You can return to the **Adapt UI** screen to retrieve the app ID if needed.
7. **Save** your entries and continue to overall step 4.

For more information, see [Creating and Configuring Tiles and Target Mappings](#).

### 4. Add a Reference to the Enhanced App in the New Catalog

In this step, you will add a mapping reference from the technical catalog SAP\_BASIS\_TCR\_T to your new catalog.

1. In your front-end system, run transaction /UI2/FLPD\_CUST to open your **Fiori Launchpad Designer**.
2. Search for catalog SAP\_BASIS\_TCR\_T and select it.
3. With the catalog open, select the **Target Mappings** tab icon.
4. Select the row **Semantic Object**: ApplicationJob, **Action**: show
5. With the row selected, click the **Create Reference** button.
6. Find your new catalog in the search dialog and select it. For example, SAP\_EXAMPLE\_BACKGROUND.
7. The target reference is mapped.

#### i Note

To confirm the reference is mapped successfully, you can open technical catalog SAP\_BASIS\_TCR\_T, go to the **Target Mappings** tab and select the **Where Used** button. The reference to your new catalog will appear in the list. You can also open your new catalog, go to the **Target Mappings** tab, and see the new entry in the list of semantic objects.

For more information, see [Configuring Target Mappings with the Launchpad Designer](#).

## 5. Create a New Front-End Role and Add It to the New Catalog

In this step, you will create a new role in your front-end system and then add a reference to that role in your new catalog.

1. In your front-end system, run transaction PFCG to open **Role Maintenance**.
2. In **Role**, enter a name for your new role, then click **Single Role**.
3. Optionally, enter a description for your new role in **Description**. **Save** your entries.
4. Go to the **Menu** tab, then **Transaction** → **SAP Fiori Launchpad** → **Launchpad Catalog**.
5. In the dialog, select the radio button for **Local Front-End Server**, then in **Catalog ID**, enter the name of the new catalog you created in overall step 2. For example, SAP\_EXAMPLE\_BACKGROUND.
6. Click **Continue**, then **Save** your entries.

You have now created a new front-end role and added a reference to it from your new catalog.

For more information, see [Configure Roles for Catalogs](#).

## 6. Create a New Back-End Role and Add It to the New Catalog

In this step, you will create a new role in your back-end system and then add a reference to that role in your new catalog.

1. In your back-end system, run transaction PFCG to open **Role Maintenance**.
  2. In **Role**, enter a name for your new role, then click **Single Role**.
- i Note**
- The name can be the same as the role you created in your front-end system.
3. Optionally, enter a description for your new role in **Description**. **Save** your entries.
  4. Go to the **Menu** tab, then **Transaction** → **SAP Fiori Launchpad** → **Launchpad Catalog**.
  5. In the dialog, select the radio button for **Remote Front-End Server**, then also select the radio button for **RFC-Destination** and specify your front-end server. For example, ABCDXYZ111\_T.
  6. In **Catalog ID**, enter the name of the new catalog you created in overall step 2. For example, SAP\_EXAMPLE\_BACKGROUND. You may be prompted to sign in to your destination system.
  7. Click **Continue**, then **Save** your entries.

For more information, see [Configure Roles for Catalogs](#).

## 7. Authorize the Enhanced App

In this step, you will manage the authorizations for the job template used for running this background job.

1. In your back-end system, run transaction PFCG to open **Role Maintenance**.
2. Open the back-end role you created in overall step 6 and go to the **Authorizations** tab.
3. Click **Change Authorization Data**. Don't select a template if offered.
4. Click the **+Manually** button at the top of the screen. In the dialog, enter S\_START in the first **Authorization Object** field and confirm.
5. Expand the subtree for **Object Class AAAB**.
6. Go to AUTHOBJNAM and enter **Change** mode within the **Action** field.
7. In the dialog, select **Application Job Catalog Entry** from the dropdown list. In **From Value**, enter SAP\_FIN\_BNK\_MASS\_APPROVE and then **Save** the entry.
8. **Save** your overall changes.
9. Click **Generate** (red and white circle) and then confirm generation.
10. Click **Status** and then confirm.

## Complete the Procedure

To complete the procedure, add your new front-end role to your front-end user and your new back-end role to your back-end user. A new tile called **Approve Bank Payments – Approve in Background** will now appear on your launchpad and it will launch the enhanced version of **Approve Bank Payments**.

## Related Information

[Approve Bank Payments](#)

[Display Bank Payment Approval Jobs](#)

## Display Bank Payment Approval Jobs

App ID: F6617

With this app, you can monitor the status of bank payment approval jobs running in the background. The background jobs can be initiated from the **Approve Bank Payments** app after you have enabled the **Approve in Background** function. For more details, see **Related Information**.

### i Note

This app will only display information if you have enabled the **Approve in Background** function for **Approve Bank Payments**. For more information, see [Extensibility: Approve in Background \(Key User Adaptation\)](#).

## Key Features

You can use this app to do the following:

- Search for background jobs initiated in the **Approve Bank Payments** app
- Display the status of bank payment approval jobs running in the background

## Supported Device Types

- Desktop
- Tablet
- Smartphone

## Related Information

[Approve Bank Payments](#)

[Extensibility: Approve in Background \(Key User Adaptation\)](#)

## Skill: Approve Bank Payments

View information about payment batches and payment batch approvers.

### Purpose

You use this skill to query and view payment batch information using SAP CoPilot. You can say or type your query to see information such as all payment batches for a company code, payment batches by house bank, rule, bank country, or any other filter that is available within the app.

### Required Data Input

No mandatory data input.

### Examples of Commands

#### Queries

- Show me my payment batches for company code XYZ
- Show me my payment batches with rule XYZ
- Show me my payment batches with urgent XYZ
- Show me my payment batches for house bank XYZ
- Show me my payment batches
- Show me my payment batches with creation date XYZ
- Show me my payment batches for bank name XYZ
- Show me my payment batches for account XYZ
- Show me my payment batches for bank country XYZ
- Show me approvers for my payment batch XYZ
- Show me future approvers for my payment batch XYZ

#### Read

- Show me my payment batch XYZ

## Available Languages

English

## Additional Details

For more information about skills and their availability, see the user help for SAP CoPilot at [https://help.sap.com/viewer/p/SAP\\_COPILOT](https://help.sap.com/viewer/p/SAP_COPILOT).

# Manage Email Notifications for Payment Batch Approvers

## Use

You want the payment batch approvers to be informed by email automatically when a payment batch requires their approval.

## Prerequisites

You need to configure valid email domains for email senders and receivers in the settings for Output Management. Make the relevant settings in the following Customizing activities:

### Domain for Email Sender

1. Go to **ABAP Platform and Infrastructure** **Application Server** **System Administration** **System Administration** **Email Configuration** .
2. Select **Define Allowed Email Sender Domains**.
3. Enter the relevant data. For example, `example.com`.

### Domain for Email Receiver

1. Go to **ABAP Platform and Infrastructure** **Application Server** **System Administration** **System Administration** **Email Configuration** .
2. Select **Define Allowed Email Receiver Domains**.
3. Enter the relevant data. For example, `example.com`.

Per default the domain `example.com` is entered for both settings. You can add more values to the list to extend the number of valid domains.

## Example

Your settings could look like this:

Define Allowed Email Sender Domains
Sender Address Pattern
example.com
@123company.com
456company.com

### Sender Address Pattern


### Define Allowed Email Receiver Domains

Receiver Address Pattern
example.com
@123company.com
456company.com

## Enabling Email Notifications

1. Go to Financial Supply Chain Management Bank Communication Management Basic Settings .
2. Select **Send Email to Payment Batch Approvers**.
3. Enter the relevant data.

**i Note**

You need to at least enter an **Email Template ID** and **Sender Email Address**.

You can differentiate the use of the email templates by company code and house bank if necessary.

4. Activate **EnableMail** checkbox.

5. Save your entries.

## Standard Settings

The standard settings are as follows:

- Email Template ID: **FSCM\_BCM\_PAYMENTBATCH\_APPROVER**  
This is a default pre-delivered email template by SAP.
- Sender Email Address: **donotreply@example.com**  
This is the default sender email address.
- Enable Mail: **Not activated**

**i Note**

You need to change these default entries to match your preferences.

## Example

Example for Email Notifications

Company Code	House Bank	Email Template ID	Sender Email Address	Enable Email
1010		FSCM_BCM_PAYMENTBATCH_APPROVER	donotreply@example.com	Checked

You have enabled the email notifications for company code 1010 and all house banks with the default values for the email template and the sender email address. As a result, only approvers of payment batches in company code 1010 will be notified by email when they have payment batches waiting for their approval.

## Maintaining Email Notifications

1. Log onto the SAP Fiori launchpad.
2. Go to [Maintain Email Templates](#).
3. Select the **Pre-delivered** tab.
4. Search for **FSCM\_BCM\_PAYMENTBATCH\_APPROVER**.
5. Select the template.
6. The **Email Template for Payment Batch Approver** screen opens. This screen displays the name of the template, its description, date of creation and data source and available languages.
7. Select relevant language to see predefined template text.
8. Review email subject and body text.

### → Tip

You can also use this app to create your own email templates.

For more information, see [Maintain Email Templates](#).

## Bank

### Purpose

You can use this app for the following purposes:

- To display an overview of the bank data, such as:
  - Bank name
  - Bank key
  - Bank country/region
  - Key facts relevant in the business context. Key facts are important data prominently displayed in the app. This app shows the following key facts:
    - Address of the bank
    - SWIFT code
    - Bank number

- As a starting point to navigate to additional information relevant in your business context, such as information about related business partners, related master data, or related documents.
- To navigate to apps with additional functions, such as editing or analyzing related business data.

## More Information

- The SAP Fiori apps reference library has details about the content necessary for giving users access to an app on the **SAP Fiori launchpad**. The SAP Fiori apps reference library is available here: <https://fioriappslibrary.hana.ondemand.com>

To see this app's Fiori content, search for the app. Then select SAP S/4HANA as the product. On the **Implementation Information** tab, select the correct release. The details are in the **Configuration** section.

### [Searching for a Bank](#)

## Searching for a Bank

This document shows you how to search for banks.

### Use

To find a specific bank, you can search for various attributes using the search field. Before you enter any attributes in the search field, you should select the category **Banks**.

You can, for example, enter a bank country/region to display all banks belonging to this country/region. To narrow down your search results, you can also combine several attributes, such as a bank number and a SWIFT Code. The search takes into account the following business data:

- Bank Country/Region
- Bank Key
- Bank Name
- SWIFT Code

A list of results is displayed. For the first result, the display area includes the header, the summary, and details. For all other results, you only see a header and a summary. To display the details of another search result, expand the display area.

To further limit your search results to the ones that are relevant to you, you can apply one or more filters, for example a specific status. You can also sort the search results according to your needs.

## More Information

For general information about how to search for an object page, see [Search](#).

## Bank Account Applications

With this app, you can check bank account applications in different statuses. You can also activate bank accounts created for approved applications.

## Key Features

You can use this app to do the following:

- Search for or filter bank account applications using various attributes, for example, application status, company code, applicant.
- View bank account application details, including the application information, approval history, and the created bank account.
- Check the bank account applications that are awaiting approval and view processors who are authorized to approve a bank account application.
- Navigate to the **Manage Bank Accounts** app to add necessary information for the bank account created and activate the bank account.

## Supported Device Types

- Desktop
- Tablet

## More Information

- The SAP Fiori apps reference library has details about the content necessary for giving users access to an app on the **SAP Fiori launchpad**. The SAP Fiori apps reference library is available here: <https://fioriappslibrary.hana.ondemand.com>

To see this app's Fiori content, search for the app. Then select SAP S/4HANA as the product. On the **Implementation Information** tab, select the correct release. The details are in the **Configuration** section.

## Related Information

[Approve Bank Account Applications](#)

[Submit Bank Account Applications](#)

## Bank Account Change Requests - Two-Person Verification

App ID: F6265

With this app, you get an overview of all the bank account change requests that were triggered in the two-person verification mode. You can also check the details of each bank account change request to see what is to be changed or has been changed.

## Prerequisites

The two-person verification mode must be set up in your system. For more information, see [Defining Approval Processes for Bank Account Management](#).

## Key Features

You can use this app to do the following:

- View all bank account change requests that were triggered in the two-person verification mode in one central place.
- Filter bank account change requests using various attributes, for example, company code, bank key, request status, contract type, and so on.

- Check details of each bank account change request, including a detailed log of what is to be changed or has been changed.

## Supported Device Types

- Desktop
- Tablet

## Related Information

[Approve Bank Account Changes - Two-Person Verification](#)

# Bank Account Balance (Deprecated)

With this app you can have a quick visual overview of the available bank account balance for a selected period of time. It illustrates the amounts of opening balance, cash flows, overdue cash flows and overdraft limits in display currency and bank account currency for bank accounts. You can also customize your analysis with several filtering options in chart or table views. This allows cash specialists or cash managers to have a high-level overview and detailed insight to monitor the bank account balance.

## Key Features

You can use this app to:

### Default View

- View the cash position KPI in the visual filter view to see the available balance in display currency by company code, bank account currency, bank account, bank and bank country/region.
- Switch to the compact filter view from the visual filter view in case you need to change your filter options.
- Adapt your filters, for example, set the time period for the cash position.

You can not only display the cash position on the value date, but also a number of days after the value date. To do so, you enter the number of days in the **Position in Days** field. You can then decide how many days after the value date the cash position is displayed. While **Value Date** is the used to calculate the overdue flows, **Position in Days** can help you to create a user-defined **Until Date**. You can then see the cash position for a period from the value date to the user-defined number of days.

### Chart View

- Use the chart view to overview the cash position details in your company. Select the **View By** drill down box, and you can have the following dimensions:
  - **Bank Account Currency**
  - **Bank**
  - **Bank Country/region**
  - **Company Code**

Select a parameter in the chart and you can see the details of bank account currency, bank account, and available balance in the **Details** field.

- Display the chart in other chart types, such as line chart, bar chart, and so on.

## Table View

- Use the table view for more granular analysis.
- View a list of bank accounts with available balance in display currency.

The available balance is the closing balance plus the overdraft limit. The closing balance is the total amount of the net cash flows that are overdue before the value date, plus the opening balance on the value date, and the net cash flows from the value date to the until date which you define with the **Position in Days** filter.

Refer to the calculation logic: Available Balance = Opening Balance + Overdue Inflows - Overdue Outflows + Cash Inflows - Cash Outflows + Overdraft Limits

- Show details of the opening balance in bank account currency.
- Choose to show all the items or items based on the chart selection.

## Supported Device Types

- Desktop
- Tablet

## Bank Risk

### Use

With this app you can analyze deposit distribution in terms of bank ratings. This allows you to identify deposits in high-risk bank accounts.

This app is available for the role Cash Manager and Cash Management Specialist.

### Calculation Logic

The calculation logic is simple. The number on the app tile is the same as that in the top-right corner of the app.

The amount is the deposit amount in display currency on the bank accounts that you select today. The bank risk is calculated based on the transaction data from memo records and the One Exposure from Operations hub.

### Key Features

- Display balances in banks of low rating
- Display balances by bank
- Display balances by bank and company

#### **i Note**

The bank rating can be used for sorting. Items are sorted according to their rating values high to low (or low to high) rather than alphanumerically. The mappings of rating order values and descriptions are maintained in the VN\_TP06 view. You can include other threshold (critical) ratings by updating the VN\_TP06 view and incorporating your own rating system and ordering sequence. Low rating is defined as values larger than 12.

To make ratings available, make sure that you have a proper business partner defined and linked to each bank. To do so, proceed as follows:

1. Link a business partner to each of the banks.

For information on how to maintain the linkages, see the topic “Business Partners for Banks” in the “Data Setup Guide for SAP S/4HANA Finance for Cash Management”.

2. In transaction BP, define the following for the relevant business partners:

- On the Identification tab, specify the fields under the **Identification as Bank** section.
- Specify necessary data on the **Payment Transaction** tab.
- Specify necessary data on the **Creditworthiness Data** tab.
- Switch the display mode between charts and tables
- Export your search results to a spreadsheet

In addition, the app supports the following technical features and options:

- Send emails

You can send an email with a URL that enables the recipients to check the app with exactly the same selection criteria as you are currently using.

- Save as tile

You can create a tile that uses the current selection criteria as default settings.

## Navigation Targets

The app enables users to access other apps directly (for example to display detailed information).

### i Note

These linked apps have to be already available in your system landscape or you have to implement them along with this app.

- [Check Cash Flow Items](#)
- [Manage Bank Accounts](#)
- Cash Position Details
- [Manage Banks](#)
- [Make Bank Transfers](#)

## Component for Customer Incidents

FIN-FSCM-CLM-COP

## More Information

- The SAP Fiori apps reference library has details about the content necessary for giving users access to an app on the **SAP Fiori launchpad**. The SAP Fiori apps reference library is available here: <https://fioriappslibrary.hana.ondemand.com>

To see this app's Fiori content, search for the app. Then select SAP S/4HANA as the product. On the **Implementation Information** tab, select the correct release. The details are in the **Configuration** section.

# Configuration Settings: Bank Risk

This document contains configuration information for the **Bank Risk** app.

## SAP Jam Integration

For information on how to configure SAP Jam, see <http://help.sap.com/sapjam>.

## Manage KPIs and Reports

To know more, see [Manage KPIs and Reports](#).

**Group:** Bank Risk

**Group ID:** .SFIN.CASHMGR.BANKRISK

**Group Description:** With this app, cash managers can analyze deposit distribution in terms of bank rating and identify deposits in high-risk bank accounts.

**Goal Type:** Minimizing

**KPI**

**KPI ID:** .SFIN.CASHMGR.BANKRISK

**KPI Description:** With this app, cash managers can analyze deposit distribution in terms of bank rating and identify deposits in high-risk bank accounts.

**Targets, Thresholds, and Trend**

Parameter	Value	Example Value
Goal Type	Minimizing	
Value Type	Fixed Value	
Critical		100000
Warning		50000
Target		10000
Trend	(Not applicable)	

This table shows some example values.

**Input Parameters and Filters**

Input Parameters

Input Parameter	Operator	Example Value	Explanation

Input Parameter	Operator	Example Value	Explanation
P_DisplayCurrency	Equal to	EUR	<p>Choose a currency in which the currency amounts should be displayed. Ensure that exchange rates for this currency exist in your system.</p> <p>An entry in this field is required.</p>
P_ExchangeRateType	Equal to	M	<p>Choose an exchange rate type that is used to convert the currency into the display currency.</p> <p>An entry in this field is required.</p> <p>You can view the available exchange rate types in customizing in the system under  SAP NetWeaver &gt; SAP NetWeaver &gt; General Settings &gt; Currencies &gt; Check Exchange Rate Types.</p>

#### Filter

Filter	Operator	Example Value	Explanation
CreditRating	Larger than	12	<p>A predefined credit rating is used to indicate the rating level for this bank in your system.</p> <p>An entry in this field is required.</p>

The following tables show the input parameters, filters, and some preconfigured example values. Use your own values where required, according to the data in your backend system.

#### Drill-Down: By Low Rating

View ID: .SFIN.CASHMGR.BANKRISK.VIEW1

View Title: By Low Rating

Measure and Dimension:

Parameter	Value
Dimension	Rating
KPI Measure	Amount In Display Currency

Visualization Type:

- Bar
- Single Axis
- Absolute Values

- Default Colors

**Drill-Down: By Bank**

**View ID:** .SFIN.CASHMGR.BANKRISK.VIEW2

**View Title:** By Bank

**Measure and Dimension:**

Parameter	Value
Dimension	Bank
KPI Measure	Amount In Display Currency

**Visualization Type:**

- Bar
- Single Axis
- Absolute Values
- Default Colors

**Drill-Down: By Bank and Company**

**View ID:** .SFIN.CASHMGR.BANKRISK.VIEW3

**View Title:** By Bank and Company

**Measure and Dimension:**

Parameter	Value
Dimension	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Bank</li> <li>• Company Code</li> </ul>
KPI Measure	Amount In Display Currency

**Visualization Type:**

- Bar
- Single Axis
- Absolute Values
- Default Colors

## Bank Relationship Overview

With this app, you can access key information about bank relationship management and gain insights into current trends. The app provides a central source of information for recent payments, bank profiles, bank fees, and bank account statuses.

## Key Features

You can customize the overview page by rearranging cards and by hiding or showing them. You can drag and drop cards to rearrange them.

To hide a card, proceed as follows:

- In the header bar, select the **User** icon and choose **Manage Cards**. Use the switch control to hide or show the relevant card. Choose **OK**.
- To reset the view to the default settings, choose **Restore** in the **Manage Cards** window.

This table shows the various cards that can be displayed in the **Bank Relationship Overview** app:

Card Name	Description
<b>Payments</b> <b>By House Bank (In the Last 90 Days)</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Shows you the total number and amount of incoming and outgoing payments by house bank in the last 90 days. The entries are sorted by the number of outgoing payments in descending order.</li> <li>• Clicking on an entry takes you to the <b>Manage Bank Statements</b> app.</li> </ul>
<b>Bank Profiles</b> <b>By Bank Group</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Shows you how many banks and bank accounts your company has under each bank group.</li> <li>• Clicking on an entry takes you to the <b>Manage Bank Accounts - Bank Hierarchy View</b> app.</li> </ul>
<b>Bank Fees</b> <b>By Bank Group</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Shows you the total amount of bank fees by bank group.</li> <li>• The bars in the chart are divided into sections denoting the bank fee amounts for different service types.</li> <li>• Clicking on a bar chart section takes you to the <b>Monitor Bank Fees</b> app to view details of your selection.</li> </ul>
<b>Bank Accounts</b> <b>By Status</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Shows you the number of bank accounts by bank account status - active or closed.</li> <li>• You can switch the chart to view the bank accounts by company or by country/region.</li> <li>• Clicking on a bar chart section takes you to the <b>Manage Bank Accounts</b> app to view the list of bank accounts of your selection.</li> </ul>
<b>Workflow Requests</b> <b>By Status</b>	<p><b>i Note</b></p> <p>This card is relevant only when the workflow process is implemented in your system for bank account management. In</p>

Card Name	Description
	<p>other cases, you can hide this card because no data is displayed.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Shows you the number of bank accounts by workflow status: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Approved</li> <li>To Be Approved</li> <li>Completed</li> <li>Canceled</li> </ul> </li> <li>Clicking on the bar chart takes you to the <a href="#">My Inbox - For Bank Accounts</a> app to view the workflow requests that are currently assigned to you.</li> </ul>
<p><b>Bank Accounts</b></p> <p><b>By Revision Status</b></p>	<p><b>i Note</b></p> <p>This card is relevant only when the dual control process is implemented in your system for bank account management. In other cases, you can hide this card because no data is displayed.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Shows you the number of bank accounts by revision status.</li> <li>With the chart, you can easily identify bank accounts that have <a href="#">To Be Activated</a> revisions that await activation by authorized users.</li> <li>Clicking on a section of the donut chart takes you to the <a href="#">Manage Bank Accounts</a> app to view the list of bank accounts of your selection. You can check bank accounts with <a href="#">To Be Activated</a> revisions and activate them when necessary.</li> </ul>

## Supported Device Types

- Desktop
- Tablet

## More Information

- The SAP Fiori apps reference library has details about the content necessary for giving users access to an app on the [SAP Fiori launchpad](#). The SAP Fiori apps reference library is available here: <https://fioriappslibrary.hana.ondemand.com>

To see this app's Fiori content, search for the app. Then select SAP S/4HANA as the product. On the [Implementation Information](#) tab, select the correct release. The details are in the [Configuration](#) section.

## Bank Statement Monitor - End of Day (Deprecated)

### Use

With this app you can monitor the import status of end-of-day bank statements for all the bank accounts that have been selected for monitoring. This app provides you with an overall status of the monitored bank accounts and also allows you to identify bank accounts with statement import errors. Then, you can communicate the issue to the responsible person using emails directly from this app.

## Calculation Logic

The equation below illustrates how the number on the app tile is calculated and is followed by an explanation:

$$P = \frac{N_1}{N_2} * 100\%$$

Where

$P$  = Success rate of bank statement imports

$N_1$  = Number of bank accounts whose bank statements have been successfully imported and posted

$N_2$  = Number of bank accounts that are set to be monitored

### How Success Rate of Bank Statement Imports Is Calculated

The success rate of bank statement imports is calculated by dividing the number of bank accounts whose bank statements are successfully imported and posted by the total number of bank accounts that are set to be monitored.

## Key Features

- Check the overall success rate of bank statement imports
- Filter the bank accounts displayed using various filters, such as bank, contact person, house bank, and so on
- Check the import status for bank accounts using the following dimensions:
  - By country/region
  - By company code
  - By bank and company
  - By company and bank
  - By bank account in a table view with contact person information displayed
- Toggle between a chart view and a table view

In addition, the app supports the following technical features and options:

- Send emails

You can send an email with a URL that enables the recipients to check the app with exactly the same selection criteria as you are currently using.

- Save as tile

You can create a tile that uses the current selection criteria as default settings.

## Navigation Targets

The app enables users to access other apps directly (for example to display detailed information).

### i Note

These linked apps have to be already available in your system landscape or you have to implement them along with this app.

- [Make Bank Transfers](#)

## Supported Device Types

- Desktop
- Tablet

## More Information

- The SAP Fiori apps reference library has details about the content necessary for giving users access to an app on the **SAP Fiori launchpad**. The SAP Fiori apps reference library is available here: <https://fioriappslibrary.hana.ondemand.com>

To see this app's Fiori content, search for the app. Then select SAP S/4HANA as the product. On the **Implementation Information** tab, select the correct release. The details are in the **Configuration** section.

## Configuration Settings: Bank Statement Monitor

This document contains configuration information for this app.

## SAP Jam Integration

For information on how to configure SAP Jam, see <http://help.sap.com/sapjam>.

## Manage KPIs and Reports

To know more, see [Manage KPIs and Reports](#).

**Group: Bank Statement Monitor**

**Group ID:** sap.hba.sfin.cashmgr.bankstatementmonitor

**Group Description:**

With this app, cash managers can monitor the import status of bank statements for all the bank accounts that are set to be monitored.

**Goal Type: Maximizing****KPI****KPI Description:** Bank Statement Monitor**Targets, Thresholds, and Trend**

Parameter	Value
Goal Type	Maximizing
Value Type	FIXED
Critical	0.600
Warning	0.800
Target	0.100

This table shows some example values.

**Input Parameters and Filters**

## Input Parameters

Input Parameter	Operator	Example Value	Explanation
P_WarnAsError	Equal to	True or false	<p>The parameter affects how the import success rate is calculated.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>True: Bank statement imports with the warning status are counted as errors.</li> <li>False: Bank statement imports with the warning status are counted as successful imports.</li> </ul>

The following tables show the input parameters, filters, and some preconfigured example values. Use your own values where required, according to the data in your backend system.

**Drill-Down: By Bank and Company****View Title:** By Bank and Company**Measures and Dimensions:**

Parameter	Value
Dimensions	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Bank</li> <li>• Company Code</li> </ul>
Measures	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Warning</li> <li>• Succeeded</li> <li>• Error</li> </ul>

**Visualization Type:**

- Bar
- Single Axis
- Absolute Values
- Default Colors

**Drill-Down: By Bank Account (Contact Person)**

**View Title:** By Bank Account (Contact Person)

**Measures and Dimensions:**

Parameter	Value
Dimensions	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Bank</li> <li>• Company Code</li> <li>• Country/region</li> <li>• Bank Account</li> <li>• Contact Person</li> </ul>
Measures	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Warning</li> <li>• Succeeded</li> <li>• Error</li> </ul>

**Visualization Type:**

- Table
- Default Colors

**Drill-Down: By Company Code**

**View Title:** By Company Code

**Measures and Dimensions:**

Parameter	Value
Dimension	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Company Code</li> </ul>
Measures	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Warning</li> <li>• Succeeded</li> <li>• Error</li> </ul>

**Visualization Type:**

- Bar
- Single Axis
- Absolute Values
- Default Colors

**Drill-Down: By Country****View Title: By Country****Measures and Dimensions:**

Parameter	Value
Dimension	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Country</li> </ul>
Measures	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Warning</li> <li>• Succeeded</li> <li>• Error</li> </ul>

**Visualization Type:**

- Bar
- Single Axis
- Absolute Values
- Default Colors

## Bank Statement Monitor - Intraday

With this app, you can monitor the import status of intraday bank statements for the bank accounts that have been selected for monitoring.

## Prerequisites

You have made the required settings for using this app. For more information, see [Configuration Settings for Bank Statement Monitor - Intraday](#).

## Key Features

You can use this app to do the following:

- View the appointments defined for importing intraday bank statements and their statuses in a timeline chart that can be zoomed in or out

The system checks the bank statement date and time to decide if the intraday bank statements have been imported in time. The import time is not considered.

- Monitor the overall import status of intraday bank statements for bank accounts that have been selected for monitoring

### **i Note**

Only intraday bank statements with the status 8 (**Completed**) are considered.

- View the expected number of imports and the current number
- Use the alert setting to define the condition for displaying alerts for unfulfilled appointments

To define the alert settings, click your user profile picture to open the user actions menu, and then choose **User Settings**.

## Supported Device Types

- Desktop
- Tablet

## More Information

- The SAP Fiori apps reference library has details about the content necessary for giving users access to an app on the **SAP Fiori launchpad**. The SAP Fiori apps reference library is available here: <https://fioriappslibrary.hana.ondemand.com>

To see this app's Fiori content, search for the app. Then select SAP S/4HANA as the product. On the **Implementation Information** tab, select the correct release. The details are in the **Configuration** section.

## Related Information

[Bank Statement Monitor - End of Day \(Deprecated\)](#)

[Define Monitoring Rules - Intraday Statements](#)

## Bank Statement Monitor

App ID: F6388

With this app, you can monitor the status of end-of-day bank statements from individual bank accounts. In addition to checking the status of end-of-day bank statements for a specific date, you also get an overview of the records over the last 14 days starting from the date you specified. Based on your bank account settings, you can efficiently identify problematic bank statements for

your bank accounts and track if there is any missing statement page, any difference between the bank statement balance and the G/L account balance, or any items that aren't posted.

## Prerequisites

The **Bank Statement Monitor** app is available for the **Cash Manager (SAP\_BR\_CASH\_MANAGER)**, **Cash Management Specialist (SAP\_BR\_CASH\_SPECIALIST)**, and **Accounts Receivable Accountant (SAP\_BR\_AR\_ACCOUNTANT)** roles. If you want to create your own role without using the above business role template predelivered by SAP, ensure that you maintain necessary authorizations for this role. For more information, see [How to Assign the Authorizations](#).

Before you use this app, make sure you have made the relevant settings for the bank accounts you want to monitor in the following three apps:

- [Manage Bank Accounts](#)

To use this app, you must have the same minimum authorizations as the **Cash Manager (SAP\_BR\_CASH\_MANAGER)**.

On the **House Bank Account Connectivity** tab, ensure that at least one valid house bank account is defined.

On the **Bank Relationship** tab, maintain the following settings for end-of-day bank statements as needed:

Field	Explanation
<b>Processing Status</b>	This indicates whether the bank statement has been processed correctly.  If you want to monitor the <b>Processing Status</b> for the bank statements of a bank account, select the checkbox to activate this indicator.
<b>Difference Status</b>	This indicates whether there is a difference between the internal G/L account balance and the bank statement balance.  If you want to monitor the <b>Difference Status</b> for the bank statements of a bank account, select the checkbox to activate this indicator.
<b>Serial Number Status</b>	This indicates whether the sequence of the last two bank statements of the bank account is complete.  If you want to monitor the <b>Serial Number Status</b> for the bank statements of a bank account, select the checkbox to activate this indicator.
<b>Reconciliation Status</b>	This indicates whether there are open items in the internal bank account.  If you want to monitor the <b>Reconciliation Status</b> for the bank statements of a bank account, select the checkbox to activate this indicator.
<b>Interval and Interval Unit</b>	These determine the intervals in which the bank statements are to be expected for the corresponding bank account.  You can use the <b>Processing Status</b> indicator to check whether the statements have entered the bank statement monitor.  <b>Example</b> Bank accounts are usually created on a daily basis for bank accounts with daily postings. For this daily basis, enter 1 as the interval and choose <b>Calendar Days</b> as the interval unit.
<b>Factory Calendar ID</b>	A factory calendar distinguishes between working days and non-working days.  You can specify a calendar so that the bank statement monitor ignores the import status of end-of-day bank statements on non-working days.

Field	Explanation
Difference Amount	This specifies a tolerance amount for the difference status.

- [Define Bank Account Settings - Bank Statements](#)

To use this app, you must have the same minimum authorizations as the **Cash Manager (SAP\_BR\_CASH\_MANAGER)**.

On the **Account Settings** tab, define the **Posting Category**. For more information, see [Settings for Bank Statements](#).

- [Schedule Jobs for Bank Statement Monitor](#)

Schedule jobs using the provided template. Based on the job parameters you specify, the system calculates the results for specific bank accounts in the background. Because of this, when you open the bank statement monitor, you'll be able to display the monitoring results for your bank accounts in a more efficient manner.

To access this job scheduling app, you must have the same minimum authorizations as the **Accounts Receivable Accountant (SAP\_BR\_AR\_ACCOUNTANT)** business role template. You must be assigned the **SAP\_FIN\_BC\_BA\_BSM\_JOB\_PC** business catalog, which is predelivered with this role template.

## Key Features

Depending on your authorizations, you can perform the following tasks:

- Display a list of bank accounts that have been selected for monitoring based on the filter criteria
- View different statuses of end-of-day bank statements

Based on the bank account settings, the statuses to be monitored for different bank accounts might differ.

### i Note

If a status indicator is not activated for a bank account, the value for this status is **Not Activated**.

If a bank account has the posting category **No Posting Processing**, it means that the bank statements of this account are not relevant for posting, and the system does not further process these statements after importing them. In this case, the value for the two posting-related statuses (**Difference Status** and **Reconciliation Status**) is **Not Applicable**.

For more information, see [How Statuses Are Determined](#).

- Switch between the single-day view and 14-day view
  - **End of Day - Single Day:** In this tab, you see all four status indicators for the bank accounts that have been selected for monitoring. To check more status details, you can choose the arrow icon at the end of each row to navigate to the object page.
  - **End of Day - Last 14 Days:** In this tab, you get an overview of a certain status for end-of-day bank statements over the last 14 days based on the specified criteria. For example, if **Processing Status** is selected from the drop-down list, the system will display the records for this status over the last 14 days starting from the selected key date.
- Refresh the monitoring results

When you go to the single-day tab, you see a **Refresh** button. You use this button to get the updated monitoring results for your bank accounts based on the specified parameters. Each time a refresh is completed, you receive a notification message via the bell icon (□).

- Navigate to related apps

You can navigate to related apps, such as **Manage Bank Statements** and **Reprocess Bank Statement Items**, to further check the details of a bank statement or perform follow-up actions.

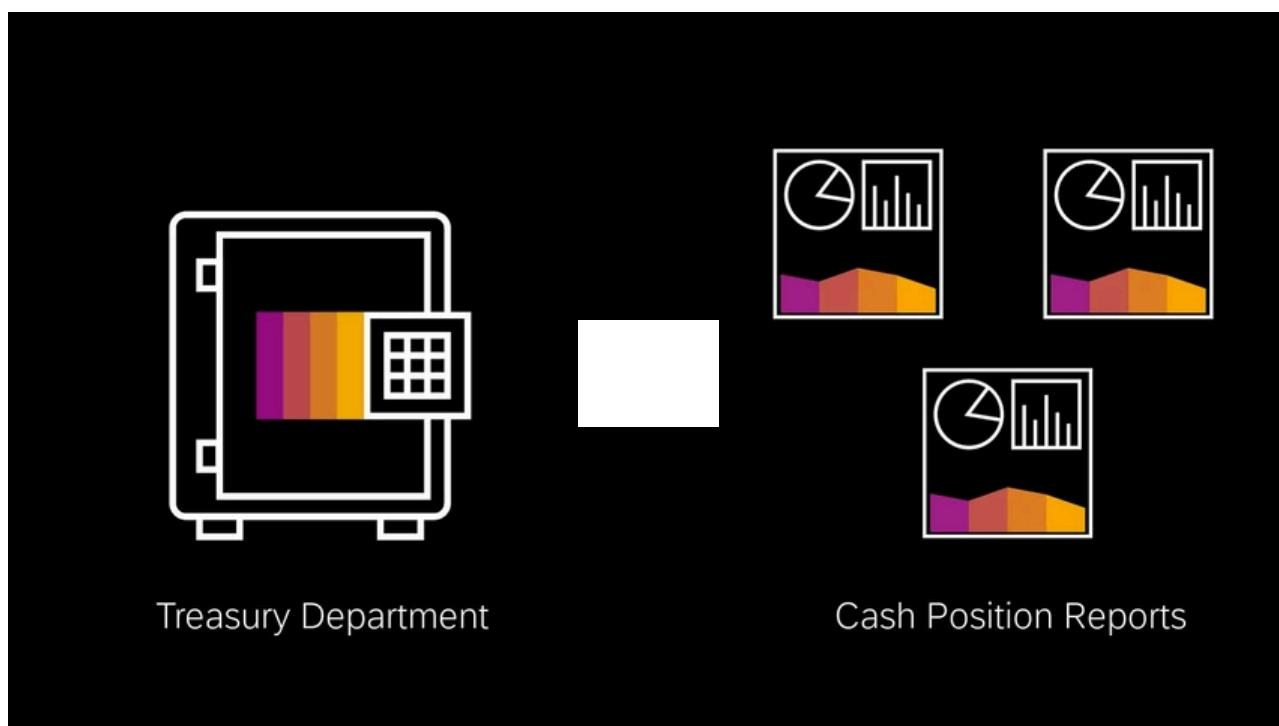
### i Note

These linked apps must already be available in your system landscape. Alternatively, you have to implement them along with this app.

## How to Use Bank Statement Monitor (English Only)

### i Note

The following multimedia content displays screens and interfaces in English only.



[Open this video in a new window](#)

### i Note

Captions are available for **multiple languages**. Use the **CC** (Closed Captions) button in the video player to see which languages are supported.

You can also use the **Search within video** field to search for specific text in the English or German captions.

### i Note

This app contains in-app help for key fields and concepts. To display the help while working in the app, press F1 or click the question mark displayed in the app header.

## Supported Device Types

Desktop

## Information for Key Users

The SAP Fiori apps reference library has details about the content necessary for giving users access to an app on the [SAP Fiori launchpad](#). To see this app's Fiori content, go to the [SAP Fiori apps reference library](#) and search for the app. Then select the product. On the **Implementation Information** tab, select the correct release. The details are in the **Configuration** section.

# How to Assign the Authorizations

Learn about how to assign the authorizations to access the **Bank Statement Monitor** and **Schedule Jobs for Bank Statement Monitor** apps.

## Context

The **Bank Statement Monitor** app is available for the **Cash Manager** (SAP\_BR\_CASH\_MANAGER), **Cash Management Specialist** (SAP\_BR\_CASH\_SPECIALIST), and **Accounts Receivable Accountant** (SAP\_BR\_AR\_ACCOUNTANT) roles. The **Schedule Jobs for Bank Statement Monitor** app is available for the **Accounts Receivable Accountant** (SAP\_BR\_AR\_ACCOUNTANT) role. If you want to create your own role without using the above business role template predelivered by SAP, ensure that you assign necessary authorizations described in the steps below.

## Procedure

1. Open transaction **Role Maintenance** (PFCG) and create a new single role.
2. Choose **Menu > SAP Fiori Launchpad > Launchpad Catalog**.

To enable access to the **Bank Statement Monitor** app, assign one of the three launchpad catalogs to this role:

- SAP\_SFIN\_BC\_BA\_BANKSTAT
- SAP\_SFIN\_BC\_BA\_BANKSTRP
- SAP\_SFIN\_BC\_CM\_CASH\_0PS

To enable access to the **Schedule Jobs for Bank Statement Monitor** app, assign the launchpad catalog **SAP\_SFIN\_BC\_BA\_BSM\_JOB** to this role.

3. Choose **Change Authorization Data** on the **Authorizations** tab page.
4. In the **Define Organizational Levels** dialog box that pops up, maintain a value for the organizational level field **Company Code** (variable name: \$BUKRS) and save.

In this role if you want to give authorizations for only a set of company codes, you can fill in only those values in this field. But if you decide that this role should give access to all values then you can set the value as \*. The values you maintain in organizational level are then replicated and populated in all the related authorization fields for company code in the following screen.

5. In the following screen, expand the object class FSCM, search for the authorization object F\_CLM\_BAM, and maintain a value for the authorization field FCLM\_ACTY (**Bank Account Type ID**) manually. You can enter \* to give access to all bank account types in the system or enter specific account types as needed.

### i Note

Authorizations for bank account types cannot be defined via the organizational level field **Account Type**. Instead, you must maintain a value for **FCLM\_ACTY**.

6. Maintain other authorization fields as needed and save.
7. Assign users to this role on the **User** tab page and save your entries.

# How Statuses Are Determined

Based on your bank account settings, the system determines the following four statuses:

- [Processing Status](#)
- [Serial Number Status](#)
- [Difference Status](#)
- [Reconciliation Status](#)

## **i Note**

The **Key Date** field indicates the baseline date for status determination.

## Processing Status

This status shows whether the bank statement has been correctly processed.

The possible values of this status include the following:

- **Success:** There are two possibilities:
  - The bank statement has the posting category **No Posting Processing** and was processed correctly.
  - The bank statement has the posting category **Posting to Be Processed** and was posted correctly.
- **Warning:** The bank statement is available and has the posting category **Posting to Be Processed**. But, some of the items could not be posted.
- **Error:** Possible reasons include the following:
  - No bank statement exists for the bank account.
  - No bank statement was available within the expected date range.

## Serial Number Status

This status shows whether the sequence of the last two bank statements is complete.

The possible values of this status include the following:

- **Success:** The last two bank statements are displayed in a complete sequence.
- **Error:** Possible reasons include the following:
  - The sequence of the last two bank statements is not complete.
  - No bank statement exists for the bank account.
  - The last page of the bank statement is missing.
  - Some of the statement pages are missing.

## Difference Status

This status displays whether the account statement has the same balance as the corresponding internal bank account.

### i Note

This status indicator is applicable only when the bank statement has the posting category [Posting to Be Processed](#).

With the **Difference Amount** field in the bank account master data, you specify the difference amount permitted between the bank statement and the internal bank account. This means you can set various difference amounts ranging from no difference to greater difference amounts for each bank statement.

The possible values of this status include the following:

- **Success:** There are no differences in the amount. The balances are the same.
- **Warning:** The difference amount is within the tolerance range for this account.
- **Error:** Possible reasons include the following:
  - No bank statement exists for the bank account.
  - The difference amount exceeds the amount permitted.

In addition to the status and difference amount, the system also displays the opening and closing amount of the bank statement as well as the current balance of the corresponding G/L account.

## Reconciliation Status

This status displays whether there are open items in the internal bank account.

### i Note

This status indicator is applicable only when the bank statement has the posting category [Posting to Be Processed](#).

The possible values of this status include the following:

- **Success:** All the bank statement items have been posted.
- **Warning:** Not all items have been posted completely.
- **Error:** Possible reasons include the following:
  - No bank statement exists for the bank account.
  - Open items exist.

## Other Possible Status Values

Apart from **Success**, **Warning**, and **Error**, there are three other possible status values:

- **Not Applicable**

This means the bank account has the posting category [No Posting Processing](#), and the system does not further process the bank statements for this account after importing them.

In the **Define Bank Account Settings - Bank Statements** app, you can define the posting category for a bank account. To use this app, you must have the same minimum authorizations as the **Cash Manager (SAP\_BR\_CASH\_MANAGER)**.

- **Not Activated**

The status is not being monitored because you haven't activated the status indicator for this bank account in the account master data.

If you want to monitor this status for end-of-day bank statements, open the [Manage Bank Accounts](#) app, go to the [Bank Relationship](#) tab for this account, and activate this status. To use the [Manage Bank Accounts](#) app, you must have the same minimum authorizations as the **Cash Manager (SAP\_BR\_CASH\_MANAGER)**.

- **No Result**

In the [End of Day - Last 14 Days](#) tab, sometimes you might see that a certain status has the **No Result** value in one or multiple days among the 14 days.

Here are some possible reasons why no result has been generated:

- The scheduled job for status determination has failed or been canceled.

For failed or canceled jobs, you have the option to send an email to notify specific recipients in the [Schedule Jobs for Bank Statement Monitor](#) app. You can reschedule a job using the same criteria. If you are not the job owner who is responsible for scheduling jobs, you may contact the job owner to check more details.

- No job is running for the selection criteria.

In this case, you can modify the job settings in the [Schedule Jobs for Bank Statement Monitor](#) app. Or, you can contact the job owner.

- Other reasons.

For example, the account was not monitored.

### Example

You created a bank account on Sep. 5th, 2022 and only activated the processing status indicator. You select Sep. 15th, 2022 as the key date and choose [Go](#). You'll see that the processing status for Sep. 2nd - Sep. 5th is **No Result**.

## Related Information

[Schedule Jobs for Bank Statement Monitor](#)

## Schedule Jobs for Bank Statement Monitor

App ID: F6866

With this app, you can schedule jobs for the [Bank Statement Monitor](#) app using the template and scheduling options provided.

## Key Features

You can use this app to do the following:

- Create a single job for status determination or recurring jobs using the job template.
- Specify parameters for the job run.
- Check the job status and result.

## How to Create a Job

Proceed as follows:

1. Choose **Create** to open the job creation page.
2. In the **Template Selection** step, select the job template **Determine Status of End-of-Day Bank Statements**.
3. In the **Scheduling Options** step, choose one of the following options:
  - o Launch an immediate job by selecting **Start Immediately**.
  - o Schedule a future job by specifying the job start date and time in the **Start** and **Time Zone** fields.
  - o Schedule recurring jobs by choosing **Define Recurrence Pattern** and then specify a recurrence pattern.
4. In the **Parameters** step, specify the following parameters as needed:
  - o **General Parameters**
    - **Key Date (Job Start Date +/- X Days):** Use this field to specify the key date. The key date is the baseline date for determining a bank statement status and is calculated based on the job start date and the integer you enter in this field.

What You Can Enter	Result
A positive integer X	The key date is X days after the job start date.
0	The key date is the job start date.
A negative integer X	The key date is X days before the job start date.

#### i Note

Sometimes a bank statement or its pages might be missing, or they might have failed to be imported into the system. In this case, you may schedule a single job run for your bank accounts based on a past key date.

For example, in the **Scheduling Options** step, the date on which the job starts is Oct. 10, 2022, and the recurrence pattern is to repeat the job every day with no end date. You enter 2 in this field and schedule the job. As a result, the key date is Oct. 12, 2022. In the next run, the job starts on Oct. 11, 2022, and the key date is Oct. 13, 2022.

#### i Note

If you do not schedule the job yourself, there is a possibility that you and the person who helps schedule the job for you are located in different time zones. In this case, the person needs to enter an integer in this field to make sure that you can see the monitoring results for your time zone.

If the person is in a time zone that's several hours **ahead of yours**, they will need to enter a positive integer in this field to ensure that you can see the monitoring results for your time zone. As the maximum time zone difference is 26 hours, it's recommended for this person to enter a positive integer that's smaller than 2. For example, you want to see the monitoring results for the key date Oct. 10, 2022. But, if the person who helps schedule the job is located in a time zone that is 12 hours ahead of yours, then they should enter 1 in this field.

If the person is in a time zone that's several hours **later than yours**, they will need to enter a negative integer.

- **Company Code, House Bank, and House Bank Account:** Use the three fields to restrict the selection to bank statements. If you leave these fields empty, bank statements for all the companies and bank accounts in your system are included.

- **Other Parameters**

Here you can determine whether or not to send email notifications for failed or canceled jobs. If yes, select the checkbox and specify email recipients and email language. If you enter multiple emails, separate them by semicolons (:).

## 5. Choose **Schedule**.

The job is created. The system starts generating monitoring data based on the specified parameters.

### **i Note**

This app contains in-app help for key fields and concepts. To display the help while working in the app, press F1 or click the question mark displayed in the app header.

## Supported Device Types

Desktop

## Information for Key Users

The SAP Fiori apps reference library has details about the content necessary for giving users access to an app on the [SAP Fiori launchpad](#). To see this app's Fiori content, go to the [SAP Fiori apps reference library](#) and search for the app. Then select the product. On the **Implementation Information** tab, select the correct release. The details are in the **Configuration** section.

## Cash Flow Analyzer

With this app, you can view the aggregated amounts and line item details of cash position, medium-and-long term liquidity forecast, and actual cash flows. You can analyze cash flows over days, weeks, months, quarters, or years for all bank accounts and liquidity items. The data presented in the app can be used to give a high-level overview and detailed insight into the cash flow status to the management.

## Key Features

- Calculate the amount based on transaction currency, account currency, or local currency.

To define the **Derive Currency** setting, click on the  (User Actions Menu) icon and then choose the **User Settings** button.

- Select the default report between **Cash Position**, **Liquidity Forecast** and **Actual Cash Flows**, or create your own variant.
- Display a list of cash flows in the **View Settings** variant in the structure of **Currency => Company Code => Bank Account**, or create your own variant.
- Choose a calendar and shift the amounts in non-working days to the next or previous working days.
- Display an end-of-period report by calendar end, or by the interval end of the period.
- Switch between the balance view and the delta (net cash flows only) view.
- Select a **Display Hierarchy** to view the report. You can select from the following hierarchies:
  - **Bank Account Hierarchy**

It has the following types:

- Bank account group hierarchy: You define bank account group hierarchies in the [Manage Bank Account Hierarchies](#) app.

For more information, see [Manage Bank Account Hierarchies](#).

- Bank hierarchy: You define the bank hierarchy in the [Manage Bank Accounts - Bank Hierarchy View](#) app.

For more information, see [Editing the Bank Hierarchy](#).

- **Cash Pool**

You define a cash pool hierarchy by assigning a header account and subaccounts to the cash pool in the [Manage Bank Accounts](#) app.

For more information, see [Defining Cash Pool Hierarchies](#).

In the above hierarchy views, you can see the liquidity item hierarchy icon in each row. By choosing this icon, you can view cash flows structured by the specified liquidity item hierarchy for the selected node. The opening balances and closing balances for the selected node are also displayed.

- **Liquidity Item Hierarchy**

To use the liquidity item hierarchy, you need to define the hierarchy in the [Manage Liquidity Item Hierarchies](#) app.

- **Cash Concentration Simulation**

In this view, you can see the results of cash concentration by cash pool.

For more information, see [Manage Cash Concentration](#).

- Take a snapshot to analyze the cash flows on the [Snapshot Date](#).

### i Note

By default, the snapshot functionality is not enabled. You need to manually enable it in the Customizing activity [Define Basic Settings](#) under [Financial Supply Chain Management](#) [Cash and Liquidity Management](#) [General Settings](#) .

- Include the unreleased cash flows that are transferred from either a different origin system, or the same system, with specific company code and planning level assignments. For more information, see [Release Cash Flows](#).
- Navigate to the [Check Cash Flow Items](#) app to display the line item details for each cash flow.
- Navigate to the [Make Bank Transfers](#) app to make necessary transfers on your bank accounts.
- Integrate dynamic data sources from memo records, payment orders, payment requests and all the source applications that are stored in One Exposure from Operations.

## How to Use Cash Flow Analyzer (English Only)

## Using the Cash Flow Analyzer

### i Note

Captions are available for **multiple languages**. Use the **CC** (Closed Captions) button in the video player to see which languages are supported.

You can also use the **Search within video** field to search for specific text in the English or German captions.

## Supported Device Types

Desktop

## More Information

- The SAP Fiori apps reference library has details about the content necessary for giving users access to an app on the **SAP Fiori launchpad**. The SAP Fiori apps reference library is available here: <https://fioriappslibrary.hana.ondemand.com>

To see this app's Fiori content, search for the app. Then select SAP S/4HANA as the product. On the **Implementation Information** tab, select the correct release. The details are in the **Configuration** section.

## Cash Flow Analyzer (Basic Cash Management)

With this app, you can view the aggregated amounts and line item details of cash position, medium-and-long term liquidity forecast, and actual cash flows. You can analyze cash flows over days. The data presented in the app can be used to give a high-level overview and detailed insight into the cash flow status to the management.

### i Note

This topic is only relevant to customers who are using the basic cash management capability.

## Key Features

- Calculate the amount based on transaction currency or account currency.

This is defined in the **Me Area**  under => **User Settings**.

- Select the default report between **Cash Position**, **Liquidity Forecast** and **Actual Cash Flows**, or create your own variant.
- Display a list of cash flows in the **View Settings** variant in the structure of **Currency => Company Code => Bank Account**, or create your own variant.
- Choose a calendar and shift the amounts in non-working days to the next or previous working days.
- Switch between the balance view and the delta (net cash flows only) view.

- Integrate dynamic data sources from memo records, payment orders, payment requests and some of the source applications that are stored in One Exposure from Operations.
- Navigate to the cash flow item detail page to check the line item details of the original documents.

## Supported Device Types

Desktop

# Date Difference Warning for FI Flows

**Technical Name:** FIN\_FQM\_FIDATE\_DIFFERENCE

**Consuming App:** [Cash Flow Analyzer](#)

Template used for situation handling that informs specific users when the system detects an FI cash flow for which the difference between the posting date and the value date does not meet the defined condition.

For background information about the Situation Handling framework, see the Product Assistance for [Situation Handling](#).

## Business Value

As a configuration expert for business processes (SAP business role SAP\_BR\_BPC\_EXPERT), you can use this template for the following situation:

You want to alert specific users to suspicious value dates in FI documents by monitoring differences between the posting date and the value date of FI documents.

Cash flow analysis is based on the value dates of cash flows. Incorrect value dates of FI cash flows may cause the wrong perception and estimation of the cash and liquidity status of the company. To ensure the correctness of cash flow analysis, this situation template enables you to inform specific users about suspicious date differences for FI cash flows.

## Default Settings

The template comes with predefined settings. For the settings that aren't visible or self-explanatory, you can find information in the following sections. For generic information about how to configure situations based on this template, refer to the documentation of the [Manage Situation Types](#) app with which you can display and use the template.

For more information, see [Manage Situation Types](#).

### Situation Trigger Object and Anchor Object

These technical settings define for which object a situation is displayed (anchor object) and the object based on which a situation is triggered (trigger object):

- **Trigger Object:** I\_FINDATEDIFFERENCFORSLTN
- **Anchor Object:** I\_FINDATEDIFFERENCFORSLTN
- **Description:** The situation is triggered when the system detects an FI document for which the difference between the posting date and the value date does not meet the defined date difference condition. This event then triggers a notification to inform specific users about the relevant FI document.

## Conditions

In addition to the date difference condition, you can define other conditions, such as fiscal year, G/L account, company code, for triggering the situation.

## Situation Display

When situations occur, users are informed about them by various texts, such as in-app situation messages or notifications on SAP Fiori launchpad. In this section, you can see all preconfigured texts.

For more information, see [Situation Display](#).

### i Note

When you copy the template and adapt it to your needs, you can define the notification settings and change all text elements in this section. After making the changes in the original language, please remember to translate these changes into the other languages that you want to use. The template comes with translations that can be changed directly when you copy the template.

For more information, see [Translate Situation Types](#).

## Notification Recipients

In this section, you see the predefined settings for determining who is responsible for a situation instance. Based on these, you can define who receives a notification when a situation instance is triggered (if enabled) or who sees the instance in the [My Situations](#) app.

For situations based on this template, you can define a team for your notification recipients in the [Manage Teams and Responsibilities](#) app.

To do so, create a team with team type **Cash and Liquidity Management** (FCLM1) and assign function FCLM\_TD to team members.

For more information, see [Recipients](#).

## Situation Monitoring

**Monitor Instances:** Monitoring (the tracking of changes to situation instances) isn't enabled by default for situation templates. When you copy the template to create a situation type, you need to enable this option if you want to capture data for this situation type and enable the creation of [business situation events](#). You can view the data in the [Monitor Situations](#) app.

### i Note

Customers are responsible for the data, including the adherence to legal restrictions in their judicial area. Neither SAP nor its associated companies assume any responsibility for the adherence to authorizations or data protection rules for data captured and processed by its customers. This means that customers alone must ensure adherence to these rules and regulations.

## Related Information

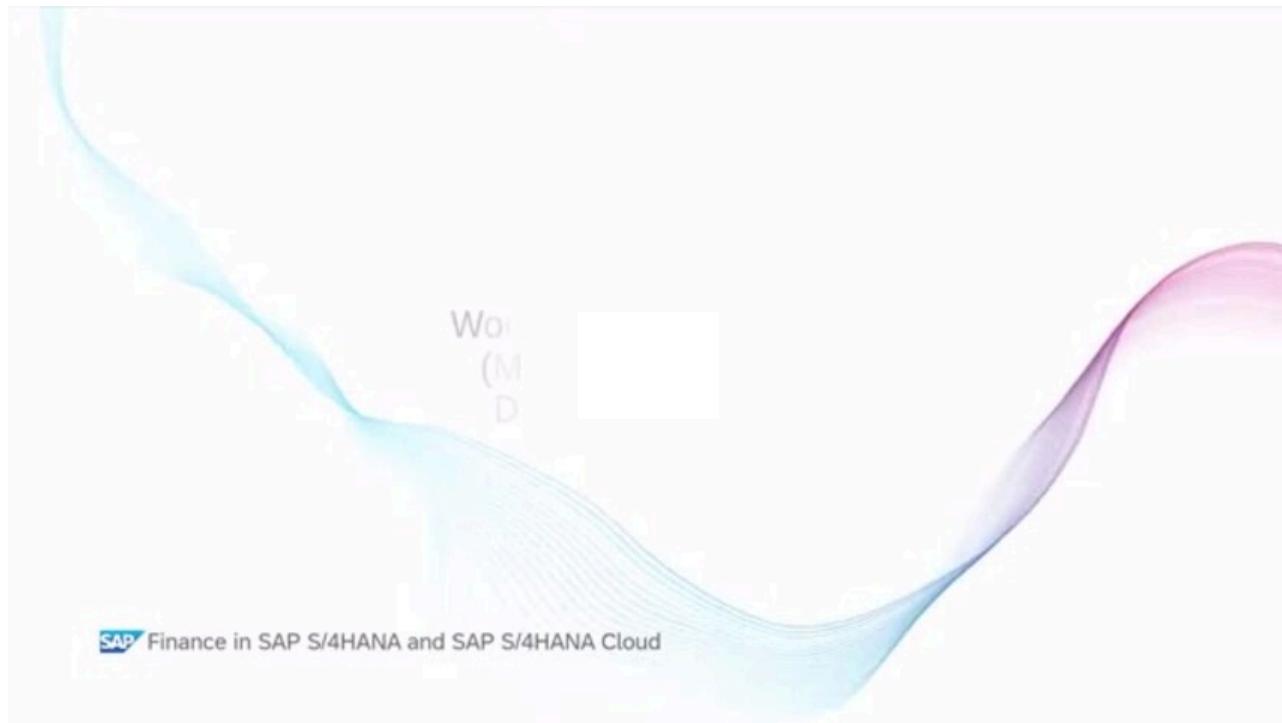
[Situation Handling](#)

[Key Concepts in Situation Handling](#)

## Cash Flow Comparison - By Date Range

With this app you can compare actual cash flows with your forecasts in the past as well as compare different forecast records that were made on different snapshot dates. It helps you understand the accuracy of your past forecast records and assists you in improving your cash flow forecasts continuously.

### How-to Video: Working with Web Dynpro Reports (English Only)



[Open this video in a new window](#)

#### i Note

Captions are available for **multiple languages**. Use the **CC** (Closed Captions) button in the video player to see which languages are supported.

You can also use the **Search within video** field to search for specific text in the English or German captions.

## Key Features

You can use this app to:

- Make actual-to-forecast comparison and forecast-to-forecast comparison for cash flows of the specified time range.

#### i Note

To be able to view the forecast values in the past, make sure that the snapshot function is enabled in the **Define Basic Settings** Customizing activity.

You can find this Customizing activity under **Financial Supply Chain Management** **Cash and Liquidity Management** **General Settings** .

- Use various dimensions and filters to personalize the report.

For example, you can display cash flow figures in date hierarchies such as Week/Day, Year/Month/Day, or Year/Quarter/Month/Day using the **Value Date (Hierarchy)** filter. This way, cash flow figures are aggregated according to the defined hierarchy. You can then choose to expand the hierarchy for details.

## Supported Device Types

- Desktop
- Tablet

## More Information

- The SAP Fiori apps reference library has details about the content necessary for giving users access to an app on the SAP Fiori launchpad. The SAP Fiori apps reference library is available here: <https://fioriappslibrary.hana.ondemand.com>

To see this app's Fiori content, search for the app. Then select SAP S/4HANA as the product. On the **Implementation Information** tab, select the correct release. The details are in the **Configuration** section.

## Cash Flow Comparison - By Timestamp

With this app, you can select any two snapshot timestamps in the past and compare the forecasted cash flows as well as compare the forecasted flows with the actual flows. It helps you understand the accuracy of your past forecast records and assists you in improving your cash flow forecasts continuously.

## Prerequisites

To be able to view the forecast values in the past, make sure that the snapshot function is enabled in the Customizing activity **Define Basic Settings** under **Financial Supply Chain Management** **Cash and Liquidity Management** **General Settings**.

**How-to Video: Working with Web Dynpro Reports (English Only)**



[Open this video in a new window](#)

## Key Features

You can use this app to select any two snapshot timestamps and then do the following:

- Compare forecast records that were made on different snapshot timestamps.
- Compare the forecast records with the actual cash flows.

## Supported Device Types

- Desktop
- Tablet

## Key User Information: Identity and Access Management (IAM)

- The SAP Fiori apps reference library has details about the content necessary for giving users access to an app on the SAP Fiori launchpad. The SAP Fiori apps reference library is available here: <https://fioriappslibrary.hana.ondemand.com>

To see this app's Fiori content, search for the app. Then select SAP S/4HANA as the product. On the **Implementation Information** tab, select the correct release. The details are in the **Configuration** section.

## Cash Flow - Detailed Analysis

### Use

With this app you can get an overview of the daily cash inflows and outflows, and analyze them for the last weeks or months for all subsidiaries and liquidity items. You can then identify the extraordinary and abnormal cash flows, ensure that they were accurate and compliant, and that they have taken the liquidity planning into account. The data presented in the app can be used to give an overview of the cash flow status to the management.

#### How-to Video: Working with Web Dynpro Reports (English Only)



[Open this video in a new window](#)

### i Note

Captions are available for **multiple languages**. Use the **CC** (Closed Captions) button in the video player to see which languages are supported.

You can also use the **Search within video** field to search for specific text in the English or German captions.

## Key Features

- View the cash inflow, outflow, and netflow that has been confirmed by banks, using the actual value date of the bank statements
- Perform multi-dimensional analysis by country, bank (account), company code, currency, business area, transaction date, and liquidity item hierarchy. The liquidity item is derived from invoice level to bank statement level by the Liquidity Planner in a batch job
- Report in a particular currency for a particular date that the user has specified
- Drill down by calendar day and all other reporting dimensions listed above

In addition, the app supports the following technical features and options:

## Supported Device Types

- Desktop

## Relevant Business Catalog

SAP\_SFIN\_BC\_CM\_LM

## More Information

- The SAP Fiori apps reference library has details about the content necessary for giving users access to an app on the **SAP Fiori launchpad**. The SAP Fiori apps reference library is available here: <https://fioriappslibrary.hana.ondemand.com>

To see this app's Fiori content, search for the app. Then select SAP S/4HANA as the product. On the **Implementation Information** tab, select the correct release. The details are in the **Configuration** section.

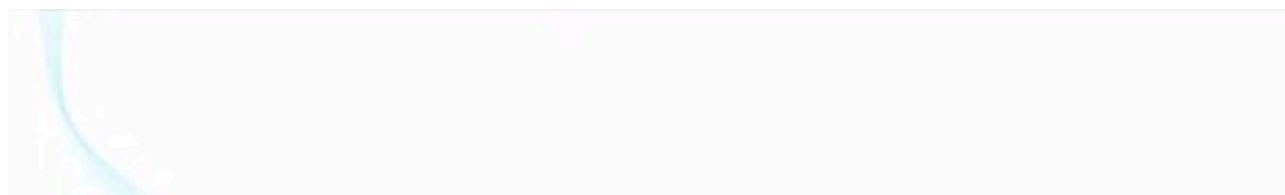
## Cash Pool Transfer Report

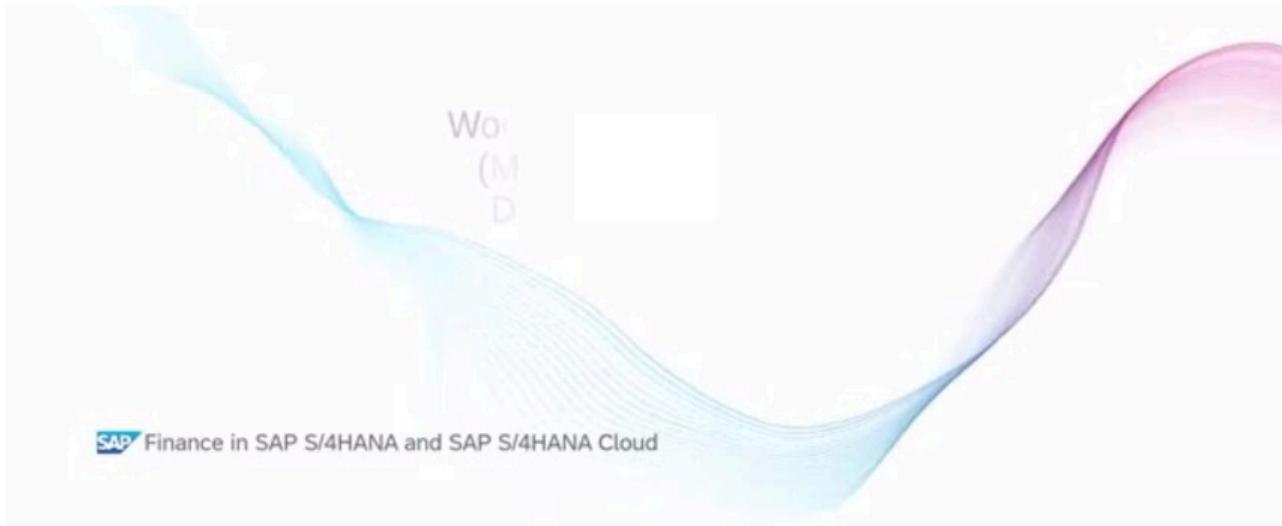
The report of daily concentration amounts in a cash pool.

## Use

With this app, you can get a daily report of concentration amounts in a cash pool. You can then track the funds transfer between header accounts and subaccounts in a specified period. Dynamic dimensions are available for you to make adjustments.

### How-to Video: Working with Web Dynpro Reports (English Only)





[Open this video in a new window](#)

### i Note

Captions are available for **multiple languages**. Use the **CC** (Closed Captions) button in the video player to see which languages are supported.

You can also use the **Search within video** field to search for specific text in the English or German captions.

## Prerequisites

You have performed cash concentration in the **Manage Cash Concentration** app. After the payments are made and confirmed by bank statement postings, you are able to see the cash pool transfers in this report.

## Key Features

- View the daily transfer amount by cash pools in a predefined dimension with currency, header account and subaccount.
- View bank transfers that have been confirmed by bank statements as well as bank transfers that have been made but not yet confirmed by banks (cash in transit).
- Filter, sort and drill down the data according to specific formats.
- Extend the dimension of rows and columns in the **Navigation Panel** area.
- Navigate to the other cash management apps in the **Jump to** area.

## Supported Device Types

- Desktop
- Tablet

## More Information

- [Manage Cash Pools](#)
- [Maintaining Cash Pool Information](#)
- [Manage Cash Concentration](#)

# Cash Position

## Purpose

You can use this app to check the forecasted cash positions for the current date by location, company, and currency. Cash position data is calculated based on memo records and various data sources from the One Exposure from Operations hub.

Depending on the role to which you're assigned, you can perform the following tasks:

- Display cash positions by the following analytical dimensions
  - Bank country/region (with display currency)
  - Bank (with display currency)
  - Bank group (with display currency)
  - Company (with display currency)
  - Bank and bank account currency
  - Bank account currency and country/region
  - Bank account currency
  - Bank account currency (in table view)
  - Bank group
- Switch the display mode between charts and tables
- Export your search results to a spreadsheet

### **i** Note

This app contains in-app help for key fields and concepts. To display the help while working in the app, press F1 or click the question mark displayed in the app header.

## More Information

- The SAP Fiori apps reference library has details about the content necessary for giving users access to an app on the [SAP Fiori launchpad](#). The SAP Fiori apps reference library is available here: <https://fioriappslibrary.hana.ondemand.com>

To see this app's Fiori content, search for the app. Then select SAP S/4HANA as the product. On the [Implementation Information](#) tab, select the correct release. The details are in the [Configuration](#) section.

## Configuration Settings: Cash Position

This document contains configuration information for this app.

## SAP Jam Integration

For information on how to configure SAP Jam, see <http://help.sap.com/sapjam>.

## Manage KPIs and Reports

To know more, see [Manage KPIs and Reports](#).

## Group: Cash Position

**Group ID:** .sfin.cashmgr.cashposition

### Group Description:

With Cash Position, you can check cash positions by location, company, and currency. This group allows you to filter and drill down by various dimensions.

### Goal Type: Maximizing

## KPI

The following KPI is assigned to this group:

- Today

## KPI

**KPI ID:** .sfin.cashmgr.cashpositionvar

**KPI Description:** With Cash Position, you can check cash positions by location, company, and currency. This group allows you to filter and drill down by various dimensions.

## Targets, Thresholds, and Trend

Parameter	Value	Example Value
Goal Type	Maximizing	
Value Type	Fixed Value	
Critical		10000
Warning		100000
Target		100000
Trend	(Not applicable)	

This table shows some example values.

## Input Parameters and Filters

Input Parameters

Input Parameter	Operator	Example Value	Explanation
P_DisplayCurrency	Equal to	EUR	<p>Choose a currency in which the currency amounts should be displayed. Ensure that exchange rates for this currency exist in your system.</p> <p>An entry in this field is required.</p>

Input Parameter	Operator	Example Value	Explanation
P_ExchangeRateType	Equal to	M	<p>Choose an exchange rate type that is used to convert the currency into the display currency.</p> <p>An entry in this field is required.</p> <p>You can view the available exchange rate types in customizing in the system under <a href="#">SAP NetWeaver &gt; SAP NetWeaver &gt; General Settings &gt; Currencies &gt; Check Exchange Rate Types</a>.</p>

The following tables show the input parameters, filters, and some preconfigured example values. Use your own values where required, according to the data in your backend system.

#### Drill-Down: By Bank Country

**View ID:** .sfin.cashmgr.cashposition.view1

**View Title:** By Bank Country

**Measure and Dimension:**

Parameter	Value
Dimension	Country/region
KPI Measure	Amount In Display Currency

**Visualization Type:**

- Bar
- Single Axis
- Absolute Values
- Default Colors

#### Drill-Down: By Bank

**View ID:** .sfin.cashmgr.cashposition.view2

**View Title:** By Bank

**Measure and Dimension:**

Parameter	Value
Dimension	Bank
KPI Measure	Amount in Display Currency

**Visualization Type:**

- Bar
- Single Axis
- Absolute Values
- Default Colors

**Drill-Down: By Company**

View ID: .sfin.cashmgr.cashposition.view3

View Title: By Company

**Measure and Dimension:**

Parameter	Value
Dimension	Company Code
KPI Measure	Amount in Display Currency

**Visualization Type:**

- Bar
- Single Axis
- Absolute Values
- Default Colors

**Drill-Down: By Bank and Currency**

View ID: .sfin.cashmgr.cashposition.view5

View Title: By Bank and Currency

**Measure and Dimension:**

Parameter	Value
Dimension	Bank
	Currency
KPI Measure	Amount in Display Currency

**Visualization Type:**

- Bar
- Single Axis
- Absolute Values

- Default Colors

**Drill-Down: By Currency and Country/region**

**View ID:** .sfin.cashmgr.cashposition.view6

**View Title:** By Bank and Currency

**Measure and Dimension:**

Parameter	Value
Dimension	Country/region Currency
KPI Measure	Amount in Display Currency

**Visualization Type:**

- Bar
- Single Axis
- Absolute Values
- Default Colors

**Drill-Down: By Currency**

**View ID:** .sfin.cashmgr.cashposition.view4

**View Title:** By Currency

**Measure and Dimension:**

Parameter	Value
Dimension	Currency
KPI Measure	Amount in Display Currency

**Visualization Type:**

- Bar
- Single Axis
- Absolute Values
- Default Colors

**Drill-Down: By Currency (Table View)**

**View ID:** .sfin.cashmgr.cashposition.view7

**View Title:** By Currency (Table View)

**Measure and Dimension:**

Parameter	Value
Dimension	Currency
KPI Measure	Amount in Display Currency
Measure	Amount in Balance Transaction Currency

**Visualization Type:**

- Table
- Default Colors

**Drill-Down: By Bank Group**

View ID: .sfin.cashmgr.cashposition.view2

View Title: By Bank

**Measure and Dimension:**

Parameter	Value
Dimension	Bank Group
KPI Measure	Amount in Display Currency

**Visualization Type:**

- Bar
- Single Axis
- Absolute Values
- Default Colors

## Check Cash Flow Items

### Use

You can use this app to analyze cash flow item details after you check the liquidity forecast and cash position reports. You can track and trace all the cash flow items from different source applications that are integrated with cash management. You can also see line item details of the original documents, such as journal entries, banks and account assignments. This allows you to gain a comprehensive overview of the cash flow and liquidity status in your company.

This app is available for the role Cash Manager and Cash Management Specialist.

### Key Features

#### Overview

- List the aggregated cash flows from source applications that are integrated from [One Exposure from Operations](#) and Memo Records
- Filter cash flow items by various dimensions, such as certainty level, summarization term, grouping and so on

### **i Note**

A particular grouping consists of planning levels, the G/L accounts, and planning groups that are displayed for the cash position and the liquidity forecast. And by summarization term, you can combine the two lines to filter the data.

- Monitor payment status in the list view for payment batches in Bank Communication Management (BCM).
- Navigate from cash position and liquidity forecast to check the line item details.

### Details

- Check the original document information from source applications.
- Navigate to the source applications, such as a bank statement.
- Manually adjust the account assignments, such as liquidity item, transaction amount, cost center, and so on.

To adjust cash flows, make sure the **Cash Flow View for Accounting** filter is set as **Liquidity Analysis**. The manual adjustment function works only for accounting cash flows (source application BSEGV) that have the following certainty levels:

- Accounts payable (PAY\_N)
- Accounts receivable (REC\_N)
- Self-initiated cash in transit (SI\_CIT)
- Actual cash flows (ACTUAL)

### **i Note**

You can adjust only actual cash flows that occur after the defined block date. The block date is defined in the [Set Block Date for Actual Cash Flows](#) app (transaction S\_ER9\_11002196).

To adjust an actual cash flow, its value date must be later than the defined transaction date and its posting date must be later than the defined posting date.

In addition, the app supports the following technical features and options:

- Export your search results to a spreadsheet.
- Send emails

You can send an email with a URL that enables the recipients to check the app with exactly the same selection criteria as you are currently using.

- Save as tile

You can create a tile that uses the current selection criteria as default settings.

## Component for Customer Incidents

FIN - FSCM - CLM - COP

## More Information

- The SAP Fiori apps reference library has details about the content necessary for giving users access to an app on the SAP Fiori launchpad. The SAP Fiori apps reference library is available here: <https://fioriappslibrary.hana.ondemand.com>

To see this app's Fiori content, search for the app. Then select SAP S/4HANA as the product. On the **Implementation Information** tab, select the correct release. The details are in the **Configuration** section.

## Check Liquidity Item on G/L Account

**App ID:** <F6459>

With this app, you can display default liquidity items on G/L accounts, which are set in the **Define Default Liquidity Items for G/L Accounts** app. The app lists the G/L accounts in the chart of account or company code. Cash relevant information to G/L accounts will be displayed based on your settings, for example, G/L account ID and name, G/L account type, account group, balance sheet account indicator, open item management indicator and so on.

### Key Features

You can use this app to do the following:

- Display the following cash relevant fields to G/L accounts based on **Company Code** besides the fetched default liquidity items.
  - G/L Account, G/L Account Name
  - G/L Account Type, Type Description
  - Account Group, Account Group Name
  - Chart of Accounts, Chart of Accounts Description
  - Balance Sheet Account
  - Open Item Management
  - Reconciliation ID
- In the detail page, the original entries covering the selected G/L accounts are fetched, which are maintained in the **Define Default Liquidity Items for G/L Accounts** app.

## Define Cash Position Profiles

You can use this app to define cash position profiles that will be used to calculate cash position data in the **Short-Term Cash Positioning** app.

### Key Features

A cash position profile can be defined by the following parameters:

- Description
- Hierarchy Source

Hierarchy Source defines the source of Hierarchy.

- Derived by Bank Account Master Data

In this way, the hierarchy is derived by the bank account master data dynamically. If you select this hierarchy source, you need to specify different hierarchy levels so that a hierarchy can be determined.

- Derived from Bank Account Hierarchy

In this way, the hierarchy is derived from the existing bank account hierarchy. The existing bank account hierarchy is defined in the Manage Bank Account Hierarchies app. If you select this hierarchy source, you need to specify a hierarchy ID.

- Derived from Cash Pool and Bank Account Master Data

Cash pooling is an essential liquidity management technique. It brings together a number of individual bank accounts to pool balances, and improves liquidity management. When you select Derived from Cash Pool and Bank Account Master Data, Hierarchy Level 1 is by default set to Company Code, and Hierarchy Level 2 is by default set to Bank Account Currency.

- Enable Root Node

- Hierarchy Level

Hierarchy Levels need to be specified when the Hierarchy Source of a cash position profile is Derived by Bank Account Master Data. The defined hierarchy levels will determine the dimension of the hierarchy.

- Company Code
- Bank Country/region
- Bank Currency
- Company Code Country/region
- Bank Risk Partner

- Hierarchy ID

- Balance Type

- Balance Category

- Opening Balance
- Closing Balance

- View Category

The view category determines the amount displayed in the Cash Position Overview page of the Short-Term Cash Positioning app. The possible values of this view category are listed as follows:

- Balance View

Either opening balance or closing balance will be displayed in the overview page.

- Delta View

Sum of delta flows will be displayed in the overview page.

- Increment

- Period Unit

A period can be classified by days, weeks, months, or years.

- Natural End, Show Overdue, Include Overdue

They can be True, False, or Unknown. Natural End indicates that the period will be displayed according to the natural calendar. It applies to the Period Unit Weeks, Months and Years. If Show Overdue is selected, the Overdue Amount will be displayed as an independent column in the Short Term Cash Position app. If Include Overdue is selected, the sum of the overdue amount will be included in the calculation of the first period closing balance when displaying cash position.

- Show Future
- Shift Option
  - Saturday/Sunday → Monday
  - Non-Working Day → Next Working Day
  - No Shift
- Factory Calendar ID
- Display Currency
- Exchange Rate Type
- Scaling Factor

When defining a cash position profile, you can define filters as per the following steps:

1. Create a filter by choosing the **New Entries** button, and save the change.
2. Select the new filter and choose the **Define Filter Conditions** button.
3. Enter the filter conditions and choose the **Execute** button to save the condition.

After a filter is created and its filter conditions are defined, the filter can be assigned to a cash position profile.

## Supported Device Types

- Desktop
- Tablet

## Information for Key Users

The SAP Fiori apps reference library has details about the content necessary for giving users access to an app on the [SAP Fiori launchpad](#). To see this app's Fiori content, go to the [SAP Fiori apps reference library](#) and search for the app. Then select the product. On the **Implementation Information** tab, select the correct release. The details are in the **Configuration** section.

## Related Information

[Short-Term Cash Positioning](#)

## Define Bank Transfer Templates

With this app, you can define templates for bank-to-bank transfers that are likely to occur in a recurring pattern. The templates help you save time and eliminate errors when creating frequent bank transfers.

## Key Features

You can use this app to do the following:

- Define, edit, or delete bank transfer templates

With the templates, you can then use the [Make Bank Transfers - Create with Templates](#) app to create multiple bank transfers in a batch, based on the templates.

- Search for existing bank transfer templates using filters or the fuzzy search

## Supported Device Types

- Desktop
- Tablet

## More Information

- The SAP Fiori apps reference library has details about the content necessary for giving users access to an app on the [SAP Fiori launchpad](#). The SAP Fiori apps reference library is available here: <https://fioriappslibrary.hana.ondemand.com>

To see this app's Fiori content, search for the app. Then select SAP S/4HANA as the product. On the [Implementation Information](#) tab, select the correct release. The details are in the [Configuration](#) section.

## Related Information

[Make Bank Transfers - Create with Templates](#)

## Deficit Cash Pool

### Use

With this app you can quickly identify cash pools with deficits and the total deficit amount in cash pools. This allows you to respond quickly to cash pool deficits and to allocate funds smartly among your cash pools.

### Prerequisites

You have defined and assigned bank account balance profiles to your cash pools:

- Define bank account balance profiles in the Customizing under [Financial Supply Chain Management](#) [Cash and Liquidity Management](#) [Cash Management](#) [Bank Account Balance Calculation](#) [Assign Planning Levels to Profiles](#) .
- Assign bank account balance profiles to cash pools in the [Manage Cash Pools](#) app.

## Calculation Logic

The calculation logic is simple. The number on the app tile is the same as that in the app header.

The cash pool balance is calculated based on the following certainty levels and the bank account balance profile assigned to the cash pool.

- ACTUAL (Actual Cash Flows)
- INTRAM (Intraday Memo Records)

## Key Features

- Display the deficit amounts by cash pool
- Display the deficit amounts by bank account
- Switch the display mode between charts and tables
- Export your search results to a spreadsheet

In addition, the app supports the following technical features and options:

- Send emails

You can send an email with a URL that enables the recipients to check the app with exactly the same selection criteria as you are currently using.

- Save as tile

You can create a tile that uses the current selection criteria as default settings.

Caching is enabled for this app for better performance. You can click the refresh icon on the app tile and in the bottom-left corner of the app to refresh the data immediately. The data is also updated automatically. The frequency is determined by the cache duration in the tile configuration. For more information, see *Caching* in [Creating Applications](#).

## Navigation Targets

The app enables users to access other apps directly (for example to display detailed information).

### **i Note**

These linked apps have to be already available in your system landscape or you have to implement them along with this app.

- [Manage Bank Accounts](#)

## Component for Customer Incidents

FIN-FSCM-CLM-COP

## More Information

- The SAP Fiori apps reference library has details about the content necessary for giving users access to an app on the [SAP Fiori launchpad](#). The SAP Fiori apps reference library is available here: <https://fioriappslibrary.hana.ondemand.com>

To see this app's Fiori content, search for the app. Then select SAP S/4HANA as the product. On the [Implementation Information](#) tab, select the correct release. The details are in the [Configuration](#) section.

[Configuration Settings: Deficit Cash Pool](#)

## Related Information

[Manage Cash Pools](#)

## Configuration Settings: Deficit Cash Pool

This document contains configuration information for this app.

## SAP Jam Integration

For information on how to configure SAP Jam, see <http://help.sap.com/sapjam>.

### Manage KPIs and Reports

To know more, see [Manage KPIs and Reports](#).

**Group:** Deficit Cash Pool

**Group ID:** .SFIN.CASHMGR.DEFICITCASHPOOL

**Group Description:** With this app, cash managers can check deficit cash pool of today.

**Goal Type:** Maximizing

**KPI**

**KPI ID:** .SFIN.CASHMGR.DEFICITCASHPOOLVAR

**KPI Description:** With this app, cash managers can check deficit cash pool of today. This group allows you to filter and drill down by various dimensions.

### Targets, Thresholds, and Trend

Parameter	Value	Example Value
Goal Type	Maximizing	
Value Type	Fixed Value	
Critical		-100000
Warning		-50000
Target		0
Trend	(Not applicable)	

This table shows some example values.

### Input Parameters and Filters

Input Parameters

Input Parameter	Operator	Example Value	Explanation
P_DisplayCurrency	Equal to	EUR	<p>Choose a currency in which the currency amounts should be displayed. Ensure that exchange rates for this currency exist in your system.</p> <p>An entry in this field is required.</p>

Input Parameter	Operator	Example Value	Explanation
P_ExchangeRateType	Equal to	M	<p>Choose an exchange rate type that is used to convert the currency into the display currency.</p> <p>An entry in this field is required.</p> <p>You can view the available exchange rate types in customizing in the system under <a href="#">SAP NetWeaver &gt; SAP NetWeaver &gt; General Settings &gt; Currencies &gt; Check Exchange Rate Types</a>.</p>

The following tables show the input parameters, filters, and some preconfigured example values. Use your own values where required, according to the data in your backend system.

#### Drill-Down: By Cash Pool

**View ID:** .SFIN.CASHMGR.DEFICITCASHPOOL.VIEW1

**View Title:** By Cash Pool

**Measure and Dimension:**

Parameter	Value
Dimension	Cash Pool ID
KPI Measure	Amount in Dspl Crcy

**Visualization Type:**

- Bar
- Single Axis
- Absolute Values
- Default Colors

#### Drill-Down: By Bank Account

**View ID:** .SFIN.CASHMGR.DEFICITCASHPOOL.VIEW2

**View Title:** By Bank Account

**Measure and Dimension:**

Parameter	Value
Dimension	Tech. ID
KPI Measure	Amount in Dspl Crcy

**Visualization Type:**

- Bar
- Single Axis
- Absolute Values
- Default Colors

## Define Bank Account Settings - Bank Statements

With this app, you define settings for integrating end-of-day electronic bank statements with cash management at bank-account level. You define how bank statement data is consumed by cash management, and whether posting is needed after bank statements are imported.

### Key Features

You can use this app to do the following:

- Retrieve default settings defined for company codes

By choosing the **Retrieve Default Settings** button, the system retrieves all bank accounts that belong to the company codes that have configuration defined in the Customizing activity **Define Settings for Bank Statements**. The configuration settings defined for company codes are also retrieved and stored with these bank accounts.

You can define the company code settings in the Customizing activity under **Financial Supply Chain Management** **Cash and Liquidity Management** **Bank Account Management** .

#### **i Note**

By default, the system uses the following logic for bank accounts when there are no relevant settings defined in this app nor in the Customizing activity **Define Settings for Bank Statements**:

- **Posting Category (End of Day): Posting to Be Processed**
- **Transfer Mode (End of Day): Bank Statement Items Only**
- **Posting Category (Intraday): No Posting Processing**
- **Bank Statement Forwarding: No Forwarding**
- **Enable Balance from Manual Entry: Disabled**
- **Enable Balance from Spreadsheet Import: Disabled**
- **Enable Balance from EPIC: Disabled**

#### **i Note**

This setting works only when you have activated Electronic Payment Integration (China).

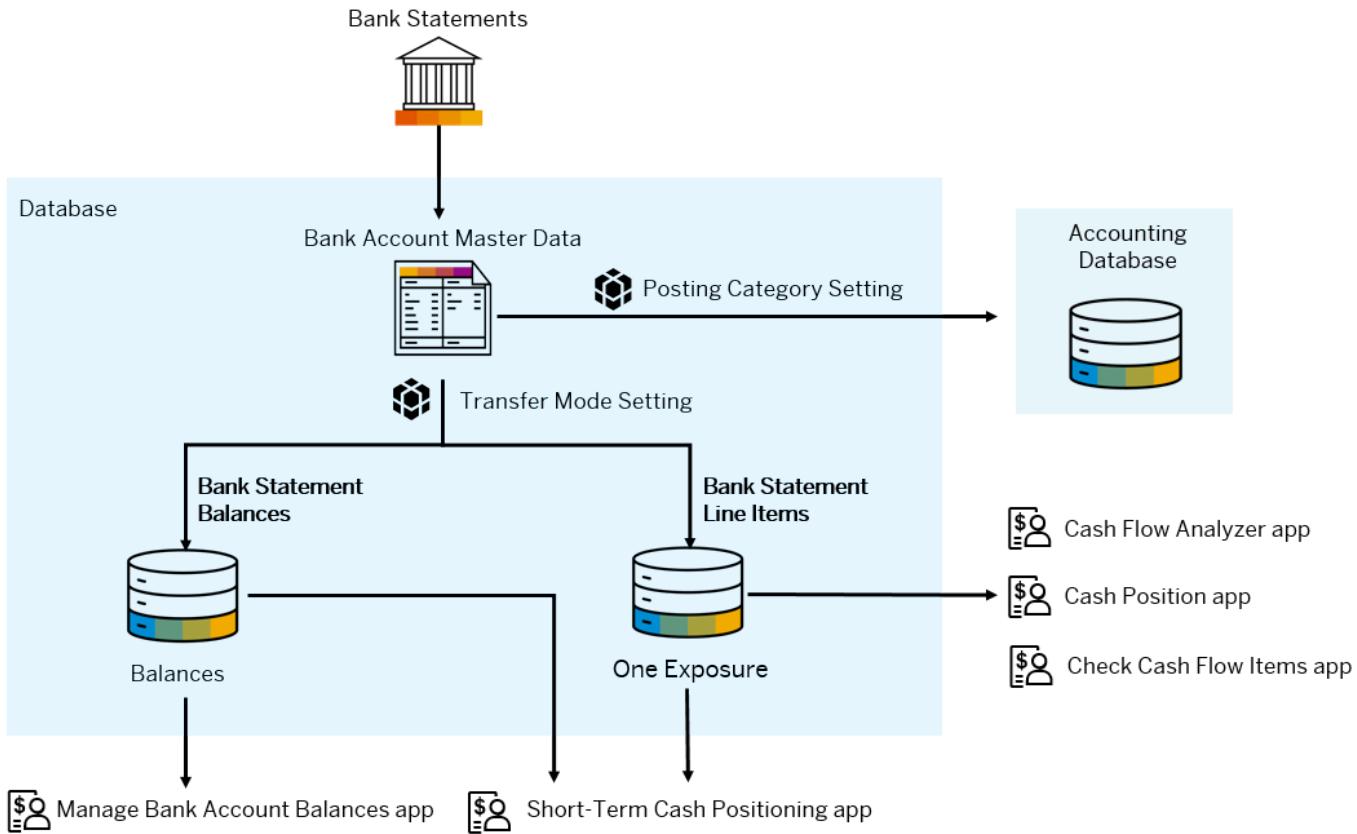
- Change settings for individual bank accounts

You can change the default settings for individual bank accounts as needed by choosing the **Enable Specific Settings** button.

The setting is time-dependent. You can define different settings for different validity periods.

# Bank Statement Data Processing in Cash Management

The following graphic explains how bank statement data can be integrated and processed in cash management.



## Settings for Bank Statements

With this app, you define the following settings:

- **Posting Category (End of Day)** and **Posting category (Intraday)**: Specify whether you need to post the bank statements after they are imported in your cash management system.

### i Note

For intraday bank statements, only camt .052 is supported.

- **Posting to Be Processed**: You select this option when you need to post bank statements after they are imported.
- **No Posting Processing**: You select this option when you want to block the posting of bank statements. For example, you can use this option for bank accounts managed in a remote system, as you only want to push bank statement information to cash management apps.

- Transfer mode: Define what type of data from the bank statements is transferred to cash management.

- **Balance Only**: Transfer only the bank account balances to cash management.

With this mode, you can use the **Manage Bank Account Balances** app to view balance updates.

- **Bank Statement Items Only**: Transfer only line items of bank statements to cash management.

With this mode, you can use the following apps:

- **Short-Term Cash Positioning**
- **Cash Position**

- [Cash Flow Analyzer](#)
- [Check Cash Flow Items](#)

The system transfers the line items to the above apps without balance information. To display bank account balances in the **Short-Term Cash Positioning** app, you can use the **Manage Bank Account Balances** app to import or enter bank account balances. For the **Cash Position** app and the **Cash Flow Analyzer** app, bank account balances are calculated based on actual and forecasted cash flows.

- **Balance and Bank Statement Items:** Transfer both the balances and line items from bank statements to cash management.

With this mode, you can use the following apps:

- **Short-Term Cash Positioning:** The app displays both the balances and the line items from imported bank statements.
- **Cash Position:** The app displays the line items from imported bank statements. The bank account balances are calculated based on actual and forecasted cash flows.
- **Cash Flow Analyzer:** The app displays the line items from imported bank statements. The bank account balances are calculated based on actual and forecasted cash flows.
- **Check Cash Flow Items:** The app displays the line items from imported bank statements.
- **Manage Bank Account Balances:** The app displays the bank account balances from imported bank statements.

- **No Update for Cash Management:** Import bank statements but without transferring the data to cash management.

With this mode, the system does not update bank statement data in cash management apps. Therefore, none of the following apps work with this mode:

- [Short-Term Cash Positioning](#)
- [Cash Position](#)
- [Cash Flow Analyzer](#)
- [Check Cash Flow Items](#)

- Balance update methods allowed for bank accounts: You set the following options to indicate whether the balance update method is allowed for the company code:

- **Enable Balance from Manual Entry:** Allows you to manually enter a balance for the bank account in the **Manage Bank Account Balances** app.
- **Enable Balance from Spreadsheet Import:** Allows you to import a spreadsheet to update the balance of the bank account in the **Manage Bank Account Balances** app.

- **Bank Statement Forwarding:** This setting defines whether imported bank statement files (including end-of-day bank statements and intraday bank statements) should be completely forwarded to subsequent systems.

You set the option to **Forwarding** if you want to import the received bank statements to a different system rather than the current system.

#### Example

A parent company handles the communication with the banks of its subsidiary companies. When the parent company receives a **camt . 053** bank statement file for a bank account of a subsidiary company, the statement file should be sent to the subsidiary system instead of being processed in the current system (central system of the parent company).

When the **Bank Statement Forwarding** option is set as **Forwarding**, the system detects the bank statements of subsidiary companies that should be forwarded.

For more information, see [Bank Statement File Forwarding](#).

## Supported Device Types

- Desktop
- Tablet

## More Information

- The SAP Fiori apps reference library has details about the content necessary for giving users access to an app on the **SAP Fiori launchpad**. The SAP Fiori apps reference library is available here: <https://fioriappslibrary.hana.ondemand.com>

To see this app's Fiori content, search for the app. Then select SAP S/4HANA as the product. On the **Implementation Information** tab, select the correct release. The details are in the **Configuration** section.

## Define Bank Account Settings - Instant Balances

**App ID:** F7805

With this app, you can define the instant balance settings for selected bank accounts to allow instant balance updates.

## Key Features

You can use this app to do the following:

- Switch instant balances on or off for selected bank accounts.

### i Note

Only selected member banks of SAP Multi-Bank Connectivity are supported.

- View the instant balance **Account Switch Status** for selected bank accounts.

The instant balance **Account Switch Status** has 3 possible statuses:

- On - Indicates that instant balances are switched on for the selected bank account and instant balances can be updated and monitored.
  - Off - Indicates that instant balances are switched off for the selected bank account and instant balances can't be updated and monitored.
  - On (Not Monitored) - Indicates that instant balances are switched on for the selected bank account but have not been enabled for the corresponding house bank. In which case, instant balances can't be updated and monitored.
- Navigate to the **Manage Banks – Cash Management** app to enable instant balances for the house bank.

## Prerequisites

To allow monitoring of instant balances:

- Set up the connection to SAP Multi-Bank Connectivity.

To do so, please contact the onboarding team for SAP Multi-Bank Connectivity. For more information, see [Onboarding Process](#).

- Enable instant balances for the house bank.

In the **Manage Banks - Cash Management** app, find the relevant house bank and enable instant balances for the house bank.

## How-To Video: Monitoring Instant Balances

### i Note

The following multimedia content displays screens and interfaces in English only.

[Open this video in a new window](#)

### i Note

Captions are available for **multiple languages**. Use the **CC** (Closed Captions) button in the video player to see which languages are supported.

You can also use the **Search within video** field to search for specific text in the English or German captions.

## Supported Device Types

- Desktop
- Tablet

## Information for Key Users

The SAP Fiori apps reference library has details about the content necessary for giving users access to an app on the SAP Fiori launchpad. To see this app's Fiori content, go to the [SAP Fiori apps reference library](#) and search for the app. Then select the product. On the Implementation Information tab, select the correct release. The details are in the Configuration section.

## Related Information

[Monitor Instant Balances](#)

[Manage Banks - Cash Management](#)

# Define Monitoring Rules - Intraday Statements

With this app, you can define rules for monitoring the import of intraday bank statements. You can then assign the rules to banks and bank accounts as criteria that the system uses to decide whether the import status is OK for the respective bank accounts.

## Key Features

You can use this app to do the following:

- Manage rules for monitoring the import of intraday bank statements
- Define rules using either of the following patterns:

### i Note

Before you define a rule, check the time zone of the bank or bank account that you plan to assign this rule to. Make sure you set the right time zone for the rule in this app. Otherwise, the system may fail to make a right judgement whether intraday bank statements are imported in time due to incorrect time zone settings.

- Rules with a frequency

For example, if the intraday bank statements are sent every hour, you can choose the [Generate Rule with Frequency](#) button to create a rule with an import frequency of 60 minutes.

- Rules for arbitrary time slots

For example, if the intraday bank statements are sent twice a day, one in the morning and one in the afternoon, you can then choose the [Create New Rule](#) button to create a rule with two time slots that correspond to the times when the intraday bank statements are expected.

## Supported Device Types

- Desktop
- Tablet

## More Information

- The SAP Fiori apps reference library has details about the content necessary for giving users access to an app on the [SAP Fiori launchpad](#). The SAP Fiori apps reference library is available here: <https://fioriappslibrary.hana.ondemand.com>

To see this app's Fiori content, search for the app. Then select SAP S/4HANA as the product. On the [Implementation Information](#) tab, select the correct release. The details are in the [Configuration](#) section.

## Related Information

[Bank Statement Monitor - Intraday](#)

# Develop Liquidity Plans

## Use

With this app, cash managers can regularly trigger the start of a new cycle for a rolling liquidity plan. Cash management specialists then enter and submit liquidity plans in the relevant planning period for approval by cash managers. The precise estimates of future cash inflows and outflows allow cash managers to ensure that payment obligations are met and give them the data they need to make investment or funding plans. Rolling process management makes tracing and tracking much easier, enabling continuous improvements. This app is available for the roles of Cash Manager and Cash Management Specialist.

## Key Features

- Start a new planning cycle for a rolling liquidity plan. Cash management specialists are reminded by E-mail notifications to enter liquidity plans.
- Enter liquidity plans in planning currencies based on the reference data of last year actual, previous cycle planned, and liquidity forecast data.
- Submit liquidity plans for approval by cash managers. Cash managers are noticed by E-mails that plans are ready to be reviewed.
- Approve or reject liquidity plans submitted by cash management specialists.
- Display liquidity plans by planning currency or by aggregation currency.
- Display the exchange rate and aggregation details in planning currency.
- Compare the submitted liquidity plans with last year actual data, previous cycle planned data, and liquidity forecast data.

## Component for Customer Incidents

FIN-FSCM-CLM-LM

## More Information

- The SAP Fiori apps reference library has details about the content necessary for giving users access to an app on the [SAP Fiori launchpad](#). The SAP Fiori apps reference library is available here: <https://fioriappslibrary.hana.ondemand.com>

To see this app's Fiori content, search for the app. Then select SAP S/4HANA as the product. On the [Implementation Information](#) tab, select the correct release. The details are in the [Configuration](#) section.

# Display Bank Account Logs

App ID: F6777

With this app, you can view application logs for bank account management apps. This app offers a clearly structured overview when you need to check whether any errors occurred.

## Key Features

You can use this app to do the following:

- View application log details for the following apps:

## Bank Account Management Logs

App	Category	Subcategory
Migrate Bank Control Keys	BAM_MIGRATE	CONTROL_KEY
Adapt Inactive Bank Accounts – Origination Process	BAM_MIGRATE	MASTER_DATA
Manage Bank Accounts (Importing and exporting bank accounts)	BAM_UPLOAD	
Import Bank Service Billing Files	FCLM_BAM	IMPORT_BANK_FEE
Maintain Payment Approval - For Multiple Bank Accounts	FCLM_BAM	MASS_CHG_SIG
Manage Powers of Attorney for Banking Transactions	FCLM_BAM	UPDATE_POA

- Filter the logs by severity, category, and subcategory
- Search for message texts

## Supported Device Types

- Desktop
- Tablet

## Display Cash Pool Hierarchies

With this app, you can view the cash pool hierarchies defined for cash pools with the service provider [Bank - Time Dependent](#).

## Prerequisites

Before you use this app, define cash pools with account assignments in the [Manage Cash Pools \(Version 2\)](#) app. For each cash pool, assign one header account and one or more subaccounts. The cash pool hierarchies displayed in this app are derived from the account assignments made in the [Manage Cash Pools \(Version 2\)](#) app.

## Key Features

You can use this app to do the following:

- View cash pool hierarchies for a certain date
- Check cash pool details by navigating to the [Manage Cash Pools \(Version 2\)](#) app
- Export cash pool hierarchies to a spreadsheet

## Supported Device Types

- Desktop

## Related Information

[Manage Cash Pools \(Version 2\)](#)

# Display Cash Management Logs

Display application logs of One Exposure from Operations

## Use

The application log is a tool that collects messages, exceptions, and errors. This information is organized and displayed in a log.

When you update information from source applications into One Exposure, the One Exposure from Operations application log collects errors that occurred during these updates. System administrators can review and evaluate these application logs by source application for a specific time period. After error resolution, the business users reload data into the One Exposure from Operations hub.

However, if the application log shows an error message, you need to contact the system administrator to correct the root cause and then trigger the update of One Exposure again.

For example, you have created a sales order, and no update of One Exposure happened due to an inconsistency in the business partner. The application log shows a corresponding error message. You need to contact the system administrator to check the inconsistency.

## Feature

The transaction allows you to display all errors that occurred during a One Exposure from Operations update for different source applications during a specific period.

You can obtain the following information:

- Basic header information (log type, created by/on, and so on.)
- Message long text
- Detail information
- Technical information

# Foreign Bank Account Report

## Use

With this app you can identify foreign bank accounts that your company owns and employees who have the powers of attorney over these accounts. You can use the information to file reports, if required in your country/region, for example the Report of Foreign Bank and Financial Accounts (FBAR) required for United States persons. You can also use the information for analytical purposes.

## Prerequisite

To display employees who have the powers of attorney over the foreign bank accounts in this report, you need to create powers of attorney in the [Manage Powers of Attorney for Banking Transactions](#) app, in which you assign the relevant employees as authorized representatives.

## Key Features

- Check foreign bank accounts for one or more company codes
- Display the maximum account value for each foreign bank account in the specified time range
- Apply the minimum aggregate value condition to each selected company code so as to calculate whether foreign bank accounts in a certain company code need to be reported
- Check employees who have the powers of attorney over the foreign bank accounts
- Export foreign bank accounts that match your search into a spreadsheet

In addition, the app supports the following technical features and options:

- SAP Jam integration

If your company uses SAP Jam, you can share information with a certain group of people in SAP Jam and receive feedback from them.

- Send emails

You can send an email with a URL that enables the recipients to check the app with exactly the same selection criteria as you are currently using.

- Save as tile

You can create a tile that uses the current selection criteria as default settings.

## Supported Device Types

- Desktop
- Tablet

## More Information

- The SAP Fiori apps reference library has details about the content necessary for giving users access to an app on the [SAP Fiori launchpad](#). The SAP Fiori apps reference library is available here: <https://fioriappslibrary.hana.ondemand.com>

To see this app's Fiori content, search for the app. Then select SAP S/4HANA as the product. On the [Implementation Information](#) tab, select the correct release. The details are in the [Configuration](#) section.

## Related Information

[Manage Powers of Attorney for Banking Transactions](#)

## App Extensibility: Foreign Bank Account Report (Key User)

As a key user, you can extend the [Foreign Bank Account Report](#) app according to your business needs.

## Custom Logic

With the [Custom Logic](#) app, you can create and maintain implementations of custom logic that can be used to enhance applications and change application behavior. You can implement custom logic for the following business add-ins (BAdls):

BAdl Description	Business Context	Business Use
<a href="#">Custom Fields in Foreign Bank Account Report</a>	<a href="#">Foreign Bank Account Report</a>	You use this BAdl to add custom fields to the <a href="#">Foreign Bank Account Report</a> app by changing the label of predefined custom fields and setting them as visible.
<a href="#">Custom Field Population in Foreign Bank Account Report</a>	<a href="#">Foreign Bank Account Report</a>	You use this BAdl to define the logic for how you want the custom fields be filled with values.

For more information, see:

- [Custom Logic](#)
- For more information about the individual BAdls, check the BAdl-specific documentation:  [Custom Logic](#)  <your implementation>  [BAdl Documentation](#)  [View BAdl Documentation](#) 

## Related Information

[Extensibility](#)

# House Bank

## Purpose

You can use this app for the following purposes:

- To display an overview of the house bank data, such as:
  - House bank description
  - House bank country/region
  - House bank city
  - Key facts relevant in the business context. Key facts are important data prominently displayed in the app. This app shows the following key facts:
    - Company code
    - Bank key
    - Bank number
- As a starting point to navigate to additional information relevant in your business context, such as information about related business partners, related master data, or related documents.
- To navigate to apps with additional functions, such as editing or analyzing related business data.

## More Information

- The SAP Fiori apps reference library has details about the content necessary for giving users access to an app on the SAP **Fiori launchpad**. The SAP Fiori apps reference library is available here: <https://fioriappslibrary.hana.ondemand.com>

To see this app's Fiori content, search for the app. Then select SAP S/4HANA as the product. On the **Implementation Information** tab, select the correct release. The details are in the **Configuration** section.

- [Searching for a House Bank](#)

## Searching for a House Bank

This document shows you how to search for house banks.

### Use

To find a specific house bank, you can search for various attributes using the search field. Before you enter any attributes in the search field, you should select the category **House Banks**.

You can, for example, enter a bank country/region to display all house banks belonging to this country/region. To narrow down your search results, you can also combine several attributes, such as a company code and a bank key. The search takes into account the following business data:

- Company Code
- Country/Region
- Bank Country/Region
- Bank Key
- Bank Name

A list of results is displayed. For the first result, the display area includes the header, the summary, and details. For all other results, you only see a header and a summary. To display the details of another search result, expand the display area.

To further limit your search results to the ones that are relevant to you, you can apply one or more filters, for example a specific status. You can also sort the search results according to your needs.

### More Information

For general information about how to search for an object page, see [Search](#).

## House Bank Account

### Purpose

You can use this app for the following purposes:

- To display an overview of the house bank account data, such as:
  - House bank account description
  - House bank account ID

- Key facts relevant in the business context. Key facts are important data prominently displayed in the app. This app shows the following key facts:

- Bank account number
- IBAN

- As a starting point to navigate to additional information relevant in your business context, such as information about related business partners, related master data, or related documents.
- To navigate to apps with additional functions, such as editing or analyzing related business data.

## More Information

- The SAP Fiori apps reference library has details about the content necessary for giving users access to an app on the **SAP Fiori launchpad**. The SAP Fiori apps reference library is available here: <https://fioriappslibrary.hana.ondemand.com>

To see this app's Fiori content, search for the app. Then select SAP S/4HANA as the product. On the **Implementation Information** tab, select the correct release. The details are in the **Configuration** section.

- [Searching for a House Bank Account](#)

# Searching for a House Bank Account

This document shows you how to search for house bank accounts.

## Use

To find a specific house bank account, you can search for various attributes using the search field. Before you enter any attributes in the search field, you should select the category **House Bank Accounts**.

You can, for example, enter a company code to display all house bank accounts belonging to this company code. To narrow down your search results, you can also combine several attributes, such as a company code and an account ID. The search takes into account the following business data:

- Company Code
- House Bank
- Chart of Accounts
- Account ID
- Bank Account

A list of results is displayed. For the first result, the display area includes the header, the summary, and details. For all other results, you only see a header and a summary. To display the details of another search result, expand the display area.

To further limit your search results to the ones that are relevant to you, you can apply one or more filters, for example a specific status. You can also sort the search results according to your needs.

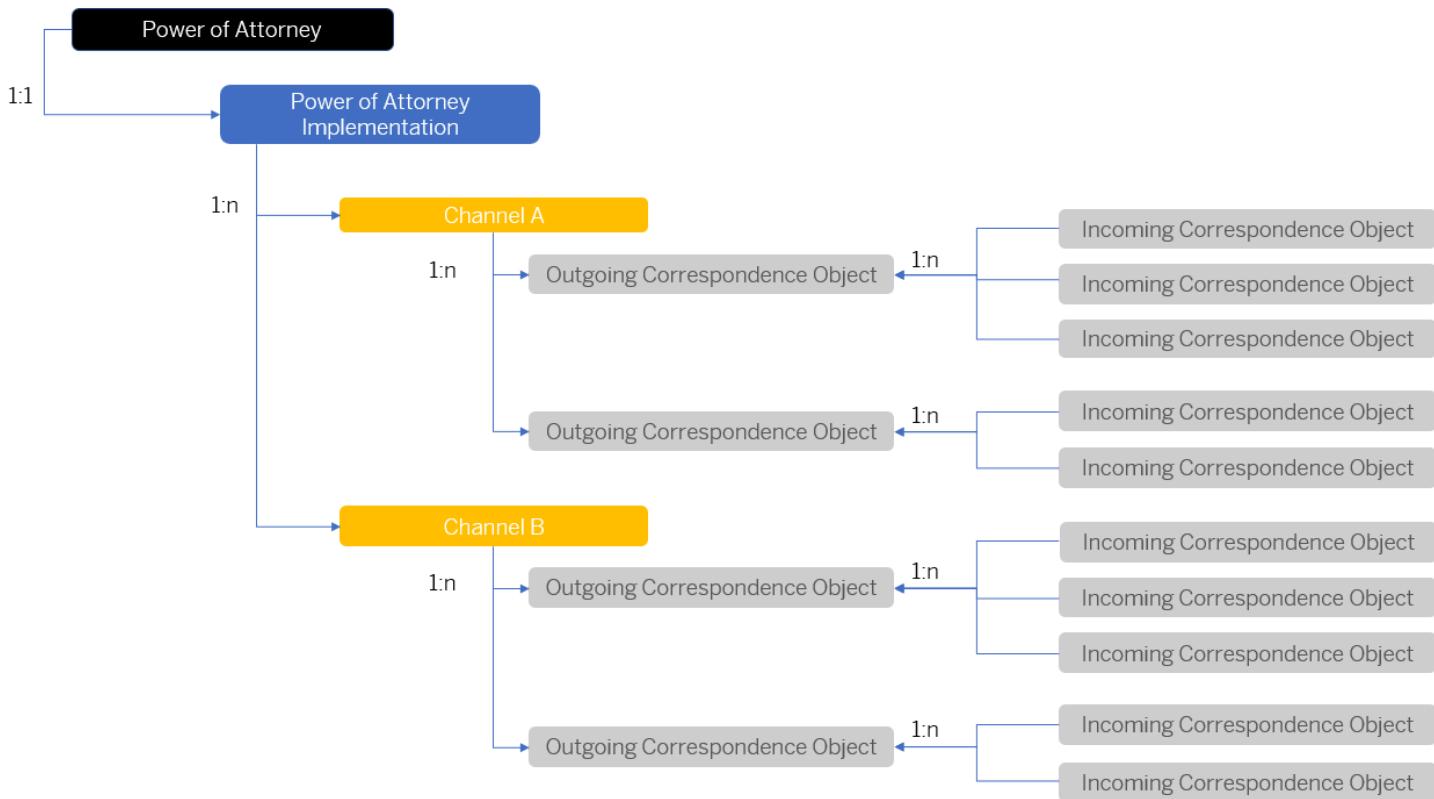
## More Information

For general information about how to search for an object page, see [Search](#).

# Implement Powers of Attorney for Banking Transactions

App ID: F6374

With this app, you can monitor the implementation process of powers of attorney for the different channels. To do this, you create exactly one implementation for a power of attorney for banking transactions. Within the implementation, you assign the channels for which you want to implement the powers of attorney. For each channel, you create correspondence objects representing the correspondence that you have sent to or received from your banks.



## Key Features

Create and process the implementation of a power of attorney for all channels.

- [Creating an Implementation for a Power of Attorney for Banking Transactions](#)
- Creating correspondence objects

For each channel assigned to the implementation, you can create correspondence objects representing the outgoing correspondence you sent to your banks or the incoming confirmations from your banks.

- You create an outgoing correspondence object for each correspondence you sent to your bank to inform the bank about the authorizations you have granted to the authorized representative for this channel.

### [Creating an Outgoing Correspondence Object](#)

- When you receive a confirmation for an outgoing correspondence from your bank, you create an incoming correspondence object for the corresponding outgoing correspondence object. For more information, see also [Creating an Incoming Correspondence Object](#).
- [Changing the Status of an Outgoing Correspondence Object Manually](#)

- Delete a power of attorney implementation

You can delete an implementation, if you haven't assigned a channel to the implementation. You can only remove a channel from the implementation if no correspondence object exists for the channel.

- Revoke a power of attorney implementation
  - You can only revoke an implementation that either has the status **Active** or **Power of Attorney Revoked**.
  - You can only revoke an implementation if all outgoing correspondence objects of all channels are either in status **Obsolete** or **Replaced** or if it is a revocation correspondence object, it must have the status **Confirmed**.
  - If you revoked a power of attorney implementation by accident, you can now withdraw the revocation of a power of attorney implementation if the assigned power of attorney has status **Active** and is valid until a date in the future and if none of the original powers of attorney of the correspondence objects has the status **Obsolete**. After the withdrawal of the revocation the implementation has the status **Active** again.

## Overview table of power of attorney implementations

The app provides you with an overview table showing of all power of attorney implementations that you are authorized to see.

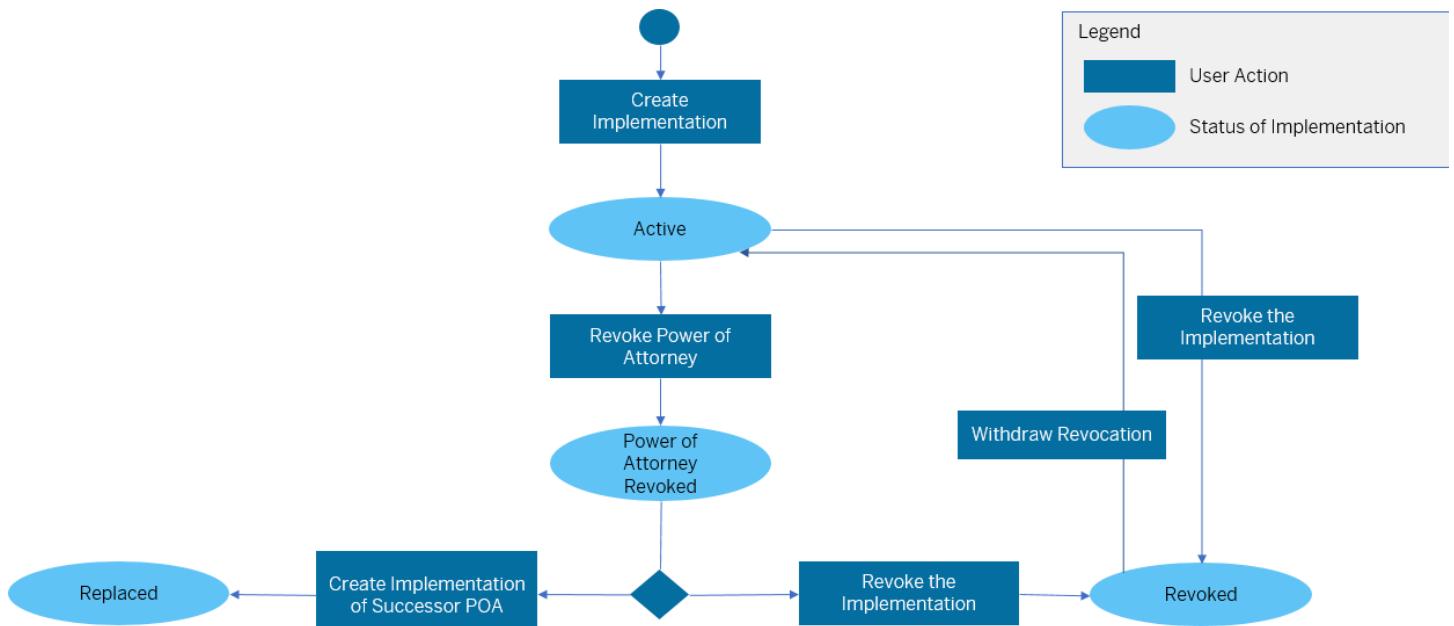
- From this table, you can open an implementation to display or process it.
- From the table, you can choose the **Create** button to create a new implementation.
- From the table, you can select an implementation to delete it.

## Overview table of correspondence objects for a channel

The app provides you with an overview table showing all correspondence objects that you have sent or received for a channel.

- From this table, you can open the correspondence objects to display it or change the status of the correspondence object.
- From the table, you can change the status of an outgoing correspondence object to sent, received, partially confirmed, replaced, or obsolete.
- From the table, you can use the **Create Incoming** button in the row of an outgoing correspondence object to create an incoming correspondence object. For more information, see also [Creating an Incoming Correspondence Object](#).

## Statuses and status transitions of power of attorney implementations



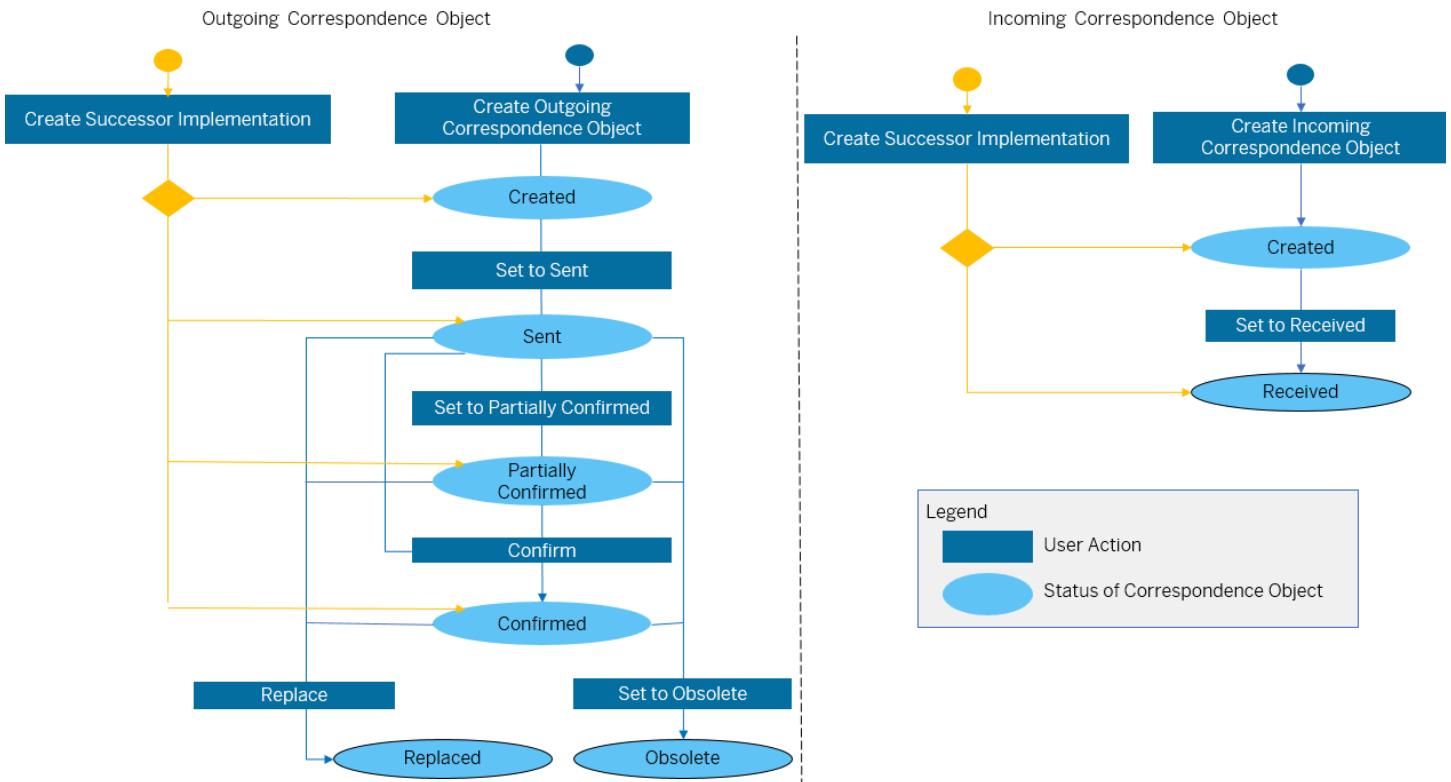
A power of attorney implementation always has a status. The following status are available for implementations:

Status of Implementations	Explanation
Active	When you create the implementation of a power of attorney, the implementation gets the status <b>Active</b> .
Power of Attorney Revoked	If you revoke a power of attorney, the implementation of the revoked power of attorney automatically gets the status <b>Power of Attorney Revoked</b> .
Replaced	When you create the implementation of a successor power of attorney, the system automatically sets the implementation of the predecessor power of attorney to <b>Replaced</b> after copying the relevant correspondence objects to the implementation of the successor power of attorney.
Revoked	If all outgoing correspondence objects of the implementation are either in status <b>Replaced</b> or <b>Obsolete</b> or if it is a revocation correspondence object, it must have the status <b>Confirmed</b> , you can change the status of the implementation to <b>Revoked</b> .

**i Note**

If you revoked the implementation by accident, you can withdraw the revocation, if the assigned power of attorney has status **Active** and is valid until a date in the future and if none of the original powers of attorney of the correspondence objects has the status **Obsolete**. After the withdrawal of the revocation the implementation has the status **Active** again.

## Statuses and status transitions of correspondence objects



A correspondence object always has a status. The following status are available for the different categories of correspondence objects:

Status of Correspondence Objects	Explanation
Statuses of outgoing correspondence objects	
Created	After the creation of an outgoing correspondence object, the correspondence object gets the status <b>Created</b> .
Sent	After the outgoing correspondence has been sent, you can manually change the status of the outgoing correspondence from <b>Created</b> to <b>Sent</b> .
Partially Confirmed	After you received the first confirmation for the outgoing correspondence, you can manually set the status of the outgoing correspondence object to <b>Partially Confirmed</b> .
Confirmed	If you received confirmations for the complete content of the outgoing correspondence, you can manually set the status of the outgoing correspondence object to <b>Confirmed</b> .
Replaced	If you replaced an outgoing correspondence object by a new outgoing correspondence object and the new correspondence object is confirmed, you must set the status to <b>Replaced</b> .
Obsolete	The correspondence object is obsolete when, for example, the corresponding bank/bank accounts are closed. So you can set the correspondence object to the status <b>Obsolete</b> .
Statuses of incoming correspondence objects	
Created	After the creation of an incoming correspondence objects, the correspondence object gets the status <b>Created</b> .
Received	After you checked the incoming correspondence, you can manually change the status of the incoming correspondence object from <b>Created</b> to <b>Received</b> .

## Tabs Structuring the Implementation Data

### Header

The header data consist of the following field:

- Implementation ID
- Implementation Description
- Implementation Status

### Power of Attorney

On this tab, the power of attorney related to this implementation is assigned. You can jump to the power of attorney in the [Manage Powers of Attorney for Banking Transactions](#) app.

### Channels

On this tab, the channels through which the power of attorney can be exercised are assigned.

## SAP Delivered Channels

Channel	Description
SBRA	Bank Branch
SOBB	Online Banking (Administrated by Bank)

**i Note**

You can define additional channels in the [Define Channels for Powers of Attorney](#) configuration activity.

You can only remove a channel from the implementation if no correspondence object exists for the channel.

- From this list of channels, you can open a channel to display, create or edit the outgoing and create or display incoming correspondence objects for this channel.
  - From the list of correspondence objects, you can display the correspondence object data. The following data are shown:
    - Correspondence Object
      - Correspondence Object ID
      - Correspondence Object Description
      - Correspondence Object Category

A correspondence category distinguishes between the different kinds of correspondence. The following correspondence object categories exist:

- Outgoing
- Incoming
- Correspondence Object Status

A correspondence object always has a status.

- Sent On (only available for outgoing correspondence objects)

Date on which you sent the correspondence to the bank.

- Confirmed On (only available for incoming correspondence objects)

Date on which a bank has fully or partially confirmed the outgoing correspondence.

- Related Correspondence Object ID

This field is relevant for incoming correspondence objects. In this field, you see the ID of the outgoing correspondence object to which the incoming correspondence object refers.

- Original POA

This field is filled automatically by the system when you create a correspondence object. If a correspondence object is later copied to the implementation of the successor power of attorney, the value of this field is also copied unchanged.

- Revocation

A correspondence object for which this indicator has been set represents revocation correspondence.

- Postprocessing Indicator

This field is visible in the table that shows all correspondence objects. It is relevant after you created the implementation for a successor power of attorney. After the system copied all outgoing correspondence object in the status **Created**, **Sent**, **Partially Confirmed**, and **Confirmed** and their related incoming correspondence objects to the new implementation, the system checks the validity of the data of the copied outgoing correspondence objects with the data of the successor power of attorney. The result of this check is displayed at the outgoing correspondence object level in the list of correspondence objects in the postprocessing indicator.

- If the data are identical, the postprocessing indicator is set to **No Update**.
- If the data are not identical, the following situations can occur:
  - The data sent to the bank are no longer valid, for example, an authorized representative is part of the correspondence object, but this person is no longer assigned to the power of attorney. In this case, the postprocessing indicator is set to **Mandatory Update**. This means that you need to update the signatory cards at the banks immediately. After writing the update correspondence create the outgoing correspondence object that replaces this invalid correspondence object.

In this case, the invalid data of the outgoing correspondence are also marked as invalid on the detail screen of the outgoing correspondence object in the column **Validity Check Result**.

Possible values shown in the **Validity Check Result** field:

- **Valid**

This data record is still valid.

- **Invalid**

The data record is invalid due to the changed data of the successor power of attorney. It is mandatory to replace the outgoing correspondence object.

- **Not Applicable**

If the validity check for the data of an outgoing correspondence object has not been executed because the outgoing correspondence object was not copied from a predecessor power of attorney, the validity check result is set to **Not Applicable**.

- The data sent to the bank are incomplete, for example, an authorized representative of the power of attorney is not part of the correspondence object. In this case, the postprocessing indicator is set to **Optional Update**. This means that you can update the signatory cards at the banks if needed.

- **Authorized Representatives**

List of all authorized representatives of the power of attorney for which you have implemented this channel.

## i Note

- You can implement the channel for all authorized representatives assigned to the power of attorney, but you can also decide not to implement the channel for one or more of these authorized representatives.
- It is possible to replace a correspondence object with another correspondence object over time, for example, to reset the implementation of an authorized representative or to add an additional authorized representative who has not yet been implemented.

- Banks

List of the banks of the power of attorney for which the powers of attorney are to be implemented using this correspondence object.

- If you sent the correspondence to a single bank only this bank must be assigned here.
- If you have sent a correspondence to a single contact (for example, the central contact in a bank group) to implement the power of attorney for multiple banks, all these banks must be listed here.

- Activities

List of all activities for which the authorized representatives are allowed to execute.

**i Note**

- You can implement the channel for all activities assigned to the power of attorney, but you can also decide not to implement the channel for one or more of these activities. It is also possible to revert the implementation of an activity at a later point in time.
- It is possible to replace a correspondence object with another correspondence object over time, for example, to reset the implementation of an activity or to add an additional activity that has not yet been implemented.

- Replaced Correspondence Object

This table is only available for outgoing correspondence objects. You fill the table, during the creation of an outgoing correspondence object, if the new correspondence objects replaces one or more existing outgoing correspondence objects.

- Change History

Here you can see when and by whom status changes of the correspondence object and changes related to authorized representatives have been made.

## Change Documents

Changes made to the authorized representatives and all status changes of correspondence objects are documented in the change documents. You can see the change documents of the outgoing correspondence objects on the **Change History** tab.

## Supported Device Types

- Desktop
- Tablet

## Related Information

[Powers of Attorney for Banking Transactions](#)

[Terms for Powers of Attorney for Banking Transactions](#)

[Implementing Powers of Attorney](#)

[Creating an Implementation for a Power of Attorney for Banking Transactions](#)

[Creating an Outgoing Correspondence Object](#)

[Creating an Incoming Correspondence Object](#)

[Changing the Status of an Outgoing Correspondence Object Manually](#)

# Import Bank Services Billing Files

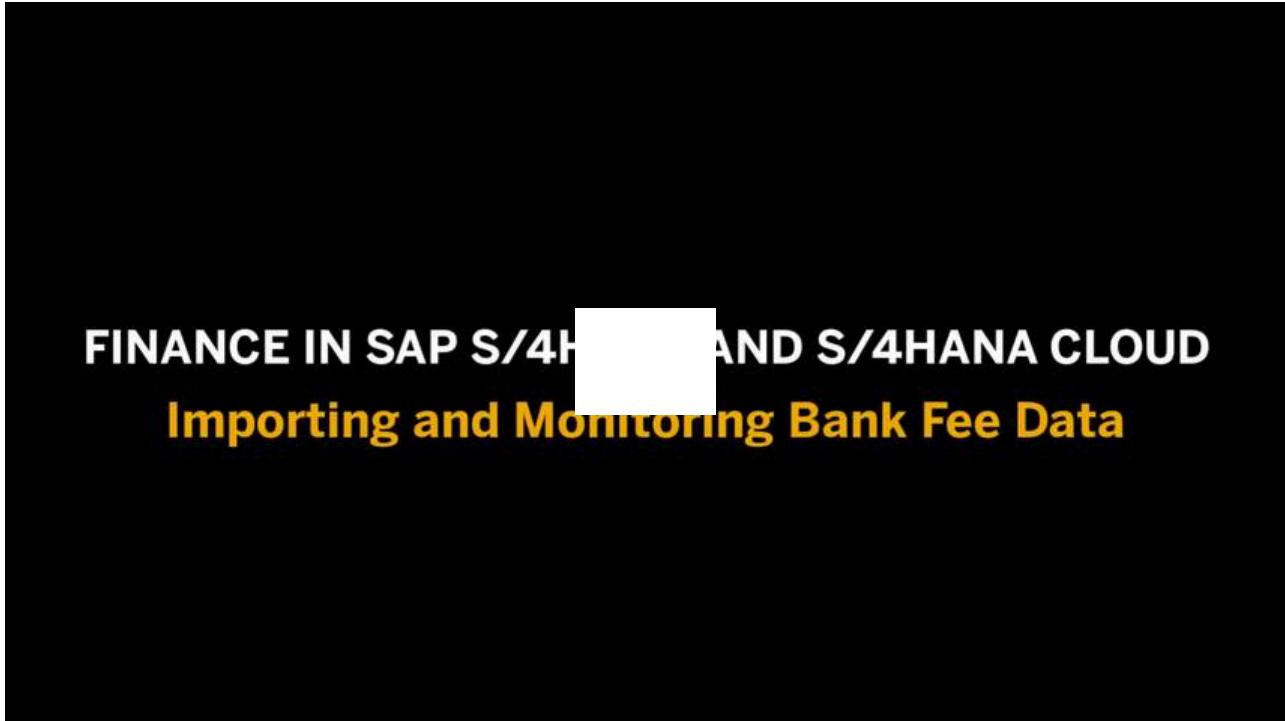
With this app you can import bank services billing files to load bank fee data to your system for analytical purposes. The content and format of the files you import must follow the Bank Services Billing (BSB) standard that was defined by ISO 20022.

For more information about the standard message definition for bank services billing (BSB) files, please see <https://www.iso20022.org/>.

## Key Features

- Import bank services billing files so as to collect bank fee data from your banks
- Delete source files to erase imported data when necessary

## How to Import and Monitor Bank Fee Data (English Only)



[Open this video in a new window](#)

### i Note

Captions are available for **multiple languages**. Use the **CC** (Closed Captions) button in the video player to see which languages are supported.

You can also use the **Search within video** field to search for specific text in the English or German captions.

## Supported Device Types

- Desktop

## More Information

- The SAP Fiori apps reference library has details about the content necessary for giving users access to an app on the SAP Fiori launchpad. The SAP Fiori apps reference library is available here: <https://fioriappslibrary.hana.ondemand.com>

To see this app's Fiori content, search for the app. Then select SAP S/4HANA as the product. On the **Implementation Information** tab, select the correct release. The details are in the **Configuration** section.

# Liquidity Forecast

## Use

With this app you can forecast the liquidity trend for the following 90 days. You can filter and drill down by various dimensions. This app is available for the roles of Cash Manager and Cash Management Specialist.

## Calculation Logic

The calculation logic is simple. The numbers on the app tile are the same as those in the top-right corner of the app.

The amount is the forecasted amount in bank account currency. The liquidity forecast is calculated based on the transaction data from memo records and the One Exposure from Operations hub.

## Key Features

- Display the aggregated forecast cash flows and closing balance
- Display cash flows and closing balances by company code
- Display cash flows and closing balances by liquidity item
- Filter the data with various dimensions, such as calendar day, planning group, and so on
- Navigate to the Check Cash Flow Items application to display the line item details for each cash flow
- Switch the display mode between charts and tables
- Monitor the daily actual cash flows for the past days

Caching is enabled for this app for better performance. You can click the refresh icon on the app tile and in the bottom-left corner of the app to refresh the data immediately. The data is also updated automatically. The frequency is determined by the cache duration in the tile configuration. For more information, see *Caching* in [Creating Applications](#).

## Supported Device Types

- Desktop

## Relevant Business Catalog

SAP\_SFIN\_BC\_CM\_LM

## More Information

- The SAP Fiori apps reference library has details about the content necessary for giving users access to an app on the **SAP Fiori launchpad**. The SAP Fiori apps reference library is available here: <https://fioriappslibrary.hana.ondemand.com>

To see this app's Fiori content, search for the app. Then select SAP S/4HANA as the product. On the **Implementation Information** tab, select the correct release. The details are in the **Configuration** section.

- [Configuration Settings: Liquidity Forecast](#)

# Configuration Settings: Liquidity Forecast

This document contains configuration information for this app.

## SAP Jam Integration

For information on how to configure SAP Jam, see <http://help.sap.com/sapjam>.

## Manage KPIs and Reports

To know more, see [Manage KPIs and Reports](#).

**Group:** Liquidity Forecast

**Group ID:** SAP.SFIN.CASHMGR.LIQUIDITY90DAYS

**Group Description:**

**Goal Type:** Maximizing

**KPI**

The following KPI is assigned to this group:

- Liquidity Forecast: EUR

**KPI ID:** SAP.SFIN.CASHMGR.LIQUIDITY90DAYS

**KPI Description:** Liquidity Forecast Transaction Currency: Euro

## Targets, Thresholds, and Trend

Parameter	Value	Example Value
Goal Type	Maximizing	
Value Type	Fixed Value	
Critical		
Warning		
Target		
Trend	(Not applicable)	

This table shows some example values.

## Input Parameters and Filters

### Input Parameters

Input Parameter	Operator	Example Value	Explanation
P_DisplayCurrency	Equal to	EUR	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>For flows which have bank accounts, choose a bank account currency that is converted from the transaction currency.</li> <li>For flows without bank accounts, choose the transaction currency as there's no such conversion.</li> </ul> <p>An entry in this field is required.</p>
P_NumberOfDays	Equal to	90	<p>Choose a number of days to define the date range to be displayed in the liquidity forecast. The date range is from the current date number to the number of the last day of the range after the current date.</p> <p>An entry in this field is required.</p>

The following tables show the input parameters, filters, and some preconfigured example values. Use your own values where required, according to the data in your backend system.

#### Drill-Down: Forecast Cash Flow and Balance

View ID: V20151028100017.5724150

View Title: Forecast Cash Flow and Balance

Measure and Dimension: Closing Balance = Opening Balance + Forecast Cash Flow

Parameter	Value
Dimension	Calendar Day
KPI Measure	Closing Balance
KPI Measure	Cash Flow

Visualization Type:

- Columns and Lines
- Manual Colors

#### Drill-Down: Cash Flow by Liquidity Item

View ID: V20151028100017.7019220

View Title: Cash Flow by Liquidity Item

**Measure and Dimension:**

Parameter	Value
Dimension	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Liquidity Item</li> <li>Liquidity Item Name</li> </ul>
KPI Measure	Cash Flow

**Visualization Type:**

- Bar
- Single Axis
- Absolute Values
- Default Colors

**Drill-Down: Cash Flow by Company Code**

View ID: V20151028100017.7339160

View Title: Cash Flow by Company Code

**Measure and Dimension:**

Parameter	Value
Dimension	Company Code
KPI Measure	Cash Flow

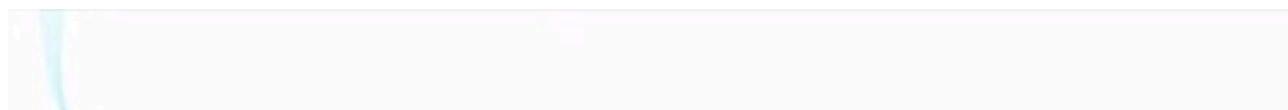
**Visualization Type:**

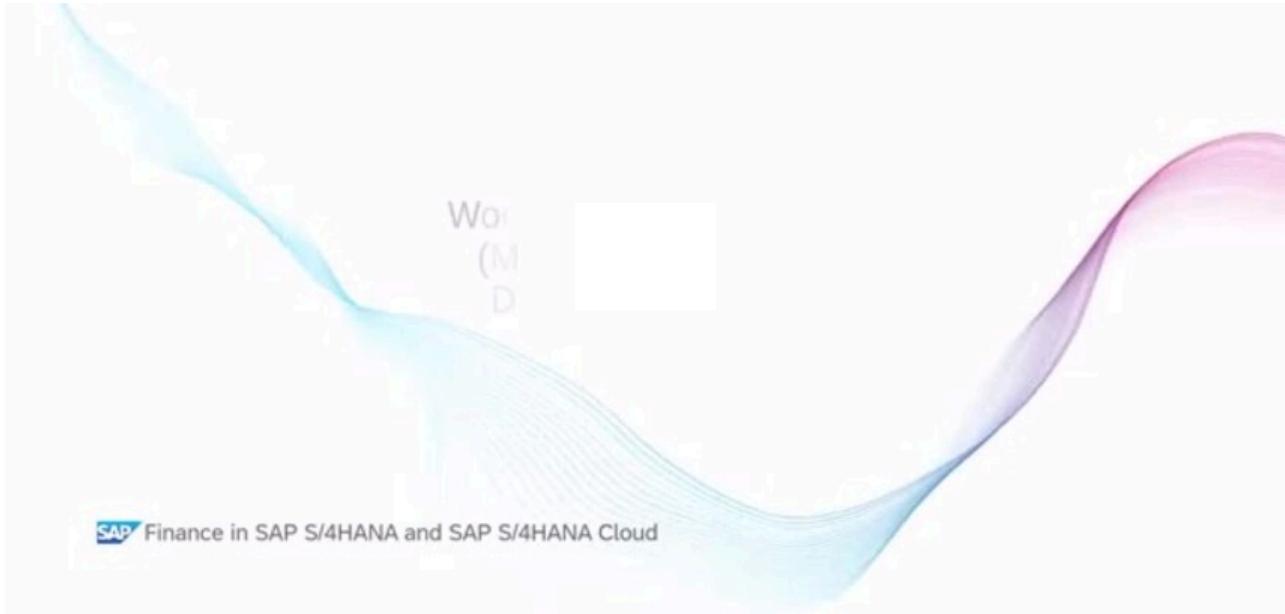
- Bar
- Single Axis
- Absolute Values
- Default Colors

## Liquidity Forecast Details

### Use

With this app, you can display the overview and the details of forecasted amounts of each liquidity item by different dimensions.

**How-to Video: Working with Web Dynpro Reports (English Only)**



### i Note

Captions are available for **multiple languages**. Use the **CC** (Closed Captions) button in the video player to see which languages are supported.

You can also use the **Search within video** field to search for specific text in the English or German captions.

## Key Features

- Overview
  - Display the amounts of opening balance, net cash flows and closing balance
  - Set transaction currency and date for the overview
- Details
  - Display the amounts of net cash flows in transaction currency and display currency
  - Set display currency, liquidity item hierarchy and date for the details
- Adjust the dimension layout by switching rows and columns
- Switch the display mode between charts and tables

## Supported Device Types

- Desktop
- Tablet

## Relevant Business Catalog

SAP\_SFIN\_BC\_CM\_LM

## More Information

- The SAP Fiori apps reference library has details about the content necessary for giving users access to an app on the SAP **Fiori launchpad**. The SAP Fiori apps reference library is available here: <https://fioriappslibrary.hana.ondemand.com>

To see this app's Fiori content, search for the app. Then select SAP S/4HANA as the product. On the **Implementation Information** tab, select the correct release. The details are in the **Configuration** section.

## Maintain Payment Approver

### Use

With this app you can maintain a payment approver in multiple bank accounts.

### Key Features

- Replace a payment approver in multiple bank accounts.
- Add a payment approver to multiple bank accounts.
- Revoke the authorization of a payment approver in multiple bank accounts, by changing the validity period of the payment approver.
- Use SAP Business Workflow to control the process of the operations above.

#### **i Note**

This app is based on a different UI technology, so there are slight differences from the other SAP Fiori apps.

## More Information

- The SAP Fiori apps reference library has details about the content necessary for giving users access to an app on the SAP **Fiori launchpad**. The SAP Fiori apps reference library is available here: <https://fioriappslibrary.hana.ondemand.com>

To see this app's Fiori content, search for the app. Then select SAP S/4HANA as the product. On the **Implementation Information** tab, select the correct release. The details are in the **Configuration** section.

## Make Bank Transfers

### Use

With this app, you can make transfers between bank accounts in your company. For each transfer, the system creates a payment request. Depending on your company's process, you can either create and clear the payment request in one single action, or create, release, and clear the payment request in separate steps.

### Key Features

- Initiate a new transfer between bank accounts in your company
- You create a new transfer by entering paying and target bank account IDs, transfer date, payment method, amount, and reference texts.

## i Note

Transfers using currencies other than the bank account currency are supported. Please note that the app supports only the exchange rate type M (average rate) to convert payments in foreign currency to bank account currency. You must use the exchange rate type M and also enter the exchange rates for this type.

- o Release and clear payment requests

Payment requests are cleared when the payment run is successful and the payment has been posted to the clearing account. Depending on the process in your company, you can do either of the following:

- Create a bank transfer and ask other users to release and clear the payment request

Other users can search for the payment requests that were created by you (with status **Created**) and then release and clear them.

- Create a bank transfer with the **Release and Pay** checkbox selected

This way, the system automatically releases the payment request and makes the payment. Subsequently, the status of the payment request is changed to **Cleared**.

- o Create with templates

You can choose the **Create with Templates** button to navigate to the [Make Bank Transfers - Create with Templates](#) app to create bank transfers based on templates that have been defined for frequent bank transfers.

- o Check bank transfer details and application logs

- Choose **Go** to see a list of bank transfers.

You can also adapt your filters. For example, when you specify a range of transfer dates, a list of bank transfers within this period are displayed.

- Choose a bank transfer to view the object page.

You can check the details of bank transfers and view the application log to track the history of bank transfers.

- o Fuzzy search

- Search for a transfer by entering parameters such as a bank account or a payment method.

## Supported Device Types

- Desktop
- Tablet

## More Information

- The SAP Fiori apps reference library has details about the content necessary for giving users access to an app on the **SAP Fiori launchpad**. The SAP Fiori apps reference library is available here: <https://fioriappslibrary.hana.ondemand.com>

To see this app's Fiori content, search for the app. Then select SAP S/4HANA as the product. On the **Implementation Information** tab, select the correct release. The details are in the **Configuration** section.

## Make Bank Transfers - Create with Templates

With this app, you can create one or more bank transfers in a batch based on the defined templates. The app helps you speed up your routine work for regular bank transfers.

## Prerequisites

Before you use this app, you must first define templates in the [Define Bank Transfer Templates](#) app.

In addition, you need to have configured the required settings for making bank transfers. For more information, see the “Prerequisites” of the [Make Bank Transfers](#) app.

## Key Features

You can use this app to do the following:

- Search for templates using the fuzzy search
- Create bank transfers based on defined templates

You can create one or more transfers at a time. To do so, just find the relevant template, specify the amount and other attributes as necessary, and then choose the **Save** button.

### i Note

With this app, payment requests are generated with the status **Created**. You can release and clear the payment requests using the [Make Bank Transfers](#) app.

## Supported Device Types

- Desktop
- Tablet

## More Information

- The SAP Fiori apps reference library has details about the content necessary for giving users access to an app on the **SAP Fiori launchpad**. The SAP Fiori apps reference library is available here: <https://fioriappslibrary.hana.ondemand.com>

To see this app's Fiori content, search for the app. Then select SAP S/4HANA as the product. On the **Implementation Information** tab, select the correct release. The details are in the **Configuration** section.

## Related Information

[Make Bank Transfers](#)

[Define Bank Transfer Templates](#)

## Manage Banks (Deprecated)

### Use

With this app you can display, create, and change data about the banks your company, your customers, and your suppliers use to transact business.

## Key Features

- Forms a central repository for address, risk, and other kinds of general bank data.
- Create, display, and edit data for banks and house banks in which your company has one or more accounts.
- Create, display, and edit data for banks that your customers and suppliers use to transact business with your company.
- Associate house banks, contact persons, and business partners with your banks.

## Other Features

In addition, the app supports the following technical features:

- **Export to Spreadsheet:** Exports list data to a spreadsheet.
- **Share:** Allows you to send specific data to colleagues by email or by using SAP Jam, and which allows you to save a specific data view as a tile available on your Launchpad.

### i Note

Banks can be replicated to other systems using SAP Master Data Integration. For more information, see [Master Data Replication Using SAP Master Data Integration](#).

## More Information

- The SAP Fiori apps reference library has details about the content necessary for giving users access to an app on the [SAP Fiori launchpad](#). The SAP Fiori apps reference library is available here: <https://fioriappslibrary.hana.ondemand.com>

To see this app's Fiori content, search for the app. Then select SAP S/4HANA as the product. On the [Implementation Information](#) tab, select the correct release. The details are in the [Configuration](#) section.

## App Extensibility: Manage Banks (Key User)

As a key user, you can extend the [Manage Banks](#) app according to your business needs.

## Custom Logic

With the [Custom Logic](#) app, you can create and maintain implementations of custom logic that can be used to enhance applications and change application behavior. You can implement custom logic for the following business add-ins (BAdIs):

BAdI Description	Business Context	Business Use
<a href="#">Field Validations for Banks</a>	<a href="#">Cash Management Bank</a>	You can use this BAdI to define and implement field validations for bank data when users create or make changes to a bank in the <a href="#">Manage Banks</a> app. The system automatically calls this BAdI when users choose the <a href="#">Save</a> button to save their changes.

For more information, see:

- [Custom Logic](#)

- For more information about the individual BAdls, check the BAdl-specific documentation: [Custom Logic](#) <your implementation> [BAdl Documentation](#) [View BAdl Documentation](#)

## Related Information

[Extensibility](#)

# Manage Banks - Cash Management

App ID: F1574A

With this app, you can display banks that have already been created in your SAP system and add data - such as house banks, business partners, and bank service mappings - that is essential for using these banks in cash management and payments.

## Key Features

You can use this app to do the following:

- Display banks and view their basic information, such as bank names, SWIFT codes, and address information  
To maintain the basic information of banks, use the [Manage Banks - Master Data](#) app.
- Manage both standard banks and internal banks  
For more information about the bank categories the app supports, see [Banks and Bank Categories](#).
- Supplement banks with your corporate data that is essential for using these banks in cash management and payment activities

Some important attributes include:

- House banks  
For more information, see [House Banks](#).
- Business partners, such as the risk business partner, netting business partner, and bank contact person.  
For more information, see [Defining Business Partners for Banks](#).
- Bank service mappings for bank fee validation

Bank service mappings are used to calculate bank service volumes from bank statements. The volumes calculated can then be used to validate the service volume from bank services billing files in the [Monitor Bank Fees](#) app.

For more information, see [Validating Bank Service Charges](#).

- Navigate to the [Manage Bank Accounts](#) app to view or edit bank accounts that belong to a certain bank

## Feature Comparison for Bank Management Apps

Bank Management Apps

App	Manage Banks - Master Data	Manage Banks - Cash Management
Business Role Template	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><a href="#">Master Data Specialist - Bank Data (SAP_BR_MD_SPECIALIST_BNK)</a></li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><a href="#">Cash Manager (SAP_BR_CASH_MANAGER)</a></li> </ul>

App	Manage Banks - Master Data	Manage Banks - Cash Management
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Cash Management Specialist</b> (SAP_BR_CASH_SPECIALIST)</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Cash Management Specialist</b> (SAP_BR_CASH_SPECIALIST)</li> </ul>
Restrictions	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>To work with <b>standard</b> banks, you need to have obtained proper authorization for the authorization object F_BNKA_MA0 (<b>Banks</b>).</li> <li>To work with <b>internal</b> banks, you need to have obtained proper authorization for the authorization object type F_BNKA_INT (<b>Internal Banks</b>).</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>To display banks in this app, you need to have obtained proper authorization for the authorization object F_BNKA_MA0 (<b>Banks</b>).</li> <li>To work with house banks, you need to have obtained proper authorization for the authorization object F_BNKA_BUK (<b>Banks: Authorization for Company Codes</b>).</li> <li>To work with <b>standard</b> banks, you need to have obtained proper authorization for the authorization object F_CLM_BNK (<b>Standard Banks for Cash Management</b>).</li> <li>To work with <b>internal</b> banks, you need to have obtained proper authorization for authorization object F_CLM_IBNK (<b>Internal Banks for Cash Management</b>).</li> </ul>
Type of data the app manages	Basic data of banks	Corporate data for banks
Capabilities	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Create and update banks</li> <li>Manage basic bank data, such as bank name, SWIFT code, address information</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Supplement data for cash management and payment activities, such as house banks, risk business partners, bank contact persons, bank service mappings</li> <li>View linked bank accounts</li> </ul>

## Supported Device Types

- Desktop
- Tablet

## Related Information

[Manage Banks - Master Data](#)

## App Extensibility: Manage Banks - Cash Management (Key User)

As a key user, you can extend the **Manage Banks - Cash Management** app according to your business needs.

## Custom Logic

With the **Custom Logic** app, you can create and maintain implementations of custom logic that can be used to enhance applications and change application behavior. You can implement custom logic for the following business add-ins (BAdIs):

BAdl Description	Business Context	Business Use
Field Validations for Banks	Cash Management Bank	You can use this BAdl to define and implement field validations for bank data when users create or make changes to a bank's cash management data in the <a href="#">Manage Banks - Cash Management</a> app. The system automatically calls this BAdl when users choose the <b>Save</b> button to save their changes.

For more information, see:

- [Custom Logic](#)
- For more information about the individual BAdls, check the BAdl-specific documentation:  [Custom Logic](#) > <your implementation>  [BAdl Documentation](#)  [View BAdl Documentation](#) 

## Related Information

[Extensibility](#)

# Manage Banks - Master Data

With this app, you can display and create master data for the banks your company, your business partners, customers, and your suppliers use to conduct business.

## Key Features

You can use this app to:

- Display banks and view their basic information, such as bank name, SWIFT/BIC code, bank number and address information.
- Create and edit both standard banks and internal banks.

For more information about the bank categories the app supports, see [Banks and Bank Categories](#).

- Create and edit international address versions.

For more information, see [International Address Versions](#).

### i Note

Additional features relating to **Cash Management** can be accessed in app **Manage Banks – Cash Management**. For more information, see [Manage Banks - Cash Management](#) under *Feature Comparison for Bank Management Apps*.

### i Note

This app contains in-app help for key fields and concepts. To display the help while working in the app, press F1 or choose the question mark displayed in the app header.

In addition, following technical features and options are supported:

- Banks can be replicated to other systems using SAP Master Data Integration. For more information, see Master Data Replication Using SAP Master Data Integration (Related Links).
- Banks can be imported from external files with other app **Import Bank Directories**. For more information, see Uploading Bank Data (Related Links).

## Supported Device Types

- Desktop
- Tablet

## Component for Customer Incidents

If you need support or experience issues, please report an incident under component CA-BK-BNK ([Bank Master Data](#)).

## Related Information

[Master Data Replication Using SAP Master Data Integration](#)

[Uploading Bank Data with Import Bank Directories](#)

## Manage Bank Accounts

With this app you can create, display, edit, and delete bank accounts according to your business needs.

## Key Features

- Search for a bank account using key words and filters.
- Create new bank accounts.
- Open a bank account master record, where you can check bank account details, make changes, copy the bank account to create a new bank account, close the bank account, and delete the bank account if it is inactive.
- Delete inactive bank accounts and bank account drafts en masse.

### i Note

Bank accounts that are in workflow processes cannot be deleted.

- Create document or URL attachments for bank accounts.

### i Note

Do not upload any document containing personal data. The bank account attachments are based on the Document Management System (DMS). Retrieval of personal data for DMS-based documents is not supported by the Information Retrieval Framework (IFR).

- Search for bank account attachments.
- Use SAP Business Workflow or dual control to manage and streamline the process of opening, modifying, closing, reopening, and reviewing bank accounts.
- In addition, the app supports the following technical features and options:

- Send emails

You can use this app to send an email containing a URL to the selected information in this app.

- Share in SAP Jam

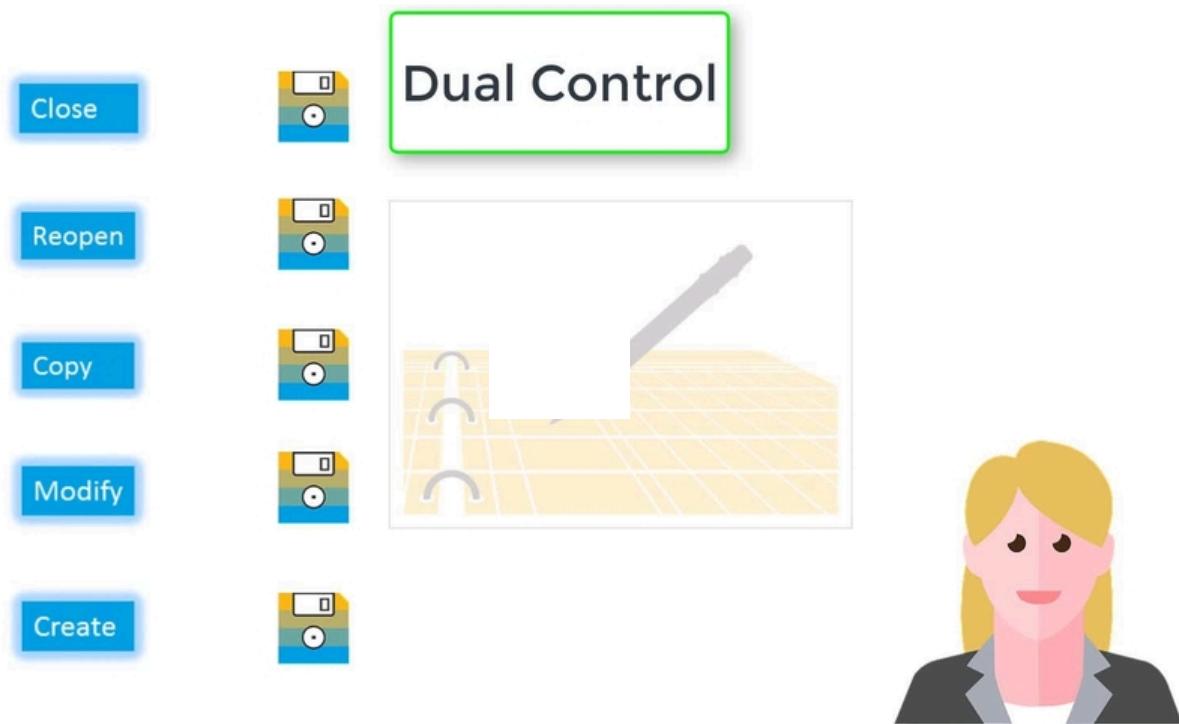
If your company uses SAP Jam groups, you can post your comments about a task there.

- Save as tile

You can create a tile that uses the current selection criteria as default settings.

## How-To Videos (English only)

### Using Dual Control for Bank Account Management



[Open this video in a new window](#)

### Using Workflows for Bank Account Management





[Open this video in a new window](#)

### i Note

Captions are available for **multiple languages**. Use the **CC** (Closed Captions) button in the video player to see which languages are supported.

You can also use the **Search within video** field to search for specific text in the English or German captions.

## Supported Device Types

- Desktop
- Tablet

## More Information

- The SAP Fiori apps reference library has details about the content necessary for giving users access to an app on the **SAP Fiori launchpad**. The SAP Fiori apps reference library is available here: <https://fioriappslibrary.hana.ondemand.com>

To see this app's Fiori content, search for the app. Then select SAP S/4HANA as the product. On the **Implementation Information** tab, select the correct release. The details are in the **Configuration** section.

- [App Extensibility: Manage Bank Accounts](#)

## Manage Bank Accounts (Basic Cash Management)

With this app you can create, display, edit, and delete bank accounts according to your business needs.

### i Note

This topic is only relevant to customers who are using the basic cash management capability.

## Key Features

- Search for a bank account using key words and filters.
- Create new bank accounts.
- Open a bank account master record, where you can check bank account details, make changes, copy the bank account to create a new bank account, close the bank account, and delete the bank account if it is inactive.
- Delete bank account drafts en masse.
- In addition, the app supports the following technical features and options:
  - Send emails

You can use this app to send an email containing a URL to the selected information in this app.

- Share in SAP Jam

If your company uses SAP Jam groups, you can post your comments about a task there.

- Save as tile

You can create a tile that uses the current selection criteria as default settings.

## Supported Device Types

- Desktop
- Tablet

## More Information

- The SAP Fiori apps reference library has details about the content necessary for giving users access to an app on the SAP Fiori launchpad. The SAP Fiori apps reference library is available here: <https://fioriappslibrary.hana.ondemand.com>

To see this app's Fiori content, search for the app. Then select SAP S/4HANA as the product. On the **Implementation Information** tab, select the correct release. The details are in the **Configuration** section.

## App Extensibility: Manage Bank Accounts

You can extend the **Manage Bank Accounts** app according to your business needs for different aspects. For this purpose, the following extensibility options are available:

### Custom Fields

You can add fields to the following UI elements using UI adaptations at runtime:

UI Element	Business Context
The <b>General Data</b> section of the bank account master data	Manage Bank Accounts

For more information about how to adapt an SAP Fiori UI at runtime, see [Making UI Changes \(Object Pages\)](#).

You can implement logic for the following enhancement options:

Enhancement Option	Business Context
Assign default values to custom fields	Bank Account Master Data

For more information, see [Creating Custom Fields](#).

### How to Extend Bank Account Master Data (English Only)

[Open this video in a new window](#)

### i Note

Captions are available for **multiple languages**. Use the **CC** (Closed Captions) button in the video player to see which languages are supported.

You can also use the **Search within video** field to search for specific text in the English or German captions.

## Custom Logic

With the **Custom Logic** tab in the **Custom Fields and Logic** app, you can create and maintain implementations of custom logic that can be used to enhance applications and change application behavior. You can implement custom logic for the following Business Add-Ins (BAdls):

BAdl Name	Business Context	Business Use
Automatic Field Population upon Field Update	Bank Account Master Data	You can use this BAdl to define how the fields in the <b>Manage Bank Accounts</b> app, including custom fields, are filled automatically when certain fields are filled with particular values.
Automatic Field Population upon Account Creation	Bank Account Master Data	You can use this BAdl to define how the fields in the <b>Manage Bank Accounts</b> app, including custom fields, are filled by default when users create new bank accounts.
Field Status Control for Bank Accounts in Flexible Workflows	Bank Account Master Data	You can use this BAdl to enable approvers to make changes to bank accounts in workflow approval steps, and you can define field statuses for bank account fields in different workflow scenarios.

For more information, see:

- [Creating Implementations](#)
- For more information about the individual BAdls, check the BAdl-specific documentation in the Custom Fields and Logic app: **Custom Fields and Logic** **Custom Logic** <your implementation> **BAdl Documentation** **View BAdl Documentation**

## Further Extensibility Entities

## Business Add-Ins (BAdIs)

In addition to the BAdIs in the **Custom Fields and Logic** app, you can find the following BAdIs in Customizing under ►Financial Supply Chain Management ➤ Cash and Liquidity Management ➤ Bank Account Management ➤ Business Add-Ins (BAdIs) □:

- **BAdI: Field Statuses and Field Checks** (FCLM\_BAM\_FIELDS\_CTRL)

You can use this BAdI to define the following:

- Field statuses for fields that are used in bank account master data, for example, whether a field is read-only, changeable, mandatory, or hidden.

To do so, you can either create your own implementation or use the default implementation FCLM\_BAM\_FIELDS\_CTRL.

### i Note

In addition to this Business Add-In, you can also use the Customizing activity **Manage Field Status Groups** to control the fields on the app screens. The settings made for field status groups take precedence over the default BAdI implementation FCLM\_BAM\_FIELDS\_CTRL.

- Additional checks for bank account master data.
- Whether it is mandatory for users to enter a note when they approve or reject a workflow request.

- **BAdI: Bank Account Number Mapping Between BAM and HBA** (FCLM\_BAM\_HBACCT)

You can use this BAdI to define how to map bank account numbers to fields in a house bank account. For example, due to the length limit of a house bank account number, you can use this BAdI to specify another field to store the bank account number, for example, **Alternative acct no..**

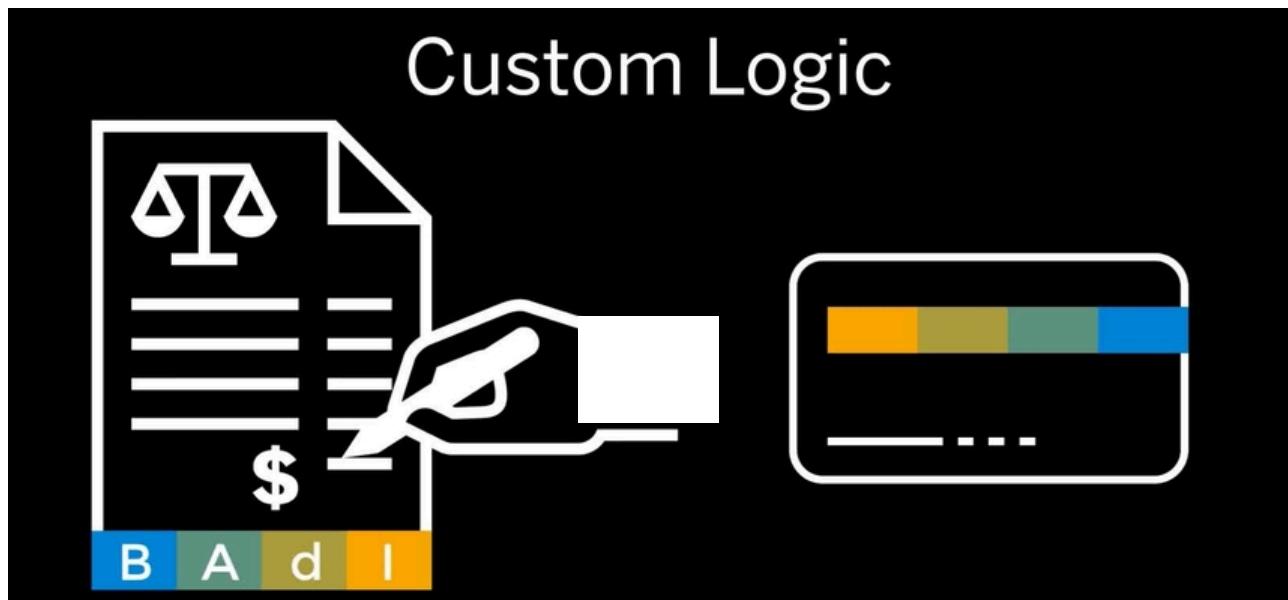
- **BAdI: Payment Approval Pattern Determination** (FCLM\_BAM\_SIGNATORY)

You can use this BAdI to override the payment approval patterns defined in Customizing activity **Define Settings for Bank Account Master Data** with your own logic and definition.

## More Information

For a general description of the extensibility options and procedures of SAP Fiori apps, see [Extend SAP Fiori Apps](#).

[How to Define Custom Logic for Bank Account Master Data \(English Only\)](#)





[Open this video in a new window](#)

## Manage Bank Account Hierarchies

With this app, you can create and edit bank account group hierarchies and their validity timeframes. You can also quickly create hierarchies based on existing hierarchies in case of structure changes or changing reporting needs. Additionally, you can easily expand hierarchies by adding levels or importing nodes from other hierarchies.

### Key Features

You can use this app to do the following:

- Create and edit bank account group hierarchies
- Edit and save hierarchies in both draft and active status
- Edit your hierarchies quickly and easily using a variety of in-built features, including Fast Entry, copy and paste, and drag and drop
- Export your hierarchies to spreadsheets

### Supported Device Types

- Desktop
- Tablet

### More Information

- The SAP Fiori apps reference library has details about the content necessary for giving users access to an app on the [SAP Fiori launchpad](#). The SAP Fiori apps reference library is available here: <https://fioriappslibrary.hana.ondemand.com>

To see this app's Fiori content, search for the app. Then select SAP S/4HANA as the product. On the [Implementation Information](#) tab, select the correct release. The details are in the [Configuration](#) section.

### Related Information

[Managing Bank Account Group Hierarchies](#)

[Manage Global Hierarchies](#)

## Manage Bank Accounts - Bank Hierarchy View

With this app you can get an overview of your bank accounts in the bank hierarchy view and maintain bank account groups.

### Key Features

- Check your bank accounts in the [Bank Hierarchy](#) view and your self-defined views.

- View bank account groups that were created before SAP S/4HANA 1909.

## Supported Device Types

- Desktop

## More Information

- The SAP Fiori apps reference library has details about the content necessary for giving users access to an app on the **SAP Fiori launchpad**. The SAP Fiori apps reference library is available here: <https://fioriappslibrary.hana.ondemand.com>

To see this app's Fiori content, search for the app. Then select SAP S/4HANA as the product. On the **Implementation Information** tab, select the correct release. The details are in the **Configuration** section.

# App Extensibility: Manage Bank Accounts

## Use

You can extend the Manage Bank Accounts app according to your business needs for different aspects. For this purpose, the following extensibility options are available:

Extension Options	Use
CDS view VFCLMBAMHNATTR in structure FCLM_BAM_S_HIERNODE_ATT	Allows you to add additional columns for displaying bank account attributes

## More Information

For a general description of the extensibility options and procedures, see [Extend SAP Fiori Apps](#).

# Manage Bank Fee Conditions

With this app you can create, edit, and delete bank fee conditions. A condition defines how bank fees should be charged for a certain bank service. The system uses the conditions to validate the imported bank fee data to see if there is any mistakes or improper charges.

## Key Features

- Create, edit, and delete bank fee conditions.

After you define conditions in this app, you can assign conditions to bank services and validate imported bank fees in the **Monitor Bank Fees** app.

For more information, see [Validating Bank Service Charges](#).

In addition, the app supports the following technical features and options:

- Send emails

You can use this app to send an email containing a URL to the selected information in this app.

- Save as tile

You can create a tile that uses the current selection criteria as default settings.

## Supported Device Types

- Desktop

## More Information

- The SAP Fiori apps reference library has details about the content necessary for giving users access to an app on the SAP Fiori launchpad. The SAP Fiori apps reference library is available here: <https://fioriappslibrary.hana.ondemand.com>

To see this app's Fiori content, search for the app. Then select SAP S/4HANA as the product. On the **Implementation Information** tab, select the correct release. The details are in the **Configuration** section.

## Manage Cash Concentration

With this app, you can perform cash concentration for cash pools. For cash pools with the service provider **Enterprise**, you can make transfers between the header account and subaccounts based on system proposals. For cash pools with the service provider **Bank**, you can simulate cash concentration by creating memo records. The cash concentration feature allows your company to maintain cash balances centrally, and thus improve the efficiency of cash management.

## Key Features

You can use this app to do the following:

- Perform cash concentration for physical cash pools with the service provider **Enterprise**.

### **i** Note

Alternatively, you can schedule background jobs for cash concentration using the [Schedule Jobs for Cash Concentration](#) app.

- Get system proposals on transfer amounts and view simulation details for transfers in child cash pools.
- Simulate cash concentration for cash pools that are operated by banks.

For cash pools with the service provider **Bank**, memo records will be generated to simulate the cash movements in the cash pool.

- Filter cash concentration with specific selection criteria, such as the specified concentration date.
- Display cash concentration in a list page and check the application logs.

To view the logs, click on the concentration IDs.

## Supported Device Types

- Desktop
- Tablet

## Related Information

[Performing Cash Concentration](#)[Schedule Jobs for Cash Concentration](#)[Manage Cash Pools](#)[Cash Pool Transfer Report](#)

## Manage Cash Pools

Create, delete, and display cash pools.

### Use

With this app, you can create, delete, and display cash pools. The master data can later be used in the cash pooling feature. As total cash balances are managed centrally rather than locally, it can then help your company to improve its liquidity management.

### Prerequisites

Make sure you have made the configuration setting of the customizing activity **Assign Planning Levels to Profiles** under  **Financial Supply Chain Management**  **Cash and Liquidity Management**  **Cash Management**  **Bank Account Balance Calculation** .

#### **i Note**

The **Bank Account Balance Profile** determines how bank account balances are calculated in the **Manage Cash Concentration** app. With the customizing activity **Assign Planning Levels to Profiles**, you can define the expected closing balance of bank accounts which can then be used in the cash sweeping between the header account and subaccounts.

### Key Features

- Create cash pools. You can enter details, such as description, pool type, service provider and so on.

You can assign the header account and subaccounts for cash pools in the [Manage Bank Accounts](#) app. For more information, see [Maintaining Cash Pool Information](#).

- Display a list of cash pools to check the details for each pool.
- Filter cash pools with specific selection criteria, such as **Pool Usage** to see whether it's used for cash concentration or not.

#### **i Note**

For more information, see [Manage Cash Concentration](#).

- Delete cash pools that are not in use any more. Even though cash pools are deleted, you can still display them in a list.

#### **i Note**

This app contains in-app help for key fields and concepts. To display the help while working in the app, press F1 or click the question mark displayed in the app header.

### Supported Device Types

- Desktop
- Tablet

## More Information

- The SAP Fiori apps reference library has details about the content necessary for giving users access to an app on the SAP Fiori launchpad. The SAP Fiori apps reference library is available here: <https://fioriappslibrary.hana.ondemand.com>

To see this app's Fiori content, search for the app. Then select SAP S/4HANA as the product. On the **Implementation Information** tab, select the correct release. The details are in the **Configuration** section.

## Related Information

[Cash Pool Transfer Report](#)

[Defining Cash Pools](#)

[Defining Cash Pool Hierarchies](#)

[Performing Cash Concentration](#)

## Manage Cash Pools (Version 2)

With this app, you can define, display, change, and delete cash pools. A cash pool consists of a header account and one or more subaccounts. The assignment of the header account and subaccounts to the cash pool is always done for a specific validity period. You can assign bank accounts with currencies other than the header account currency as subaccounts to cash pools (multi-currency cash pool). In addition, it is possible to add a bank account as a header account to a cash pool, even if the account is already used as a subaccount in another cash pool. This allows you to create multi-level cash pool hierarchies. The cash pools defined in this app can be displayed in hierarchical order in the **Display Cash Pool Hierarchies** app. In the **Short-Term Cash Positioning** app, you can analyze the cash position calculated based on the cash position profiles using cash pool data as the data source. You can define two kinds of cash pools, besides the classic cash pools for current bank accounts and other bank accounts, you can also create in-house cash pools for your in-house bank accounts of Advanced Payment Management.

## Prerequisites

- To use this app, you must first define a number range for cash pools in the configuration activity **Define Number Range for Cash Pools**.
- If you want to restrict the access to cash pools of this category, you can define authorization groups for cash pools in the configuration activity **Define Authorization Groups for Cash Pools**. The authorization groups can be used to restrict the access to cash pools and cash position data in the following apps:
  - Manage Cash Pools (Version 2)**
  - Short-Term Cash Positioning**
- In-house cash pools can be relevant for you, if you are using the Advanced Payment Management. Therefore, you must have set up the configuration and master data for Advanced Payment Management, such as the definition of bank areas, in-house bank accounts, and so on. In addition, the in-house bank area owner must be defined as business partner in the role **Inhouse Bank Area Owner**. In the business partner master data (in the **Maintain Business Partner** app) on the **Control** tab (available for this role), you must assign the in-house bank area to the business partner.

To ensure, that you can only assign in-house bank accounts (bank account contract type **In-House Bank Account**) to the in-house cash pools, you must enable bank account contract types in Cash Management. Otherwise also bank accounts with bank account contract type **Current Account** can be assigned to in-house cash pools.

### i Note

You enable bank account contract types in configuration activity **Define Basic Settings** (Cash Management) in your configuration environment by selecting the **Enable Bank Account Contract Types** checkbox.

## Key Features

You can use this app to do the following:

- You can define cash pools and in-house bank cash pools. You define the kind of cash pool by assigning the relevant service provider:
  - For the classic bank cash pools, you must choose the service provider **Bank - Time Dependent**.  
You can assign bank accounts with bank account contract type **Current Account** or **Other** to these cash pools.
  - For in-house bank cash pools, you must choose the service provider **In-House Bank - Time Dependent**.
    - You can assign bank accounts with bank account contract type **In-House Bank Account** or **Current Account**. But if you have enabled bank account contract types, the system ensures that you can only assign bank accounts with bank account contract type **In-House Bank Account** to these cash pools.
    - You can only assign bank accounts of the selected in-house bank area owner. These are the bank accounts of the bank and bank country/region that are assigned to the bank area.
- You can define, display, change, and delete cash pools.
- You can delete the assignment of a subaccount to a cash pool.
- You can display lists of cash pools.

The app provides you with an overview of all cash pools. You can use the search criteria to restrict the list to certain cash pools.

- From this list, you can open a cash pool to display, edit, or delete it.
- From the list, you can choose the **Create** button to create a new cash pool.
- In the **Multi Currencies** column, you can see at a glance whether subaccounts with a different currency to the header account currency have been assigned to the cash pool.
- In the **Currency** column, you can see the currency of the header account of a cash pool.
- The following rules apply to the assignment of bank accounts to cash pools:
  - The assignment of the bank account to the cash pool is time dependent.
  - For each cash pool, you assign one header account and one or more subaccounts.
  - You cannot change the header account of a cash pool.
  - A bank account can be assigned to cash pools as a header account only once at a given point in time.
  - A bank account can be assigned to cash pools as a subaccount only once at a given point in time.
  - A bank account can be assigned to both a cash pool as a header account and another cash pool as a subaccount at the same time.
  - You must not assign a bank account as a subaccount that is already assigned as a header account in a cash pool within the same cash pool hierarchy.

### Example:

- Cash pool 1: Header account = Bank account A with Subaccount = Bank account B
- Cash pool 2: Header account = Bank account B with Subaccount = Bank account C
- Cash pool 3: Header account = Bank account C with Subaccount = Bank account A -> This assignment is not allowed because bank account A is already the header account in cash pool 1.

- The currency of the subaccounts can differ from the currency of the header account.
- For each bank account, you can define an additional account name. The account name serves as an alternative to the bank account numbers.
- If you leave the entry process for a cash pool without saving your data, you can keep your entries as a draft version or discard your entries. The editing status of the cash pool reflects the state of the cash pool in terms of the processing cycle. The following editing statuses are available:
  - **All**  
Displays all cash pools.
  - **Own Draft**  
Displays your own cash pools that you have started creating/changing but not finished.
  - **Locked by Another User**  
Displays all cash pools that another user has started creating/changing and is currently editing.  
The cash pools with this editing status are locked.
  - **Unsaved Changes by Another User**  
Displays cash pools that another user has started editing but not finished. The cash pool can be opened for editing.  
(The lock has expired, somebody else's draft version is still available.)
  - **Unchanged**  
Displays all cash pools that are not in draft status.

## Supported Device Types

- Desktop
- Tablet

## Related Information

- [Defining Cash Pools Using the 'Manage Cash Pools \(Version 2\)' App](#)
- [Display Cash Pool Hierarchies](#)
- [Define Cash Position Profiles](#)
- [Short-Term Cash Positioning](#)
- [Internal Cash Pooling](#)

## Manage Liquidity Item Hierarchies

With this app, you can create and edit liquidity item hierarchies and their validity timeframes. You can add new timeframes under existing hierarchy IDs to help you prepare for planned changes. You can also quickly create hierarchies based on existing hierarchies in the event of structure changes or changing reporting needs.

## Key Features

You can use this app to do the following:

- Create and edit liquidity item hierarchies

- Create and use multiple timeframes under specific hierarchy IDs
- Edit and save hierarchies in both draft and active status
- Edit your hierarchies quickly and easily by using a variety of in-built features, including Fast Entry, copy and paste, and drag and drop
- Export your hierarchies to spreadsheets

## Supported Device Types

- Desktop
- Tablet

## More Information

- The SAP Fiori apps reference library has details about the content necessary for giving users access to an app on the [SAP Fiori launchpad](#). The SAP Fiori apps reference library is available here: <https://fioriappslibrary.hana.ondemand.com>

To see this app's Fiori content, search for the app. Then select SAP S/4HANA as the product. On the [Implementation Information](#) tab, select the correct release. The details are in the [Configuration](#) section.

## Related Information

[Managing Liquidity Item Hierarchies](#)

## Manage Memo Records

Create, delete, archive, and reactivate memo records centrally.

### Use

With this app, you can create memo records centrally for expected cash flows that are not yet generated in the system. The memo records are then displayed in the cash management apps, such as [Cash Flow Analyzer](#) and [Check Cash Flow Items](#). You can also use this app to view, change, and delete the intraday memo records that are generated automatically from imported intraday bank statements.

### Key Features

- Display a list of memo records with active or inactive status.
- Create memo records manually.

You can enter details, such as company code, value date, bank account, liquidity item and so on.

Alternatively, you can immediately access the SAP CoPilot, which enables you to create a memo record without leaving your current Fiori screen, using the [Create Memo Record](#) app.

- Create multiple memo records in one go by copying or distributing a memo record.

To do so, open an existing memo record, and then choose the [Copy](#) or [Distribute](#) button. You can specify the number of memo records to be created, the recurrence pattern for creation, and whether to consider a working calendar when creating memo records.

- Offset the amount of a memo record to another bank account.

Please note this function only works for memo records that have the certainty level **MEMO**.

To do so, create a memo record with information of the offsetting bank account, and then choose the **Account Transfer** to create an offsetting memo record.

- Convert the status between **Active** and **Inactive**.

- Active memo records can be converted into archived records, which are then no longer displayed in cash management reports.
- Inactive records, which are either archived manually, or expired automatically, can be converted back to active records. For example, you can retrieve the archived records.

- Delete memo records that are no longer valid.

The deleted records are no longer displayed in cash management reports.

- Auto expire memo records when the expiration date arrives.

### Example

You create a memo record for an outgoing payment. You set the planned payment date as the expiration date. After this date, the memo record is automatically expired. You can see this change from the status, which is changed from **Active** to **Inactive**.

- Store the memo record data in One Exposure from Operations, which will be consumed in other cash management apps, such as [Cash Flow Analyzer](#) and [Check Cash Flow Items](#).

## Supported Device Types

- Desktop

## More Information

- The SAP Fiori apps reference library has details about the content necessary for giving users access to an app on the **SAP Fiori launchpad**. The SAP Fiori apps reference library is available here: <https://fioriappslibrary.hana.ondemand.com>

To see this app's Fiori content, search for the app. Then select SAP S/4HANA as the product. On the **Implementation Information** tab, select the correct release. The details are in the **Configuration** section.

## Related Information

[Create Memo Records \(SAP CoPilot\)](#)

[Create Cash Trade Requests](#)

## Create Memo Records (SAP CoPilot)

CoPilot app to create memo records

The digital assistant SAP CoPilot enables you to create memo records for expected cash flows using the app Create Memo Record, without leaving your current Fiori screen. With this app, you can perform the following tasks if you have the business role cash manager (SAP\_BR\_CASH\_MANAGER):

- Create a new memo record

## Creating a Memo Record

1. Open SAP CoPilot and click **New**.
2. Select the plus sign and then choose **Create New Object**.
3. Choose **Create Memo Record**.
4. Enter relevant data to create a memo record and then click **Create**.

## Create Cash Trade Requests

In the **Manage Memo Records** app, you can create cash trade requests with an approval process, which will later generate trade requests in the SAP Trading Platform Integration. The SAP Trading Platform Integration application connects your SAP S/4HANA system to an external trading platform. It supports the end-to-end business process with which trade requests created in your SAP S/4HANA are sent to an external trading platform and with which, trades are then concluded on the external trading platform and automatically transferred through the SAP Trading Platform Integration application to your Treasury and Risk Management system.

## Key Features

You can use this feature to:

- Navigate from the **Cash Flow Analyzer** app to create cash trade requests as a receiver or a sender.
- Create a cash trade request for a specific financial instrument, with a specific traded amount. You create cash trade requests for the following financial instruments:
  - Foreign exchange, including FX spot, FX forward, and FX swap
  - Money market for fixed-term deposit or loan
- Submit the cash trade request for approval. Another authorized user can then release or reject the cash trade request.

A released cash trade request is automatically transferred to the SAP Trading Platform Integration application to generate a trade request.

A rejected cash trade request can be edited and submitted again for approval.

- Monitor the cash trade request status.

A cash trade request can acquire the status of its associated trade request.

Split and partial fulfillment is supported in cash trade requests. When a trade request is split and partially fulfilled, the original cash trade request also acquires the status **In Process**. After the trade request is fully fulfilled, the cash trade request also acquires the status **Completed**.

## Related Information

[Manage Memo Records](#)

[Cash Flow Analyzer](#)

## Manage Memo Records 2.0

With this app, you can create memo records for actual and forecasted cash flows that are not yet generated in the system. The memo records are then displayed in the cash management apps to provide an up-to-date and accurate view of your organization's cash position, such as [Short-Term Cash Positioning](#), [Cash Flow Analyzer](#), and [Check Cash Flow Items](#).

## Prerequisites

To use this app, make sure you have made the following settings in SAP Customizing under [Financial Supply Chain Management](#) ➤ [Cash and Liquidity Management](#) ➤ [Cash Management](#) ➤ [Memo Records 2.0](#):

- [Define Memo Record Types](#): Define memo record types and assign these types to predefined memo record categories.
- [Define Number Range for Memo Records](#): Define a number range for memo records.
- (Optional) [Manage Field Status Groups for Memo Records](#): Create field status groups for different types of memo record.

## Key Features

You can use this app to do the following:

- Create memo records manually

You can also import memo records from a spreadsheet using the [Import Memo Records 2.0](#) app.

- Manage different types of memo records for both forecasted and actual cash flows
- Implement dynamic field status controls based on user-defined memo record types and predefined memo record categories
- Delete memo records that are no longer valid

The deleted records are no longer displayed in cash management reports.

## Memo Record Categories

SAP has predefined the following memo record categories:

Memo Record Categories				
Memo Record Category	Use	Created From	Source Application	Certainty Level
Residual Forecast	In cash flow reconciliation, you can create memo records of this category to represent residual flows that need to be considered in the next round of cash flows reconciliation. For more information, see <a href="#">Reconcile Cash Flows - Intraday</a> .	Bank statement reconciliation	MRRFC	RFC
Planned Item	If you have generic plans for forecasted cash	• Manual creation	MRMM2	MEMO

Memo Record Category	Use	Created From	Source Application	Certainty Level
	flows, you can enter them as planned items.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>File import</li> </ul>		
Payment Advice	If you already know the bank information of a forecasted cash flow, you can enter it as a payment advice.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Manual creation</li> <li>File import</li> </ul>	MRMM2	MEMO
Actual Cash Memo	You can create cash flows that have the certainty level <b>Actual Flow (ACTUAL)</b> .	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Manual creation</li> <li>File import</li> </ul>	MRACT	ACTUAL

## Feature Comparison for Classic Memo Records and Memo Records 2.0

Compared to the classic memo records, memo records 2.0 provide a more flexible and efficient way for memo record management. The key benefits include:

- Efficient handling of memo record creation via import jobs
- Dynamic field status control and lifecycle management based on predefined memo record categories and user-defined memo record types
- Flexible use of memo records in representing actual and forecasted cash flows
- Transparent data control with separate database table and source tracking
- Finer granularity in reporting with attributes such as source application and certainty level

The table below provides a feature comparison between the classic memo records and memo records 2.0.

Feature Comparison

	Memo Records	Memo Records 2.0
Apps	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><a href="#">Manage Memo Records</a></li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><a href="#">Manage Memo Records 2.0</a></li> <li><a href="#">Import Memo Records 2.0</a></li> <li><a href="#">View Import Jobs for Memo Records 2.0</a></li> </ul>
Data storage	The memo record data is stored in the One Exposure from Operations hub.	The memo record data is stored in its own database table, which enables the tracking of memo record sources.
Field status control	Not supported	Supported You can use the Customizing activity <a href="#">Manage Field Status Groups for Memo Records</a> to implement field status controls for different types of memo record.
Creation of cash trade requests	Supported	Not supported
Mass import of memo records	Not supported	Supported

	Memo Records	Memo Records 2.0
Creation of actual cash flows	Not supported	Supported
Memo record categories	Not supported	Supported For more information , see the “Memo Record Categories” section.
Source applications	All memo records are shown under the source application CMMRD	Different types of memo record have different source applications. For more information , see the “Memo Record Categories” section.
Certainty level	Except for cash trade requests (certainty level CSHRQ), all memo records are shown under the certainty level MEMO	Different types of memo record have different certainty levels. For more information , see the “Memo Record Categories” section.
Integration with intraday bank statements	Supported	Not supported
Integration with Advanced Payment Management	Supported	Not supported

## Supported Device Types

- Desktop
- Tablet

## Related Information

[Import Memo Records 2.0](#)

## Import Memo Records 2.0

App ID: F6124

With this app, you can schedule jobs to import memo records from XSLX files. The app only works with memo records 2.0.

## Prerequisites

To use this app, make sure you have made the following settings in SAP Customizing under Financial Supply Chain Management Cash and Liquidity Management Cash Management Memo Records 2.0:

- **Define Memo Record Types:** Define memo record types and assign these types to predefined memo record categories.
- **Define Number Range for Memo Records:** Define a number range for memo records.
- **Define Number Range for Memo Record Imports:** Define a number range for memo record imports.
- (Optional) **Manage Field Status Groups for Memo Records:** Create field status groups for different types of memo record.

To enable notifications for this app, proceed as follows:

You can then receive Fiori launchpad notifications once an import job is finished.

1. In SAP Customizing, go to **SAP Netweaver** > **Notification Channel** > **Notification Channel Provider Enablement** > **Administration** > **Notification Provider Settings** > **Manage Notification Providers**.
2. Add an entry for the notification provider **FCLM\_MR\_MMRD\_IMPORT\_NOTIF\_PROV** and set the **Is Active** indicator for this entry.

## Key Features

You can use this app to do the following:

- Download templates for memo record imports

You must use the predefined template to prepare the memo record data you are about to import. For each import job, you can create only memo records that have the same memo record type.

Please note the following when preparing the import file based on the downloaded template:

- Specify a valid memo record type for the memo records to be imported.
- Make sure you enter valid values for all mandatory fields that starts with an asterisk (\*).
- Create jobs for memo record imports
- Monitor statuses of your memo record import jobs

An import job may have one of the following statuses:

- **In Process**
- **Uploaded Successfully**
- **Upload Failed**
- **Obsolete**

For failed jobs, you can check the log details to find out why the job has failed. You can mark failed jobs as obsolete with the **Mark as Obsolete** button to indicate that these jobs require no further action.

## Supported Device Types

- Desktop
- Tablet

## Related Information

[Manage Memo Records 2.0](#)

## View Import Jobs for Memo Records 2.0

App ID: F7513

With this app, you can view jobs for importing memo records 2.0.

## Prerequisites

To use this app, make sure you have made the following settings in SAP Customizing under **Financial Supply Chain Management** **Cash and Liquidity Management** **Cash Management** **Memo Records 2.0** :

- **Define Memo Record Types:** Define memo record types and assign these types to predefined memo record categories.
- **Define Number Range for Memo Records:** Define a number range for memo records.
- **Define Number Range for Memo Record Imports:** Define a number range for memo record imports.
- (Optional) **Manage Field Status Groups for Memo Records:** Create field status groups for different types of memo record.

## Key Features

You can use this app to do the following:

- Search for jobs for importing memo records.
- Check job status, planned start time, the person who created the job, and other information about the job.

To create an import job for memo records, please use the **Import Memo Records 2.0** app.

## Supported Device Types

- Desktop
- Tablet

## Related Information

[Manage Memo Records 2.0](#)

[Import Memo Records 2.0](#)

## Manage Payment Approval Rules

App ID: F6959

With this app, you can create, change, display, and delete payment approval rules. Using the payment approval rule, you define how authorized representatives are allowed to approve payments. This is achieved by defining payment approval rules as an approval pattern for approver groups. In detail, you define in the payment approval rule how many people (1 or 2) from which approver groups can approve which payment amount. After you have defined payment approval rules, you can assign a payment approval rule to your powers of attorney in the **Manage Powers of Attorney for Banking Transactions** app and assign an approver group to each authorized representative there.

### i Note

You can only define the payment approval rules and assign them to your powers of attorney to document them in the system. However, the payment approval rules are not checked during the payment processes in the system.

## Key Features

This app provides the following key features:

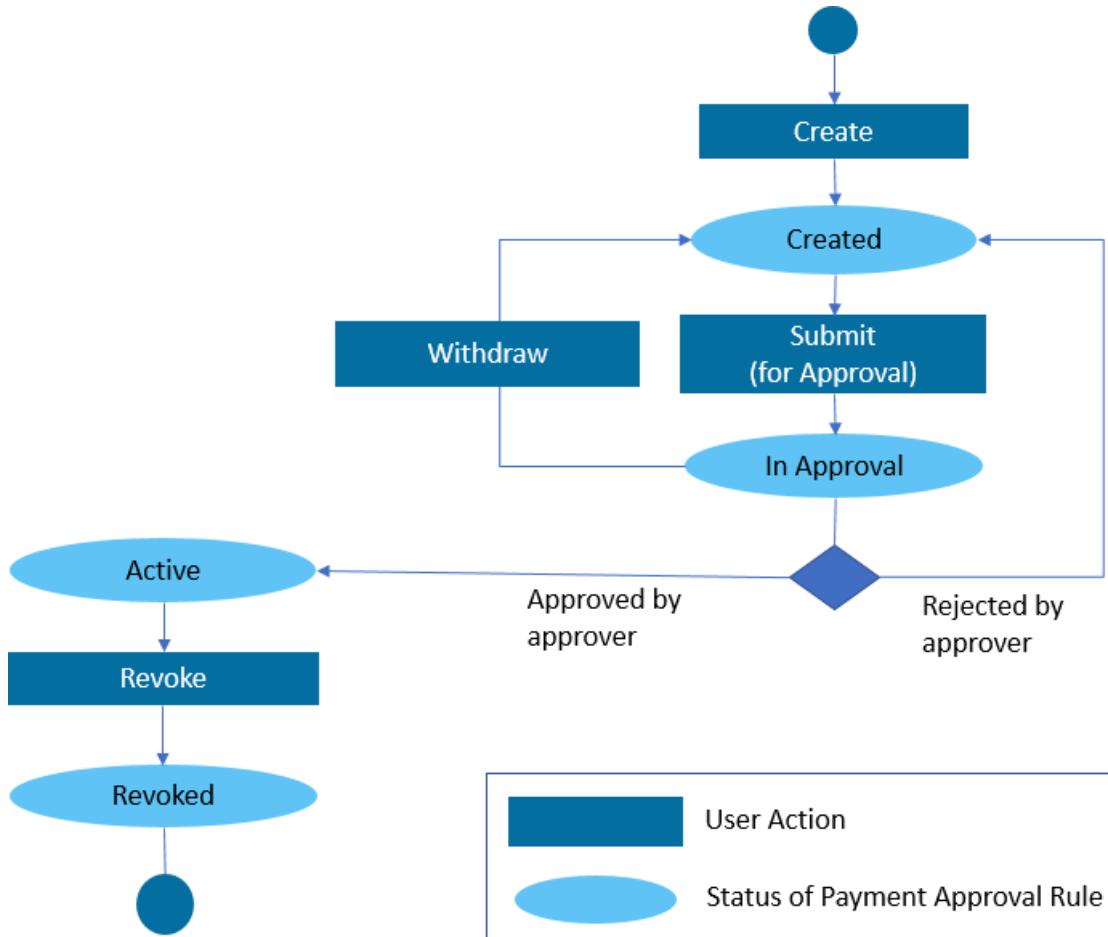
- Create and process payment approval rules.

- Display lists of payment approval rules

The app provides you with an overview of all payment approval rules. You can use the search criteria to restrict the list to certain payment approval rules.

- From this list, you can open a payment approval rule to display or process it.
- From the list, you can choose the **Create** button to create a new payment approval rule.
- From the list, you can select a payment approval rule with the status **Create** and delete the payment approval rule.

- Statuses and status transitions of payment approval rules



A payment approval rule always has a status. The status is set by the system according to the actions executed by the user. You cannot set the status manually. The possible statuses of a payment approval rule are:

Status of Payment Approval Rule	Explanation
<b>Created</b>	<p>The payment approval rule has been created.</p> <p>You can perform the following functions on payment approval rules with this status:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>◦ Display the payment approval rule</li> <li>◦ You can edit the payment approval rule and make any necessary changes.</li> <li>◦ You can delete the payment approval rule.</li> <li>◦ Once you have finished entering data for the payment approval rule, you can submit the payment approval rule for approval.</li> </ul>

Status of Payment Approval Rule	Explanation
In Approval	<p>The data has been entered and submitted to another user for approval.</p> <p>You can perform the following functions on payment approval rules with this status:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>○ Display the payment approval rule.</li> <li>○ You can withdraw a payment approval rule after it has been submitted for approval. You use this function if you have accidentally submitted the payment approval rule for approval, but you still need to make changes to the payment approval rule. After you withdraw the payment approval rule from approval, the payment approval rule has the status <b>Created</b> again.</li> <li>○ The approver can check the data and then either approve or reject the payment approval rule, whereby the approver must be a different user to the user who has submitted the payment approval rule for approval. This ensures that the principle of dual control is fulfilled.</li> </ul>
Active	<p>Approved payment approval rules get the status <b>Active</b>.</p> <p>You can perform the following functions on payment approval rules with this status:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>○ Display the payment approval rule</li> <li>○ You can assign the payment approval rule to a power of attorney in the <a href="#">Manage Powers of Attorney for Banking Transactions</a> app.</li> <li>○ You can revoke an active payment approval rule. When you revoke the payment approval rule, it gets the status <b>Revoked</b>.</li> </ul>
Revoked	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>○ Revoked payment approval rules cannot be assigned to powers of attorney.</li> <li>○ You can delete a revoked power of attorney if the payment approval rule is not assigned to any power of attorney.</li> </ul>

## Tabs Structuring the Payment Approval Rule

- Header

The header data of the payment approval rule consists of the following fields:

- **Rule ID**
- **Rule Description**
- **Status**

## Status of the payment approval rule

- o **Default Limit Currency**

The default limit currency of the payment approval rule is relevant for the default limit amounts of the specific rule items.

- Approval Rule Details

Provides an overview table of the payment approval rule items of the payment approval rule. A payment approval rule item is part of the payment approval rule and defines details of the payment approval rule. A payment approval rule can contain multiple payment approval rule items that differ from each other, for example, by the payment amount, the approval categories, or the approver groups.

From this table, you can create a new payment approval rule item and you can navigate to the detail screen for a specific approval rule item.

A payment approval rule item covers the following settings:

- o **Approval Rule Item** (shown in the overview table)

Name or number identifying the approval rule item.

- o **Approval Category** (shown in the overview table)

The approval category defines how many persons are needed to approve a payment. The following categories are available:

- **Two Persons Together**

In this case, the payment must be approved by two persons.

- **Single Person**

In this case, the payment can be approved by only one person.

- o **Unlimited** (shown in the overview table)

If this indicator is set, the rule item grants unlimited payment approval authorization to the assigned approver groups. In this case, you must not enter any limit amounts in the rule item.

- o **Default Limit Amount** (shown in the overview table)

The default limit amount of a payment approval rule item is the limit amount in the default limit currency. You must enter a default limit amount in the default limit currency.

### i Note

If you have set the **Unlimited Authority** indicator, you are not allowed to define a limit amount.

- o Assigned approver groups (only shown in the details of the payment approval rule item)

Assign the relevant approver groups to which the authorized representatives must belong in order to approve payments according to this payment approval rule. The following rules to assign approver groups to the payment approval rule apply:

- If the approval category of the payment approval rule is set to **Single Person**, you must assign one approver group.
- If the approval category of the payment approval rule is set to **Two Persons**, you can assign two approver groups.

- You can assign two different approver groups. In this case, one of the approvers must belong to one group and the other must belong to the other approver group.
- However, it is also possible to assign the same approver group twice. In this case, the two approvers must belong to the same approver group.

Approver groups are system defined groups that you can use within a payment approval rule to specify which authorized representatives are allowed to approve payment. Three approver groups (**Group A**, **Group B**, and **Group C**) are available. In the power of attorney, you must assign each authorized representative to an approver group.

- Limit amounts in other currencies than the default limit currency (only shown in the details of the payment approval rule item)

## Supported Device Types

- Desktop
- Tablet

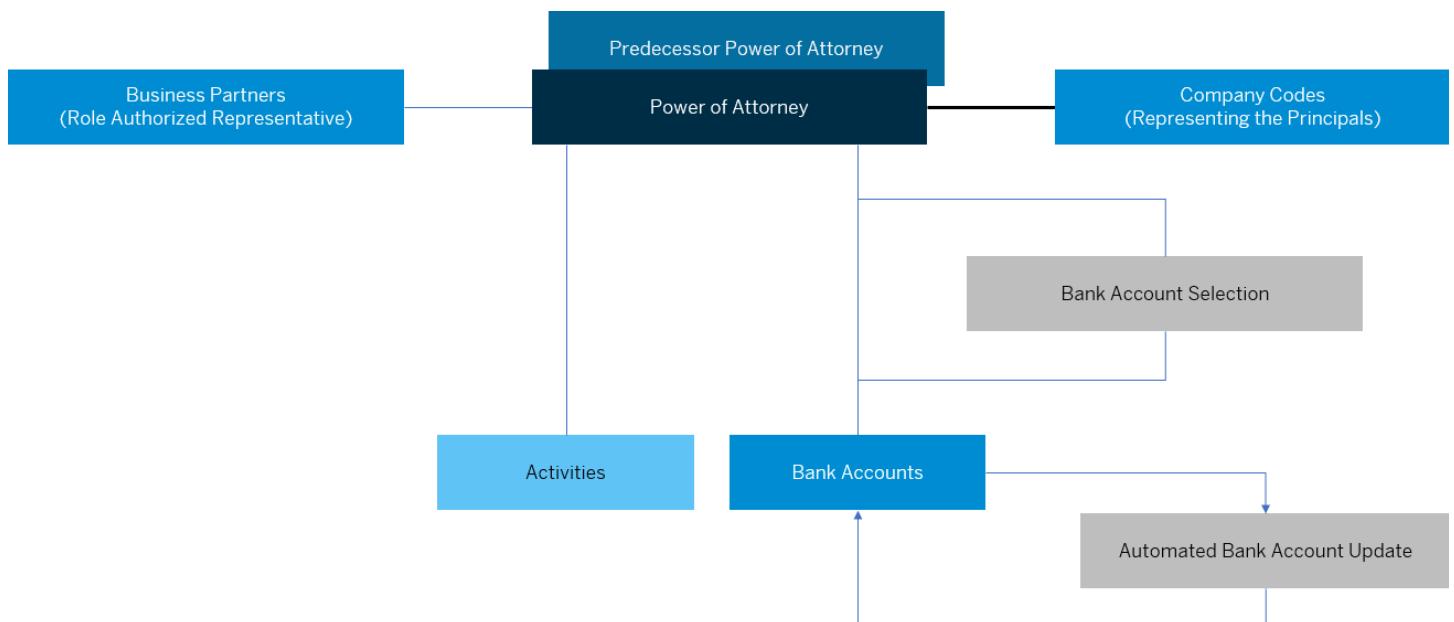
## Related Information

[Creating and Processing Payment Approval Rules](#)

# Manage Powers of Attorney for Banking Transactions

App ID: F5742

With this app, you can represent and manage the powers of attorney for banking transactions for your company codes. A power of attorney for banking transactions represents the legal power of attorney that a company has granted to one or more persons to carry out banking transactions on behalf of the company. In the power of attorney, you assign the principals, the authorized representatives, the payment approval rule, the bank accounts, and the permitted activities.



## Key Features

Create and process powers of attorney

For more information, see also:

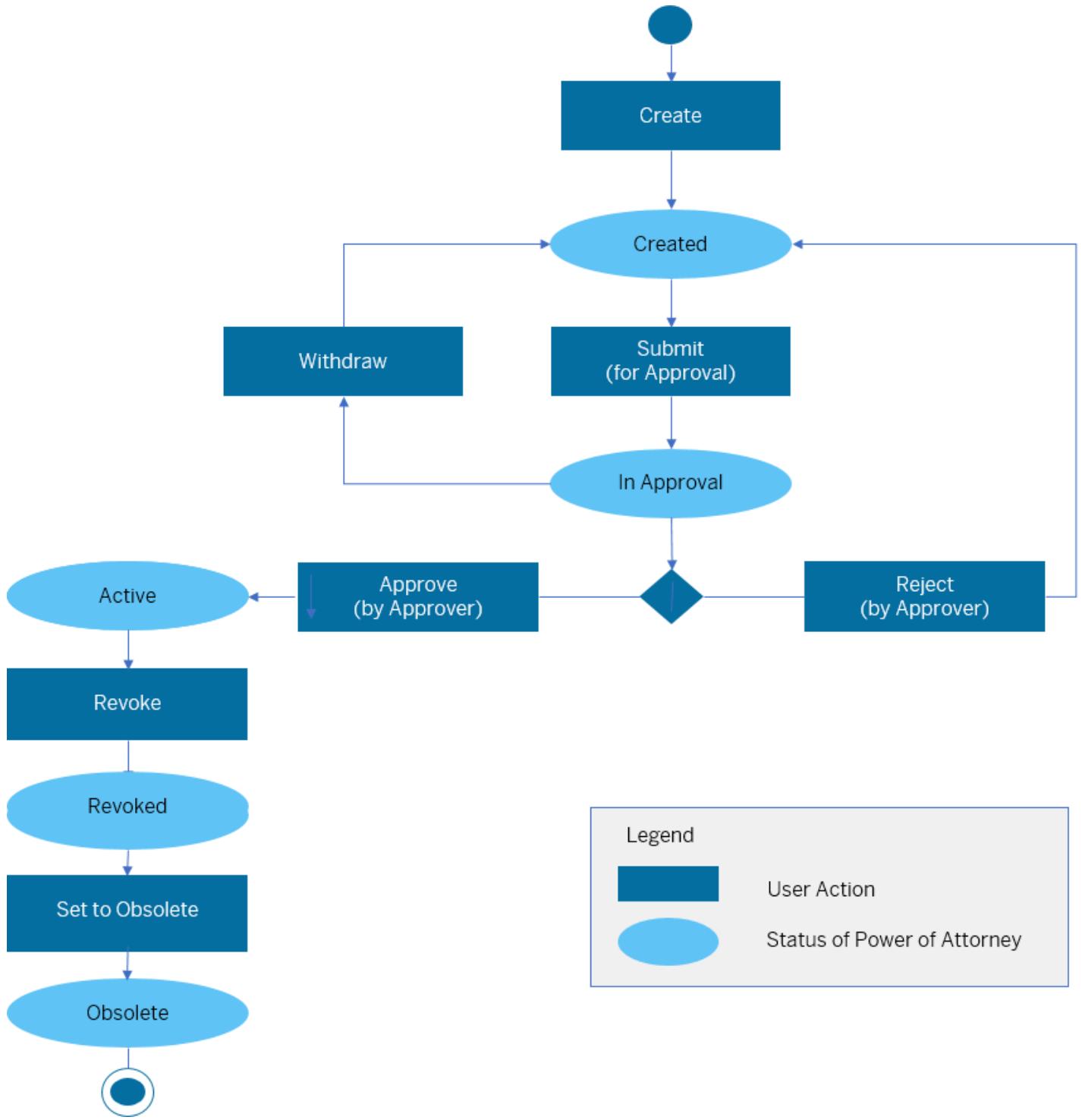
- [Creating Powers of Attorney](#)
- [Processing Powers of Attorney](#)

### List of powers of attorney

The app provides you with an overview of all powers of attorney that you are authorized to see. You can use the search criteria to restrict the list to certain powers of attorney.

- From this list, you can open a power of attorney to display or process it.
- From the list, you can choose the **Create** button to create a new power of attorney.
- From the list, you can select a power of attorney with the status **Created** and delete the power of attorney.

### Statuses and status transitions of powers of attorney



A power of attorney always has a status. The status is set by the system according to the actions performed by the user. You cannot set the status manually. A power of attorney can have one of the following statuses:

Status of Powers of Attorney	Explanation
Created	<p>The power of attorney has been created.</p> <p>You can perform the following functions on powers of attorney with this status:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Display the power of attorney</li> <li>• You can edit the power of attorney and make any necessary changes.</li> <li>• You can retrieve bank accounts.</li> </ul>

Status of Powers of Attorney	Explanation
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• You can delete the power of attorney.</li> <li>• Once you have finished entering data for the power of attorney, you can submit the power of attorney for approval.</li> </ul>
In Approval	<p>The data has been entered and submitted to another user for approval.</p> <p>You can perform the following functions on powers of attorney with this status:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Display the power of attorney.</li> <li>• You can withdraw a power of attorney after it has been submitted for approval. You use this function if you have accidentally submitted the power of attorney for approval but you still need to make changes to the power of attorney. After you withdraw the power of attorney from approval, the power of attorney has the status <b>Created</b> again.</li> <li>• The approver can check the data and then either approve or reject the power of attorney, whereby the approver must be a different user to the user who has submitted the power of attorney for approval. This ensures that the principle of dual control is fulfilled.</li> </ul>
Active	<p>Approved powers of attorney get the status <b>Active</b>.</p> <p>You can perform the following functions on powers of attorney with this status:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Display the power of attorney</li> <li>• You can retrieve bank accounts to update the assigned bank accounts.</li> <li>• You can edit the valid-to date.</li> <li>• You can implement the power of attorney for the different channels through which the power of attorney can be exercised. The <b>Implement Powers of Attorney for Banking Transactions</b> app supports you during this process.</li> <li>• You can revoke the power of attorney.</li> </ul>
Revoked	<p>You revoke the power of attorney in the following cases:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• The power of attorney is expired or must be revoked due to any other reason.</li> <li>• If you replaced the power of attorney by a successor power of attorney, you must revoke the predecessor power of attorney during the replacement process.</li> </ul> <p>When you revoke the power of attorney, the implementation of the power of attorney automatically gets the status <b>Power of Attorney Revoked</b>.</p>
Obsolete	<p>You can set a power of attorney to <b>Obsolete</b> if the following conditions are fulfilled:</p>

Status of Powers of Attorney	Explanation
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• The power of attorney has the status <b>Revoked</b>.</li> <li>• The implementation belonging to the power of attorney has the status <b>Replaced</b> or <b>Revoked</b>.</li> <li>• All correspondence objects to which this power of attorney is assigned as the original power of attorney must be assigned to an implementation that has the status <b>Replaced</b> or <b>Revoked</b>.</li> </ul> <p>Powers of attorney with this status can be destroyed using the destruction object <b>FCLM_POA</b>. For more information, see also <a href="#">Destruction of Powers of Attorney for Banking Transactions Using FCLM_POA DESTRUCTION</a>.</p>

## Automated bank account update

For active powers of attorney, the bank account list is automatically updated when bank accounts in the list are closed. If the bank account type is a selection condition for the assigned bank accounts, changing the bank account type of an assigned bank account can also cause the bank account to be removed from the power of attorney if the new bank account type is not relevant for the power of attorney. For powers of attorney with the bank account assignment type **Via Selection; Existing and Future Bank Accounts**, other bank accounts that also correspond to the selection conditions are added.

You can set the bank account removal timestamp so that closed bank accounts and bank accounts that are no longer relevant for the power of attorney due to the changed bank account type are removed from the power of attorney. Removed bank accounts are still shown in the assigned bank account list.

The success and error messages generated when the bank accounts of powers of attorney are updated are saved in the application log. (Log object: **FCLM\_BAM**, subobject: **UPDATE\_POA**). Use the [Display Bank Account Logs](#) app to review the messages.

## Authorization concepts

- You can restrict to specific company codes which powers of attorney can be displayed and for which powers of attorney data can be entered by individual users. This is possible by using the authorization groups for powers of attorney.
- The approval step ensures adherence to the principle of dual control during the input process of powers of attorney, since the approval step must always be performed by another user.

## Tabs Structuring the Power of Attorney Data

### Header data

- Power of attorney ID
- Power of attorney description
- Authorization group
- Valid-from date

This is the date from which the authorized representatives assigned to the power of attorney are legally authorized to use the power of attorney.

- Valid-to date

This is the date until which the authorized representatives assigned to the power of attorney are legally authorized to use the power of attorney. After this date, the authorized representatives are not legally authorized anymore.

- You do not need to enter the valid-to date during the creation process.
- When you revoke a power of attorney, its valid-to date is automatically set to the revocation date if the valid-to date has not been provided so far or if it is in the future.
- Related Implementation

In this field, you can see the implementation created for this power of attorney. This assignment is made automatically by the system, after you created the implementation. The system allows you here to jump to the implementation in the [Implement Powers of Attorney for Banking Transactions](#) app.

- Status of the power of attorney
- Payment approval rule

The payment approval rule assigned to a power of attorney determines how authorized representatives are allowed to approve payments. In detail, the payment approval rule governs how many people (1 or 2) from which approver groups can approve which payment amount. The payment approval rule consists of header data and one or multiple rule items.

Payment approval rules are defined in the [Manage Payment Approval Rules](#) app.

- Bank account assignment type

You use this indicator to control the assignment of bank accounts to a power of attorney. The following options are available:

- **Via Selection: Only Existing Bank Accounts**

If you choose this option, the existing bank accounts at the activation date are assigned to the power of attorney according to the selection criteria you enter. During the lifetime of the power of attorney, no additional bank accounts can be assigned to the power of attorney. During the automated bank account update and when you retrieve the bank accounts manually, closed bank accounts and bank accounts whose bank account type has been switched to a bank account type that is not relevant for the power of attorney are removed.

- **Via Selection: Existing and Future Bank Accounts**

If you choose this option, the bank accounts are assigned to the power of attorney according to the selection criteria you enter. In addition, all bank accounts that match the selection criteria in the future will be assigned automatically during the lifetime of the power of attorney. During the automated bank account update and when you retrieve the bank accounts manually, the system removes closed bank accounts and bank accounts whose bank account type has been switched to a bank account type that is not relevant for the power of attorney, and it assigns additional bank accounts that fulfill the selection conditions.

## Principals

The principal of a power of attorney is the company that granted the power of attorney to one or more persons (authorized representatives). In the system, the company codes represent the principals of the powers of attorney. Therefore, you must assign the relevant company codes to the power of attorney on the [Principals](#) tab.

### **i Note**

- You can assign company codes only to the power of attorney for which you are authorized via the authorization group.
- Only bank accounts of these company codes can be assigned to the power of attorney.

## Bank Accounts

On this tab, you must assign the bank accounts for which the authorized representatives are authorized. Only bank accounts of the company codes assigned on the **Principals** tab can be assigned.

- **Bank Account Selection**

In this section, you must add the selection conditions to retrieve the bank accounts. You can add multiple selection conditions. Only bank accounts that fulfill the added selection conditions are assigned to the power of attorney.

The following selection fields are available:

- **Bank Account Technical ID**
- **Bank Account Type**
- **Bank Country/Region**
- **Bank Key**
- **Currency**

**i Note**

General rules for bank account retrieval based on bank account selections of a selection group:

- The company code of the bank account needs to be assigned to the power of attorney.
- The bank account must have the status **Active**.
- For the selection conditions for different selection fields, the bank accounts searched for must fulfill all the different conditions for one selection group (logical conjunction).
- If you enter different selection conditions for the same selection field, the bank accounts searched for only need to fulfill one of the conditions for the specific selection field (disjunction).
- If a selection field is not used, this means that all values are relevant.

Use the selection groups to enter more complex selections for bank accounts. Selection groups are sets of bank account selections that are independent of each other. This means that the selection conditions of each group are applied independently of the conditions of the other groups.

Within a group, bank accounts are retrieved according to the general rules for the bank account retrieval based on bank account selections of a selection group. The bank accounts determined for the respective groups are all assigned to the power of attorney. This means that an active bank account is assigned to a power of attorney if it fulfills the bank account selections of at least one group.

Enter a number (1–9) in the **Selection Group** field.

- If you enter a selection group ID for at least one selection, you must also enter a group ID for each of the other selections.
- If you don't specify a group ID for any of the bank account selections, the selections are treated as if they were all in one group.

- **Retrieve Bank Accounts**

You can retrieve the bank accounts for a power of attorney with the status **Created** or **Active**. Choose the **Retrieve Bank Accounts** button. The system now searches for the active bank accounts that fulfill the entered selection conditions and assigns those bank accounts to the power of attorney.

During the bank account retrieval, the valid-from date and valid-to date of the power of attorney are considered:

- The closing date of the bank accounts must be after the valid-from date of the power of attorney, and the opening date of the bank accounts must be before the valid-to date of the power of attorney.
- If the valid-from date of the power of attorney lies in the past, bank accounts that fulfill the entered selection conditions that were active during the period between the valid-from date and the retrieval date are also assigned. In this case, the technical assignment date of the bank account to the power of attorney and the removal date of the bank account from the power of attorney are the same.
- If a bank account was activated after the valid-to date, it is not assigned to a power of attorney.

## i Note

If no selections have been entered, all bank accounts of the assigned company codes are retrieved and assigned to the power of attorney.

### • Assigned Bank Accounts

This area displays all bank accounts that match the selection conditions defined above. The assignment is made either after retrieving bank accounts or automatically when the power of attorney is saved.

For active powers of attorney, the bank account list is updated automatically when bank accounts in the list are closed. If the bank account type is a selection condition for the assigned bank accounts, changing the bank account type of an assigned bank account can also cause the bank account to be removed from the power of attorney if the new bank account type is not relevant for the power of attorney. For powers of attorney with the bank account assignment type **Via Selection; Existing and Future Bank Accounts**, new bank accounts that also correspond to the selection conditions are added.

You can set the bank account removal timestamp so that closed bank accounts and bank accounts that are no longer relevant for the power of attorney due to the changed bank account type are removed from the power of attorney. Removed bank accounts are still shown in the assigned bank account list.

## Authorized Representatives

### 1. Assign the authorized representatives

Authorized representatives are persons (usually employees) to whom your company has given power of attorney.

You assign authorized representatives by adding the relevant business partners with the role **Authorized Representative** to the power of attorney. You can assign multiple authorized representatives to a single power of attorney.

### 2. Also assign the relevant approver group for each authorized representative.

Approver groups are system-defined groups that you can use within a payment approval rule to specify which authorized representatives are allowed to approve payment. Three approver groups (A, B, and C) are available. In the power of attorney, you must assign each authorized representative to an approver group.

## Activities

Activities are banking transactions for which authorization has been granted. There are predefined activities in the system (such as SPAY **Approve Payments**), and users can define custom activities. You can assign the relevant activities for the power of attorney on this tab.

## Predecessor

If the power of attorney is the successor of an existing power of attorney, you must assign the predecessor power of attorney. The following rules apply for the predecessor power of attorney:

- The valid-from date of the predecessor power of attorney must be before the valid-from date of the new power of attorney.

- The valid-to date of the predecessor power of attorney must be one day before the valid-from date of the new power of attorney.

### i Note

If you have assigned as predecessor an active power of attorney that either has a valid-to date that is later than the valid-from date of the new power of attorney or does not have a valid-to date, the predecessor power of attorney is assigned to the new power of attorney and the valid-to date of the predecessor power of attorney remains unchanged initially. When the new power of attorney is activated later, the valid-to date of the predecessor power of attorney is set automatically to the day before the valid-from date of the new power of attorney.

## Attachments

You can upload PDF files, such as the text file of the power of attorney, as attachments to the power of attorney. The document type **SPA POA Attachments** of the DMS is also available for this purpose.

### i Note

- Do not upload a document that contains more personal data than is already stored in the power of attorney data as the retrieval of document management system-based attachments is not supported by the [Information Retrieval Framework](#).
- SAP strongly recommends using the specific document type for the power of attorney attachments (**SPA POA Attachments**), as this is the only way to ensure that attachments cannot be accessed by unauthorized users via the central [Manage Documents](#) app.
- You can define your own document type for powers of attorney using the [Define DMS Document Types](#) configuration activity available in your configuration environment.
- If you use the Third-Party Repository Integration with SAP S/4HANA Cloud of the Attachment Service, you can use the third-party repositories for storing the business documents. In this case, you have to ensure the data privacy and protection of the data in the business documents.

## Change History

Changes made to the authorized representatives and all status changes are documented in the change documents.

By default, the table shows the field in which a change was made, the new and the old values of the field, the user who made the change, and the timestamp of the change.

- You can add additional fields.
- You can also display the details for each change document.

## Change Documents

Changes made to the authorized representatives and all status changes are documented in the change documents. You can see the change documents for the power of attorney on the [Change History](#) tab.

### i Note

If you delete a power of attorney, the related change documents are not deleted. The change documents can only be deleted during the destruction of powers of attorney for banking transaction. For more information, see also [Destruction of Powers of Attorney for Banking Transactions Using FCLM POA DESTRUCTION](#).

## Supported Device Types

- Desktop
- Tablet

## Related Information

[Powers of Attorney for Banking Transactions](#)

[Terms for Powers of Attorney for Banking Transactions](#)

## Manage Workflows - For Bank Accounts

With this app, you can check the predefined workflow for maintaining bank accounts and configure workflows for bank account management according to your company's requirements.

### Key Features

- Check the predefined workflow for maintaining bank accounts
- Check workflow details, such as status, validity period, and preconditions for starting the workflow
- Create new workflows by copying existing ones

You can define workflow processes for bank account management according to your company's requirements by defining preconditions, step sequence, and recipients.

You can also define workflows or workflow steps that are to be automatically approved by setting preconditions such as change request creator, account type, company code, and so on.

- Activate and deactivate workflows
- Define an order for activated workflows

The system evaluates the order and the preconditions of each activated workflow to determine which workflow to trigger for different bank accounts and scenarios.

- Delete an existing but deactivated workflow.

## How to Extend Workflows in Bank Account Management Using Responsibility Rules (English Only)





[Open this video in a new window](#)

### i Note

Captions are available for **multiple languages**. Use the **CC** (Closed Captions) button in the video player to see which languages are supported.

You can also use the **Search within video** field to search for specific text in the English or German captions.

## Supported Device Types

- Desktop
- Tablet

## More Information

- The SAP Fiori apps reference library has details about the content necessary for giving users access to an app on the **SAP Fiori launchpad**. The SAP Fiori apps reference library is available here: <https://fioriappslibrary.hana.ondemand.com>

To see this app's Fiori content, search for the app. Then select SAP S/4HANA as the product. On the **Implementation Information** tab, select the correct release. The details are in the **Configuration** section.

## Related Information

[Defining Your Own Workflows](#)

## App Extensibility: Manage Workflows - For Bank Accounts

You can extend the **Manage Workflows - For Bank Accounts** app according to your business needs for different aspects. For this purpose, the following extensibility options are available:

## Custom Logic

With the **Custom Logic** tab in the **Custom Fields and Logic** app, you can create and maintain implementations of custom logic that can be used to enhance applications and change application behavior. You can implement custom logic for the following Business Add-Ins (BAdIs):

BAdI Description	BAdI ID	Business Context	Filter
Providing additional conditions for scenarios	SWF_WORKFLOW_CONDITION_DEF	Bank Account Master Data	scenario_id = WS78500050
Value evaluation of additional conditions for scenarios	SWF_WORKFLOW_CONDITION_EVAL		

## i Note

How your new custom fields are filled with data is up to you. They could, for example, be filled manually by business users, or through custom data transfer routines implemented in copying control.

For more information, see:

- [Creating Implementations](#)
- For more information about the individual BAdls, check the BAdl-specific documentation in the Custom Fields and Logic app: [Custom Fields and Logic](#) [Custom Logic](#) <your implementation> [BAdl Documentation](#) [View BAdl Documentation](#)

## Related Information

[Key User Extensibility](#)

[Creating Extension Items and Transporting Them](#)

# Manage Bank Account Balances

With this app, you can view bank account balances updated by imported end-of-day bank statements. You can also manually enter or import balances for bank accounts.

## Key Features

You can use this app to do the following:

- View bank account balances updated by imported end-of-day bank statements
 

The balances are stored by the bank statement dates contained in the bank statements. For each date, if there is already a balance entry updated by electronic bank statements, it is not allowed to update the balance via spreadsheet import or manual entry.
- Manually enter balances for bank accounts
- Import bank account balances from spreadsheets
- Check balance history for bank accounts

## Supported Balance Types

The following types of bank account balances are supported in this app:

Bank Account Balance Types

Balance Type	Definition	Relevant Apps
Ledger balance	The ledger balance is the closing balance reported by banks with bank statements.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <a href="#">Manage Bank Account Balances</a></li> </ul>
Value date balance	The value date balance is the interest-bearing closing balance for a particular day. It is calculated based on the ledger balance.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <a href="#">Manage Bank Account Balances</a></li> <li>• <a href="#">Define Cash Position Profiles</a></li> <li>• <a href="#">Short-Term Cash Positioning</a></li> </ul>

Balance Type	Definition	Relevant Apps
	For information about how the value date balance is calculated, see <a href="#">Balance Adjustments for Value Date Balances</a> .	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Foreign Bank Account Report</li> </ul>
Available balance	<p>The available balance indicates the funds available to the account holder for immediate use.</p> <p>Some banks, particularly those in the United States, provide the available balance in bank statements. For bank statements that do not provide it, the system creates a data entry for the available balance by copying the amount of the value date balance.</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Manage Bank Account Balances</li> <li>• Define Cash Position Profiles</li> <li>• Short-Term Cash Positioning</li> </ul>

## Balance Adjustments for Value Date Balances

To view the differences between the value date balance and the ledger balance, in the value date balance entry, choose the icon to navigate to the [Value Date Balance Details](#) page.

### i Note

The following multimedia content displays screens and interfaces in English only.

MM Bank Account  
9225900001

Bank Country/Region: CN (China)  
Bank Key: [1122334455 \(MM Bank\)](#)  
Bank Control Key:  
Currency: CNY (Chinese Yuan)

Company Code: ZMM1 (MM Company)  
Bank Account Status: 02 (Active)  
IBAN:  
Technical ID: 71431

House Bank: ZMTE  
House Bank Account: ZMTET

Balances

Statement Date	Closing Balance	
18.02.2022	1.800,00	CNY >
17.02.2022	1.200,00	CNY >

17.02.2022

Balance History

Closing Balance	Update Method	
1.000,00	CNY EBS (Electronic Bank Statement)	>
1.200,00	CNY EBS (Electronic Bank Statement)	>

### How to View Details of Value Date Balances

The value date balance is calculated based on the ledger balance of the day by excluding bank statement items whose value date comes after the bank statement date, including items from an earlier bank statement.

### Example:

You have imported the following bank statements:

- Bank statement A

Bank statement date: Jan 10, 2022, ledger balance 5000 EUR

- Item A1: +1000 EUR (Jan 10)
- Item A2: +500 EUR (Jan 11)
- Item A3: +300 EUR (Jan 12)

Value date balance: 5000 (ledger balance) - 500 (item A2) - 300 (item A3) = 4200 EUR

- Bank statement B

Bank statement date: Jan 11, 2022, ledger balance 6400 EUR

- Item B1: +800 EUR (Jan 15)
- Item B2: +600 EUR (Jan 11)

Value date balance: 6400 (ledger balance) - 300 (item A3) - 800 (item B1) = 5300EUR

## Supported Device Types

- Desktop
- Tablet

## More Information

- The SAP Fiori apps reference library has details about the content necessary for giving users access to an app on the **SAP Fiori launchpad**. The SAP Fiori apps reference library is available here: <https://fioriappslibrary.hana.ondemand.com>

To see this app's Fiori content, search for the app. Then select SAP S/4HANA as the product. On the **Implementation Information** tab, select the correct release. The details are in the **Configuration** section.

## Related Information

[Monitor Bank Account Balances](#)

[Cash Positioning Based on Bank Account Balances](#)

## Monitor Bank Account Balances

With this app, you can monitor whether bank account balances have been updated in time for your bank accounts.

### Key Features

You can use this app to:

- Monitor whether bank account balances have been updated in time
- Filter bank accounts by status and other attributes
- Export the report to spreadsheets

## Prerequisites

Before you use this app, make sure you have defined the following attributes for the bank accounts you want to monitor on the **Bank Relationship** tab of the **Manage Bank Accounts** app:

- **Interval** and **Interval Unit**: Together, the two attributes define the frequency of the expected bank account balance update, for example, one day or two weeks.
- **Factory Calendar ID** (optional): You can specify a factory calendar if you want to take it into consideration.

## Supported Device Types

- Desktop
- Tablet

## More Information

- The SAP Fiori apps reference library has details about the content necessary for giving users access to an app on the **SAP Fiori launchpad**. The SAP Fiori apps reference library is available here: <https://fioriappslibrary.hana.ondemand.com>

To see this app's Fiori content, search for the app. Then select SAP S/4HANA as the product. On the **Implementation Information** tab, select the correct release. The details are in the **Configuration** section.

## Related Information

[Manage Bank Account Balances](#)

[Cash Positioning Based on Bank Account Balances](#)

## Monitor Instant Balances

**App ID:** F7804

With this app, you can retrieve current available balances for selected bank accounts directly from the associated banks' APIs through **SAP Multi-Bank Connectivity**. Instant balances provide the current available balance for the selected bank accounts at the time of the balance update request.

## Key Features

You can use this app to do the following:

- Retrieve instant balances for specific bank accounts.

### i Note

Only selected member banks of SAP Multi-Bank Connectivity (MBC) are supported.

- Filter bank accounts using the available filters such as, **Account Number**, **Company Code**, or **House Bank**.
- Update instant balances for selected bank accounts.
- View the last available balance and date and time of availability.
- View instant balance update details such as, update status and last request date and time.
- Navigate to the **Define Bank Account Settings - Instant Balances** app to manage bank account settings for instant balances.

- Customize which fields are displayed in the Bank Accounts table and in which order they are displayed.

## Prerequisites

To be able to monitor instant balances, you first have to define the following settings:

- Set up the connection to SAP Multi-Bank Connectivity.

To do so, please contact the onboarding team for SAP Multi-Bank Connectivity. For more information, see [Onboarding Process](#).

- In the **Manage Banks - Cash Management** app, find the relevant house bank and enable instant balances for the house bank.
- In the **Define Bank Account Settings - Instant Balances** app, select the bank accounts you want to monitor instant balances for and use the **Switch On** button to enable instant balances for the selected bank accounts.

## How-To Video: Monitoring Instant Balances

### i Note

The following multimedia content displays screens and interfaces in English only.

[Open this video in a new window](#)

### i Note

Captions are available for **multiple languages**. Use the **CC** (Closed Captions) button in the video player to see which languages are supported.

You can also use the **Search within video** field to search for specific text in the English or German captions.

## Supported Device Types

- Desktop
- Tablet

## Information for Key Users

The SAP Fiori apps reference library has details about the content necessary for giving users access to an app on the SAP Fiori launchpad. To see this app's Fiori content, go to the [SAP Fiori apps reference library](#) and search for the app. Then select the product. On the Implementation Information tab, select the correct release. The details are in the Configuration section.

## Related Information

[Define Bank Account Settings - Instant Balances](#)

[Manage Banks - Cash Management](#)

## Monitor Bank Fees

With this app you can monitor the imported bank fee data and keep a track of your bank service charges using various drill-down dimensions.

## Key Features

- Check the bank fee data that is imported from bank services billing files
- Keep a track of bank service charges, taxes, and compensations
- Examine unit prices and volumes for individual services
- Analyze bank fees using different drill-downs and combinations of drill-downs, such as, comparing money spent in different companies, regions, and banks, monitoring service charges over time
- Validate imported bank fees to detect mistakes and improper bank service charges

For more information, see [Validating Bank Service Charges](#).

- In addition, the app supports the following technical features and options:

- Send emails

You can use this app to send an email containing a URL to the selected information in this app.

- Share in SAP Jam

If your company uses SAP Jam groups, you can post your comments about a task there.

- Save as a tile

You can create a tile that uses the current selection criteria as default settings.

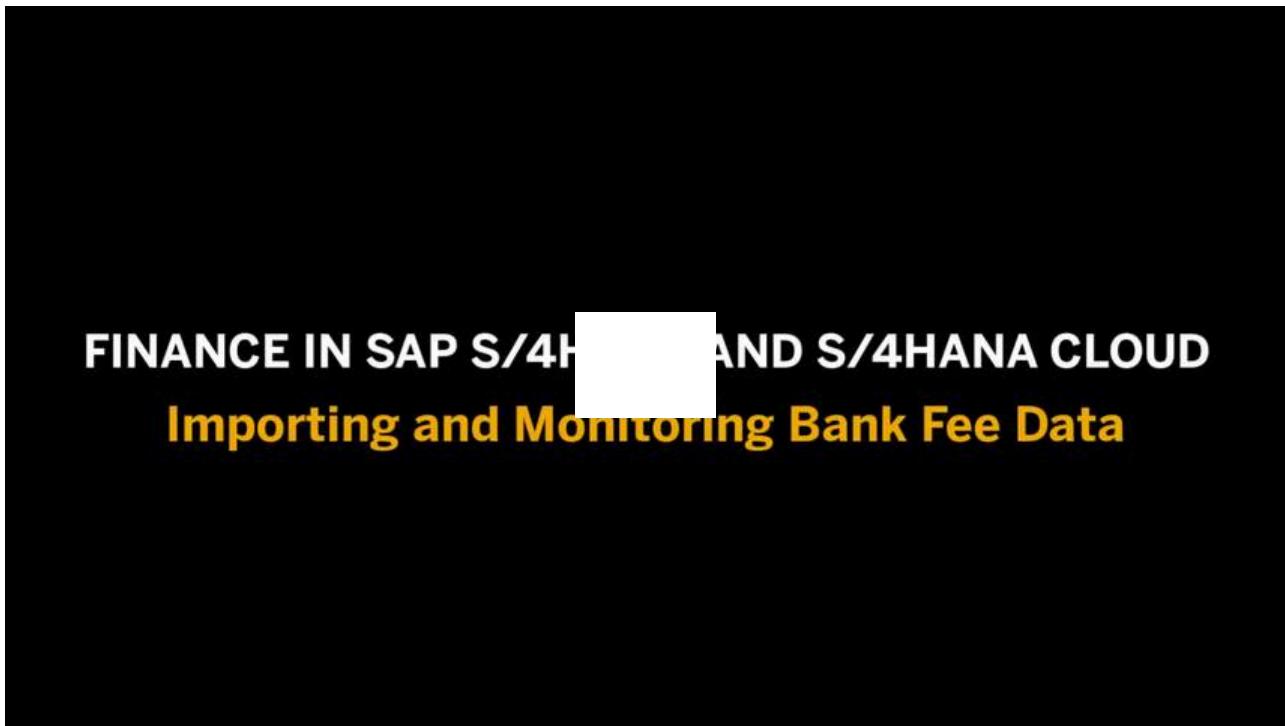
### i Note

Before you use this app, please ensure that the exchange rates for any two of the following currencies have been properly defined. Otherwise, some data may not be displayed correctly.

- All the currencies that are mentioned in the imported source files

- The display currency that you want to use to monitor bank fees

## How to Import and Monitor Bank Fees (English Only)



[Open this video in a new window](#)

### i Note

Captions/subtitles are available for multiple languages. Simply click the CC button at the bottom right of the video player to see which languages are supported.

## Supported Device Types

- Desktop

## More Information

- The SAP Fiori apps reference library has details about the content necessary for giving users access to an app on the SAP Fiori launchpad. The SAP Fiori apps reference library is available here: <https://fioriappslibrary.hana.ondemand.com>

To see this app's Fiori content, search for the app. Then select SAP S/4HANA as the product. On the **Implementation Information** tab, select the correct release. The details are in the **Configuration** section.

## My Bank Account Worklist

### Use

You can use this app to check and process bank-account-related requests that need to be approved or processed by you.

### i Note

With this app, you can process only workflow requests that were generated using the old workflow template WS74300043.

## Key Features

- Check and process the received requests that are to be you will approve or process for the following activities:
  - Opening a bank account
  - Changing a bank account
  - Maintaining a payment approver in multiple bank accounts
  - Reviewing bank accounts
  - Closing a bank account
- Forward a request to another colleague, if needed
- Monitor all the bank account related change requests in your responsible area

### **i Note**

This app is based on a different UI technology, so there are slight differences from the other SAP Fiori apps.

## Supported Device Types

- Desktop

## More Information

- The SAP Fiori apps reference library has details about the content necessary for giving users access to an app on the **SAP Fiori launchpad**. The SAP Fiori apps reference library is available here: <https://fioriappslibrary.hana.ondemand.com>

To see this app's Fiori content, search for the app. Then select SAP S/4HANA as the product. On the **Implementation Information** tab, select the correct release. The details are in the **Configuration** section.

## App Extensibility: My Bank Account Worklist

### Use

You can extend the **My Bank Account Worklist** app according to your business needs for different aspects. For this purpose, the following extensibility options are available:

Extension Options	Use
Customizing include CI_AMD_EXT in table FCLM_BAM_AMD	Allows you to add additional fields in the bank account master data
Customizing activity <b>Manage Field Status Groups</b> and <b>BAdI: Field Statuses and Field Checks (FCLM_BAM_FIELDS_CTRL)</b>	Allow you to do the following: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Define field status for fields used in bank account master data</li> <li>• Define additional field checks for bank account master data</li> </ul>

## More Information

For a general description of the extensibility options and procedures, see [Extend SAP Fiori Apps](#).

# My Inbox - For Bank Accounts

With this app you can check and process your workflow tasks dealing with bank account master data in various scenarios.

## Key Features

- Process your workflow tasks in the following scenarios:
  - Opening a bank account
  - Modifying a bank account
  - Maintaining a payment approver in multiple bank accounts
  - Closing a bank account
  - Reopening a bank account
- Approve, reject, claim, release, suspend, and forward a task
- Sort, group, and search for tasks
- View task-specific details
- Add attachments and comments

In addition, the app supports the following technical features and options:

- Send emails
 

You can send an email from this app containing a URL to the selected information in this app.
- Share in SAP Jam
 

If your company uses SAP Jam groups, you can post your comments about a task there.

## Supported Device Types

- Desktop
- Tablet

## More Information

- The SAP Fiori apps reference library has details about the content necessary for giving users access to an app on the [SAP Fiori launchpad](#). The SAP Fiori apps reference library is available here: <https://fioriappslibrary.hana.ondemand.com>

To see this app's Fiori content, search for the app. Then select SAP S/4HANA as the product. On the [Implementation Information](#) tab, select the correct release. The details are in the [Configuration](#) section.

# App Extensibility: My Inbox - For Bank Accounts

## Use

You can extend the *My Inbox - For Bank Accounts* app according to your business needs for different aspects. For this purpose, the following extensibility options are available:

- Change the list view (S2)
- Extend the application with additional views

## Further Extensibility Entities

### Business Add-Ins (BAdIs)

To extend this app and add custom code in the Task Gateway Service, you can use the following Business Add-Ins:

#### BAdIs in the Back-End System

The BAdI below is only relevant if you are implementing the app for your SAP Business Workflow.

- **Before Update BAdI** (/IWWRK/BADI\_WF\_BEFORE\_UPD\_IB)

You can use BAdI /IWWRK/BADI\_WF\_BEFORE\_UPD\_IB to if you want to execute an action before the work item is updated with the user decision.

For more information, see SAP Help Portal at <http://help.sap.com> under ►Technology Platform ► SAP Gateway ► SAP Gateway 2.0 ► Content Information ► Content Guide ► SAP Gateway Content Guide ► SAP Gateway Supported OData Channel Scenarios ► Workflow Services ► Workflow Task Service: Central Hub Deployment with IW\_BEP Backend Installation ► Workflow User Exits ▶.

#### BAdI in the Gateway System

- Task Gateway: **Change subject in query** (/IWPGW/BADI\_TGW\_TASK\_QUERY)

You can use this BAdI to change the task title for all items on the list screen.

For more information, see SAP Help Portal at <http://help.sap.com> under ►Technology Platform ► SAP Gateway ► SAP Gateway 2.0 ► Content Information ► Content Guide ► SAP Gateway Content Guide ► SAP Gateway Supported OData Channel Scenarios ► Workflow Services ► Workflow Task Service: Central Hub Deployment with IW\_BEP Backend Installation ► Workflow User Exits ▶.

### Extension Points

The following extension points are available:

View	Extension Point	Use
S2.view.xml	CustomerExtensionForObjectListItem	Allows you to replace the list item template with your custom list item template on the list screen. Make sure that the ID of your custom list template is the same as the ID of the standard list item template.
ViewSubstitution.view.xml	CustomerExtensionForSubstitutionRowHeader	Allows you to add columns in the substitution table.

View	Extension Point	Use
ViewSubstitution.view.xml	CustomerExtensionForSubstitutionRowData	Allows you to add column list items in the substitution table.

If there are additional fields available in the OData service, you can display these fields on the UI. For more information about extension points, see [Extend SAP Fiori Apps](#).

## UI Controller Hooks

To plug in and execute custom code to this app, for example, the following hooks are available in the controller code:

Controller	Hook	Use
S2.controller.js	extHookGetCustomFilter	Allows you to create custom filters that can be used for filtering the workflow.
S2.controller.js	extHookChangeFilterItems	Allows you to replace the standard filters with custom filters based on the filter key.
S2.controller.js	extHookChangeSortConfig	Allows you to change those properties that can be used for sorting the workflow tasks.
S2.controller.js	extHookChangeGroupConfig	Allows you to change those properties that can be used for grouping the workflow tasks.
S2.controller.js	extHookChangeMassApprovalButtons	Allows you to add, remove, and change the action buttons on the list screen in mass action mode.
S2.controller.js	extHookGetPropertiesToSelect	Allows you to retrieve additional attributes for Task entity from the back-end system.
Forward.controller.js	extHookChangeListSizeLimit	Allows you to change the number of recipients displayed on the forward screen.
ViewSubstitution.controller.js	extHookAddFooterButtonsForSubs	Allows you to add buttons for the substitution screen.
S2_TaskList.controller.js	extHookChangeFooterButtonsForExpertMode	Allows you to add, modify or delete the footer buttons, which are displayed once the task is selected in the expert view.

If there are additional UI controller hooks available in the controller code, you can extend the UI controller code. For more information about UI controller hooks, see [Extend SAP Fiori Apps](#).

## More Information

For a general description of the extensibility options and procedures, see [Extend SAP Fiori Apps](#).

# My Sent Requests

With this app you can track bank-account-related requests that you have sent. You can also cancel requests that have not yet been processed if necessary.

## Prerequisite

This app is relevant only when you have implemented workflow processes for bank account management.

## Key Features

- Check your requests in terms of request status, action (what has been done in the request), next processor, creation date, and last change date
- View change request details, including approval history
- Cancel sent requests that have not yet been processed
- Navigate to see bank account details
- Filter or search for a sent request

You can search by request ID or request title.

In addition, the app supports the following technical features and options:

- Send emails

You can use this app to send an email containing a URL to the selected information in this app.

- Share in SAP Jam

If your company uses SAP Jam groups, you can post your comments about a task there.

- Save as tile

You can create a tile that uses the current selection criteria as default settings.

## Supported Device Types

- Desktop

## More Information

- The SAP Fiori apps reference library has details about the content necessary for giving users access to an app on the SAP **Fiori launchpad**. The SAP Fiori apps reference library is available here: <https://fioriappslibrary.hana.ondemand.com>

To see this app's Fiori content, search for the app. Then select SAP S/4HANA as the product. On the **Implementation Information** tab, select the correct release. The details are in the **Configuration** section.

## My Sent Requests - Old Workflow Template

### Use

With this app you can track the bank-account-related requests that you have sent.

### i Note

With this app, you can process only workflow requests that were generated using the old workflow template WS74300043.

## Key Features

- Check your requests in terms of request status, step, history, next processor, date of creation, and last change.
- Send a reminder to the current processor.

### i Note

This app is based on a different UI technology, so there are slight differences from the other SAP Fiori apps.

## Supported Device Types

- Desktop

## More Information

- The SAP Fiori apps reference library has details about the content necessary for giving users access to an app on the [SAP Fiori launchpad](#). The SAP Fiori apps reference library is available here: <https://fioriappslibrary.hana.ondemand.com>

To see this app's Fiori content, search for the app. Then select SAP S/4HANA as the product. On the [Implementation Information](#) tab, select the correct release. The details are in the [Configuration](#) section.

## App Extensibility: My Sent Requests

### Use

You can extend the My Sent Requests app according to your business needs for different aspects. For this purpose, the following extensibility options are available:

Extension Options	Use
Customizing include CI_AMD_EXT in table FCLM_BAM_AMD	Allows you to add additional fields in the bank account master data
Customizing activity <a href="#">Manage Field Status Groups</a> and <a href="#">BAdI: Field Statuses and Field Checks (FCLM_BAM_FIELDS_CTRL)</a>	Allow you to do the following: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Define field status for fields used in bank account master data</li> <li>• Define additional field checks for bank account master data</li> </ul>

## More Information

For a general description of the extensibility options and procedures, see [Extend SAP Fiori Apps](#).

# Manage Liquidity Item Transfer

App ID: <F6385>

With this app, you can process lifecycles of liquidity item transfer documents like [Create](#), [Change](#), [Copy](#), and [Delete](#). You can directly create and transfer liquidity items in this app, or create the liquidity item transfer in the [Cash Flow Analyzer](#) app.

When the liquidity item transfer is created, all the items will generate actual One Exposure flows. During the liquidity item transfer, the original liquidity items will not necessarily be changed, and the shifts between liquidity items will be documented.

After the saving of the entries during the liquidity item transfer, it could be viewed in the [Cash Flow Analyzer](#) and [Check Cash Flow Items](#) apps.

If one or multiple flows are deleted or aggregated, the status of the corresponding transfer will be set to [Invalidated](#), and the transfer will not be able to be updated.

The [Manage Liquidity Item Transfer](#) app is integrated with the [Blocked Date Range](#) feature.

## Key Features

You can use this app to do the following:

- Create new liquidity item transfer.

Specify the necessary information on the transfer data and line item to create new liquidity item transfer. Company Code and Transfer Currency are mandatory header fields. You need to specify at least two line items with Liquidity Item, Amount, and Value Date. Total balance for the transfer must be zero. You can add more fields in the line item using the Settings function.

- Copy existing liquidity item transfer.
- Edit liquidity item transfer.

Company Code and Transfer Currency cannot be edited.

- Delete liquidity item transfer.

Liquidity item transfer with the status Invalidated cannot be deleted.

# Payment Statistics

## Purpose

With this app, you can display the Key Performance Indicator (KPI) [Payment Statistics](#). You can check the amount and number of critical payments made within 90 days through SAP Bank Communication Management using different filtering criteria.

## Calculation Logic

For more information about how the numbers on the app tile and the number in the top-right corner of the app are calculated, see [Calculation Logic: Payment Statistics](#).

## Key Features

- View the number and amount of critical payments. The following types of payments are considered as critical:
  - **New:** payments that are newly made in the system, for example, when the payment batch is just created
  - **In Approval Process:** payments that are to be approved
  - **Sent to Bank:** payments that are successfully sent to relevant banks for actual transfers to take place
  - **Exceptions:** payments that have encountered issues, for example, payments that are rejected by approvers, payment batches that are partially processed, payment medium creation errors, and so on.
- Display critical payments by the following dimensions:
  - By Status
  - By Company
  - By House Bank
  - By Processing Days
  - By Payment Method
  - By Currency
- If your company uses SAP Jam, you can post comments there and you can also send emails from this app.

### **i Note**

From this app you can access other apps directly.

These linked apps must be already available already in your system. If not, you have to implement them along with this app.

- [Check Cash Flow Items](#)

## Supported Device Types

- Desktop
- Tablet

## Extensibility

### **i Note**

This app is not extensible.

## More Information

- The SAP Fiori apps reference library has details about the content necessary for giving users access to an app on the **SAP Fiori launchpad**. The SAP Fiori apps reference library is available here: <https://fioriappslibrary.hana.ondemand.com>

To see this app's Fiori content, search for the app. Then select SAP S/4HANA as the product. On the **Implementation Information** tab, select the correct release. The details are in the **Configuration** section.

## Related Information

# Configuration Settings: Payment Statistics

## Use

This document contains configuration information for the **Payment Statistics** app.

## SAP Jam Integration

For information on how to configure SAP Jam, see <http://help.sap.com/sapjam>.

## Manage KPIs and Reports

To know more, see [Manage KPIs and Reports](#).

### Group: Payment Statistics

**Group ID:** .K.1465363683199

#### Group Description:

With Payment Statistics, you can check payment statistics by status, house bank, company, currency, processing days and payment method. This group allows you to filter and drill down by various dimensions.

#### Goal Type: Range

#### KPI: In the Last 90 Days

**KPI ID:** .E.1465370796428

#### KPI Description:

With Payment Statistics, you can check payment statistics by status, house bank, company, currency, payment method and processing days. This group allows you to filter and drill down by various dimensions.

## Targets, Thresholds, and Trend

Parameter	Value
Goal Type	Range
Value Type	Fixed Value
Critical	(Not applicable)
Warning	(Not applicable)
Target	(Not applicable)
Trend	(Not applicable)

This table shows some example values.

## Input Parameters and Filters

Input Parameters

Input Parameter	Operator	Example Value	Explanation
P_DisplayCurrency	Equal to	EUR	<p>Choose a currency in which the currency amounts are to be displayed. Ensure that exchange rates for this currency exist in your SAP S/4HANA system.</p> <p>An entry in this field is required.</p>
P_NumberOfProcessingDays	Equal to	90	<p>Enter the number of days from the first day when payments were created to today. The app aggregates all the payments that have been created during this period.</p> <p>An entry in this field is required.</p>

The following tables show the input parameters, filters, and some preconfigured example values. Use your own values where required, according to the data in your backend system.

### Drill-Down: By Status

View ID: .V.1467613184977

View Title: By Status

Measures and Dimensions:

Parameter	Value
Dimension	Status
Measures	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Number of Payments</li> <li>• Payment Amount in Display Currency</li> </ul>

Visualization Type:

- Column
- Dual Axis
- Default Colors

Limit Data Records: 200

### Drill-Down: By Company

View ID: .V.1465382875428

View Title: By Company

Measures and Dimensions:

Parameter	Value
Dimensions	Company Code and Company Code Name
Measures	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Number of Payments</li> <li>• Payment Amount in Display Currency</li> </ul>

Visualization Type:

- Column
- Dual Axis
- Absolute Values
- Default Colors

Limit Data Records: 200

Drill-Down: By Bank

View ID: .V.1467881223641

View Title: By Bank

Measures and Dimensions:

Parameter	Value
Dimension	Bank and Bank Name
Measures	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Number of Payments</li> <li>• Payment Amount in Display Currency</li> </ul>

Visualization Type:

- Column
- Dual Axis
- Absolute Values
- Default Colors

Limit Data Records: 200

Drill-Down: By Processing Days

View ID: .V.1467613241254

**View Title:** By Processing Days**Measures and Dimensions:**

Parameter	Value
Dimension	Processing Days
Measures	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Number of Payments</li> <li>• Payment Amount in Display Currency</li> </ul>

**Visualization Type:**

- Column
- Dual Axis
- Absolute Values
- Default Colors

**Limit Data Records:** 200**Drill-Down:** By Payment Method

View ID: .V.1465382813714

**View Title:** By Payment Method**Measures and Dimensions:**

Parameter	Value
Dimension	Payment Method and Payment Method Name
Measures	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Number of Payments</li> <li>• Payment Amount in Display Currency</li> </ul>

**Visualization Type:**

- Column
- Dual Axis
- Absolute Values
- Default Colors

**Limit Data Records:** 200**Drill-Down:** By Currency (In Display Currency)

View ID: .V.1467613523635

View Title: By Currency (In Display Currency)

Measures and Dimensions:

Parameter	Value
Dimension	Payment Currency
Measures	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Number of Payments</li> <li>Payment Amount in Display Currency</li> </ul>

Visualization Type:

- Column
- Dual Axis
- Absolute Values
- Default Colors

Limit Data Records: 200

Drill-Down: By Currency (In Payment Currency)

View ID: .V.1467613567682

View Title: By Currency (In Payment Currency)

Measures and Dimensions:

Parameter	Value
Dimension	Payment Currency
Measures	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Number of Payments</li> <li>Payment Amount in Payment Currency</li> </ul>

Visualization Type:

- Table
- Default Colors

Limit Data Records: 200

## Calculation Logic: Payment Statistics

### On the App Tile

On the app tile, the app displays the top three types of payments with the highest amounts within 90 days in display currency.

The equation below illustrates how the amount for each type is calculated and is followed by an explanation:

The numbers on the app tile are calculated as follows:

$$T = \sum_{d=D-90}^D (O - I)$$

Where

$T$  = Total amount of a type of payments

$O$  = Amount of outgoing payments with this type

$I$  = Amount of incoming payments with this type

$D$  = Today

1. 1.The app calculates the total payment amounts of the following four types of payments made within 90 days.

The amount of each type of payments is calculated by subtracting the amount of incoming payments from outgoing payments. If a payment is made in a currency other than the current display currency, the amount will be converted according to exchange rates.

- New
- In Approval Process
- Sent to Bank
- Exceptions

2. The app selects the three types with the highest amounts and displays them on the app tile in descending order.

## In the Top-Right Corner of the App

In the top-right corner of the app, the app displays the total amount of critical payments made within 90 days in display currency.

The equation below illustrates how this number is calculated and is followed by an explanation:

$$C = \sum_{d=D-90}^D (N + I + B + E)$$

Where

$C$ =Total amount of critical payments

$N$ =Total amount of newly made payments

$I$ =Total amount of payments that are still in approval process

$B$ =Total amount of payments that are sent to bank

$E$ =Total amount of payments that are in exception status

$D$ =Today

The app calculates the total amount of critical payments made within 90 days by adding up the amounts of the four types of critical payments.

The calculation logic of how the amount of an individual type of payments is illustrated in the On the App Tile section.

## Reconcile Cash Flows - Intraday

App ID: F3418A

With this app, you can manually reconcile intraday bank statement flows with forecasted cash flows. This feature enables you to compare your intraday bank statements with your forecasts before end of business. This way, you can easily identify unfinished and unknown payments in time. It also helps you eliminate duplicate items in forecasts to gain a more accurate account of your cash positions.

### i Note

There are two apps available for cash flow reconciliation. You can choose only one of them to perform cash flow reconciliation. For more information, see [Feature Comparison for New and Old Models for Cash Flow Reconciliation](#).

## Prerequisites

Before you use this app, define the following settings in Customizing under  **Financial Supply Chain Management**  **Cash and Liquidity Management** :

- Switch on the new model for cash flow reconciliation in the **Define Basic Settings** Customizing activity.

To do so, set the **Enable New Reconciliation Model** indicator. You need to have selected this option to be able to use the new app **Reconcile Cash Flows - Intraday**.

After you enable the new reconciliation model, the old app **Reconcile Cash Flows - Intraday Memo Records** is no longer supported.

- Define a number range for reconciliation bundles in the **Define Number Range for Reconciliation Bundles** Customizing activity.

- Define memo record types for the memo record category **Residual Forecast** in the [Define Memo Record Types](#) Customizing activity.

Memo record types assigned to this category can only be used for creating residual flows in this app.

- Define profiles for performing cash flow reconciliation in the [Define Profiles for Cash Flow Reconciliation](#) Customizing activity.

For each cash flow reconciliation profile, you assign planning levels for bank statement flows and forecasted flows. You can also define a memo record type for creating memo records for residual flows.

In the [Manage Bank Accounts](#) app, make sure you have made the following setting for bank accounts that you want to include in cash flow reconciliations.

- To include a bank account in cash flow reconciliation, on the [Bank Relationship](#) tab, set the [Reconcile Intraday Memo Records](#) option.

## Key Features

You can use this app to do the following:

- Manually reconcile intraday bank statement flows with forecasted cash flows

You can do so either on bank account level or on item level:

- Bank account level: On the overview page, select bank accounts with the status **Unreconciled** to perform reconciliation.
- Item level: Choose a bank account with the status **Unreconciled** to open the details page where you can see items of intraday bank statement flows and forecasted flows displayed side by side. You can select the items from both sides or only intraday bank statement items to perform reconciliation.

- Check the system-proposed residual amount and decide whether you want to create a residual flow or reconcile without it.

When the forecasted cash flows do not match the intraday bank statement flows, you may still want to reconcile the two parties. You can reconcile both parties directly and ignore the difference, or you can manually create a residual flow to keep track of the unreconciled forecasted cash flows. The residual flows are created in the form of memo records with the memo record category **Residual Forecast**. You can see the residual flows and reconcile them with new intraday bank statement flows in the next round of reconciliation.

- Monitor the reconciliation status of all relevant bank accounts

Reconciliation Status	Meaning
<b>Reconciled</b>	The bank statement flows of this bank account are completely reconciled with forecasted cash flows.
<b>Unreconciled</b>	Some bank statement flows of this bank account are not yet reconciled.
<b>Not Applicable</b>	The bank account has not been reconciled and currently no bank statement flows are available for reconciliation.

- Undo reconciliations for a reconciliation bundle and reset the status of the items involved to **Unreconciled**
- Check the reconciliation result in the [Short-Term Cash Positioning](#) app.

## Supported Device Types

- Desktop
- Tablet

## Related Information

[Short-Term Cash Positioning](#)

## Performing Cash Flow Reconciliations

Performing cash flow reconciliations between intraday bank statement flows and forecasted cash flows helps you identify unfinished and unknown payments before end of business.

There are two models available for cash flow reconciliation. You can choose only one of them to perform cash flow reconciliations. The table below explains the differences between the two models.

New and Old Reconciliation Model

	Old Reconciliation Model	New Reconciliation Model
App name	<a href="#">Reconcile Cash Flows - Intraday Memo Records (F3418)</a>	<a href="#">Reconcile Cash Flows - Intraday (F3418A)</a>
Reconciliation on item level	Supported	Supported
Reconciliation on bank account level	Not supported	Supported
Automatic reconciliation	Supported  In addition, you can use the transaction FCLM_CR_INTRAM to schedule jobs for automatic reconciliation.	Not Supported
Creation of residual flows for next round of reconciliation	Not supported	Supported
Forecasted cash flows	Cash flows with the following certainty levels are considered forecasted cash flows: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Accounts receivable (certainty level REC_N)</li> <li>• Accounts payable (certainty level PAY_N)</li> <li>• Self-initiated cash in transit (certainty level SI_CIT)</li> <li>• General memo records (certainty level MEMO)</li> </ul>	Cash flows with the following certainty levels are considered forecasted cash flows: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Accounts receivable (certainty level REC_N)</li> <li>• Accounts payable (certainty level PAY_N)</li> <li>• Self-initiated cash in transit (certainty level SI_CIT)</li> <li>• General memo records (certainty level MEMO)</li> <li>• Residual flows (certainty level RFC)</li> </ul>
Tolerance settings	Supported	Not Supported
Data consumed by	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <a href="#">Cash Flow Analyzer</a></li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <a href="#">Short-Term Cash Positioning</a></li> </ul>

	Old Reconciliation Model	New Reconciliation Model
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Check Cash Flow Items</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Check Cash Flow Items</li> </ul>

## Related Information

[Reconcile Cash Flows - Intraday](#)

[Reconcile Cash Flows - Intraday Memo Records](#)

# Reconcile Cash Flows - Intraday Memo Records

## Use

With this app, you can reconcile intraday memo records that were generated automatically from intraday bank statements with forecasted cash flows. This feature enables you to compare your intraday bank statements with your forecasts before end of business. This way, you can easily identify unfinished and unknown payments in time. It also helps you eliminate duplicate items in forecasts to gain a more accurate account of your cash positions.

## Prerequisites

Before you work with this app, make sure you have defined the required settings as instructed in [Cash Flow Reconciliation](#).

## Key Features

You can use this app to:

- View automatically reconciled intraday memo records and forecasted cash flows

Once an intraday bank statement is imported into the system, the system automatically generates an intraday memo record for each bank account. The system then automatically reconciles open intraday memo records with open forecasted cash flows. For more information, see the “Automatic Reconciliation” section below.

In addition, you can trigger automatic reconciliation on demand using the transaction **FCLM\_CR\_INTRAM (Reconcile Intraday Memo Records)**.

- Manually reconcile intraday memo records with forecasted cash flows
- Undo reconciliations for selected items and reset them to the open status

To do so, select any item and then choose the **Undo Reconciliations** button. The system resets the reconciliation for the selected items and all other items that have been reconciled and sets them all back to open items.

- Monitor the reconciliation status of all relevant bank accounts

Reconciliation Status	Meaning
<b>Reconciled</b>	The intraday memo records of this bank account are completely reconciled with forecasted cash flows.
<b>Intraday Memo Records</b>	Some intraday memo records of this bank account are not yet reconciled.
<b>Open Cash Flows</b>	Some forecasted cash flows of this bank account are not yet reconciled.

Reconciliation Status	Meaning
Open Memo Records and Cash Flows	Some intraday memo records and forecasted cash flows of this bank account are not yet reconciled.

The reconciliation result is also reflected in the [Cash Flow Analyzer](#), where you can filter intraday bank statements and forecasted cash flows according to their reconciliation status. By combining different filter options, you can analyze your cash flows and bank account balances from various dimensions.

## Automatic Reconciliation

After a bank statement is imported, the system triggers the automatic reconciliation process. The system first reads table FEBC1 for the existing mapping relationships between intraday memo records and the corresponding FI documents. Then it checks the One Exposure table (FQM\_F10W) and automatically matches the rest of the open intraday memo records with open forecasted cash flows. The matching process considers the company code, bank account, currency, value date, amount, as well as the tolerance group setting. The system then updates the result in the cash reconciliation table. You can then see the matched memo records and forecasted cash flows as **Reconciled** in the [Reconcile Cash Flows - Intraday Memo Records](#) app.

### Matching Logic

The matching logic is as follows:

1. The company code, currency, and bank account must be the same
2. The value date of the two parties can be different but the difference cannot be larger than one day.
3. The amounts of the two parties have to be matched with the tolerance setting taken into consideration. The amounts are rounded to the nearest one.

### Example

- Intraday memo record A and forecasted cash flow B are matched in every way except that the value date of the memo record is a day before the value date of the cash flow. In this case, the two parties are matched and reconciled because the value date difference is not larger than one day.
- Intraday memo record A and forecasted cash flow B are matched in every way except that the memo record is 5000 EURO while the cash flow is 4950 EURO. The program checks the tolerance group setting for the bank account and the result may vary:
  - If the bank account is not assigned with a tolerance group or the tolerance amount is zero, the memo record and the cash flow are not reconciled.
  - If the difference of 50 EURO is within the tolerance limit defined by the tolerance group for the bank account, the memo record and the cash flow are reconciled.

## Supported Device Types

- Desktop
- Tablet

## More Information

- The SAP Fiori apps reference library has details about the content necessary for giving users access to an app on the SAP Fiori launchpad. The SAP Fiori apps reference library is available here: <https://fioriappslibrary.hana.ondemand.com>

To see this app's Fiori content, search for the app. Then select SAP S/4HANA as the product. On the **Implementation Information** tab, select the correct release. The details are in the **Configuration** section.

## Related Information

[Manage Memo Records](#)

[Cash Flow Analyzer](#)

[Check Cash Flow Items](#)

## Reconcile Cash Flows - Memo Records (Deprecated)

With this app, you can manually reconcile memo records that were generated automatically from end-of-day bank statements with forecasted cash flows. This feature enables you to compare your end-of-day bank statements with your forecasts. This way, you can easily identify unfinished and unknown payments and eliminate duplicate items in forecasts to gain a more accurate account of your cash positions, independently of whether the bank statements have been posted.

## Prerequisites

Before you work with this app, make sure you have defined the required settings as instructed in [Cash Flow Reconciliation](#).

## Key Features

You can use this app to:

- View reconciled memo records and forecasted cash flows

Based on your defined planning levels, the system identifies memo records that represent end-of-day memo records. You can then use the transaction FCLM\_CR\_MMRD ([Reconcile End-of-Day Memo Records](#)) to perform automatic reconciliations. You can also create memo records manually according to the rules you define and reconcile those memo records with the forecasted cash flows

- Manually reconcile memo records with forecasted cash flows
- Undo reconciliations for selected items and reset them to the open status

To do so, select any item and then choose the **Undo Reconciliations** button. The system resets the reconciliation for the selected items and all other items that have been reconciled and sets them all back to open items.

- Monitor the reconciliation status of all relevant bank accounts

Reconciliation Status	Meaning
<a href="#">Reconciled</a>	The memo records of this bank account are completely reconciled with forecasted cash flows.
<a href="#">Open End-of-Day Memo Records</a>	Some memo records of this bank account are not yet reconciled.
<a href="#">Open Cash Flows</a>	Some forecasted cash flows of this bank account are not yet reconciled.
<a href="#">Open Cash Flows and EoD Memo Records</a>	Some memo records and forecasted cash flows of this bank account are not yet reconciled.

## Supported Device Types

- Desktop
- Tablet

## Release Cash Flows

Release cash flows manually.

With this app, you can get an overview of all the cash flows with specific attributes, such as company code and planning level from specific source systems. Cash flows with these attributes are available for your further review. Based on your requirements, you can then manually release these cash flows and see the data that are presented in other cash management apps, such as [Cash Flow Analyzer](#) and [Check Cash Flow Items](#).

## Prerequisites

Make sure you have made configuration settings of the rules for manual release in the customizing activity [Define Criteria for Manual Release](#) under [Financial Supply Chain Management](#) [Cash and Liquidity Management](#) [Cash Management](#) [Data Setup](#)

You can create cash flows from a source system outside SAP S/4HANA system through a web service CASHFLOW\_IN. For more information about the service, see [Cash Flow](#).

## Key Features

You can use this app to:

- Check the following release statuses of cash flows:
  - [Released](#)
  - [Unreleased](#)
- Display a list of unreleased cash flows in a hierarchy with various filtering options, such as:
  - [Liquidity Item](#)
  - [Origin System](#)
- Review these cash flows to check the amount, date and other information.
- Release the cash flows manually.

### Example

For example, after a memo record is created in your subsidiary, you can see this cash flow in the unreleased status. You check and confirm the amount and date for this memo record. Then you release this cash flow and this cash flow can be displayed in the [Cash Flow Analyzer](#) app and the [Check Cash Flow Items](#) app.

- Navigate to the [Manage Memo Records](#) app to create memo records.

## Supported Device Types

- Desktop

- Tablet

## More Information

- The SAP Fiori apps reference library has details about the content necessary for giving users access to an app on the **SAP Fiori launchpad**. The SAP Fiori apps reference library is available here: <https://fioriappslibrary.hana.ondemand.com>

To see this app's Fiori content, search for the app. Then select SAP S/4HANA as the product. On the **Implementation Information** tab, select the correct release. The details are in the **Configuration** section.

## Related Information

[Manage Memo Records](#)

[Cash Flow Analyzer](#)

[Check Cash Flow Items](#)

## Cash Flow

Technical name: CASHFLOW\_IN

This service enables you to create cash flows through an API call from a source system outside SAP S/4HANA. It also enables you to create, update, delete, and erase existing cash flow data from the SAP S/4HANA system. To use this API, it is necessary to define a value mapping for company code and set up a monitoring tool that is based on the AIF message monitor. The service is based on SOAP and can be consumed by external systems and user interfaces.

The following operations for cash flows are available:

- **Create**

The information is sent in the request as a payload, except for scheduling line information created by default by the system. All information is utilized in the creation of a cash flow, including appropriate checks for restricted values and authorizations. Once the cash flow is created successfully, the cash flow key is sent in the response along with the data that is contained in the cash flow. If there was an issue during the creation of the cash flow, an error message is displayed in the response.

- **Update**

All information is sent in the request as a payload via batch call and is updated to the existing cash flow with appropriate checks in place for restricted value and authorizations. The request is a batch call that comprises one or more change sets. Each change set contains information related to one cash flow. In each change set, use PATCH to update an existing service node and POST to create a new service node.

Once the batch is submitted, the success response is status 200 or 202 with an individual change set response with a message confirming that the cash flow has been updated, or a failure response with status 400 with self-explanatory messages.

- **Delete**

Deletion in cash flow is not a hard deletion of the object in the database. Instead, a deletion flag is set on the service node. Deletion is handled as part of the update operation in a batch call.

- **Erase**

This operation erases forecasted cash flows received from other SAP or third-party systems. You can filter cash flows to be erased by company code and by original system.

Before you use this operation, you must manually import dummy values for the following parameters in your payload:

- CertaintyLevel
- TransactionDate
- AmountInTransactionCurrency (with its [Currency](#) attribute)

This service is published on the SAP Business Accelerator Hub. For more information about APIs, see [APIs on SAP Business Accelerator Hub](#).

## Service Request

### Service Message Header

The service message header contains information about the message header data, such as the involved sender and receiver, as well as the date and time.

### Service Nodes

The service nodes contain the business data of the service.

Service Node	Description	Cardinality	Link to details
CashFlowRequestContent	Node item that contains the request information of cash flows.	1..unbounded	<a href="#">CashFlowRequestContent</a>
RemoteOperationMode	Node item that contains the remote operation mode of creation, update, and deletion of cash flows.	1	There are no parameters in this service node. There are four values in this service node: Create (I), Update (U), Delete (D), Erase (E).

## Service Response

Parameter	Description
StandardMessageFault	Fault message that contains information on the fault text and fault detail.

## Activate and Maintain Service

The transaction for activating and maintaining services is used to maintain all registered services on the SAP Gateway server (hub system) and to register and activate services. For more information, see [Activate and Maintain Services](#).

## CashFlowRequestContent

### Parameters

You can find the request information of cash flows.

Parameter	Description	Cardinality	Necessity
CompanyCode	Company Code	1	Mandatory
AmountInTransactionCurrency	Amount In Transaction Currency	1	Mandatory  It also contains currency code as a sub node, which is also mandatory.
AmountInCompanyCodeCurrency	Amount In Company Code Currency	0..1	Optional  It also contains currency code as a sub node.
TransactionDate	Transaction Date	1	Mandatory
BankCountry	Bank Country/region	0..1	Optional
BankKey	Bank Key	0..1	Optional
BankAccount	Bank Account	0..1	Optional
IBAN	International Bank Account Number	0..1	Optional
GLAccount	G/L Account Number	0..1	Optional
OriginSystem	Origin System	1	Mandatory
OriginDocument	Business Document in Origin System	0..1	Optional
OriginTransaction	Transaction in Origin System	0..1	Optional
OriginCashFlow	Cash Flow in Origin System	0..1	Optional
OriginTransactionQualifier	Transaction Qualifier in Origin System	0..1	Optional
CertaintyLevel	Certainty Level	1	Mandatory
Customer	Customer	0..1	Optional
Supplier	Supplier	0..1	Optional
BusinessPartner	Business Partner	0..1	Optional
Material	Material	0..1	Optional
BusinessArea	Business Area	0..1	Optional
ProfitCenter	Profit Center	0..1	Optional
WBSElementInternalID	WBS Element	0..1	Optional
CostCenter	Cost Center	0..1	Optional
PartnerCompany	Partner Company	0..1	Optional
LiquidityItem	Liquidity Item	0..1	Optional
Segment	Segment	0..1	Optional

Parameter	Description	Cardinality	Necessity
PlanningLevel	Planning Level	0..1	Optional
CashPlanningGroup	Planning Group	0..1	Optional
SourceCompanyCode	Company Code of the source document in scenarios such as payment-on-behalf	0..1	Optional
GenericKey	Key field for serialization in SAP Application Interface Framework	0..1	Optional

### i Note

To display more information about the service node, select the operation. This works best in Mozilla Firefox or Google Chrome.

## Review Bank Accounts

With this app the reviewers can review the bank accounts that are assigned to them and the review initiators can track the status of the review requests that they have created.

### Key Features

- Reviewers can search for and display their review tasks, navigate to a bank account, and complete the reviews.
- Reviewers can add review notes to bank accounts.

The review notes can also be displayed in the bank account history in the [Manage Bank Accounts](#) app.

- Review initiators can search for and display the review requests that they have created, and monitor the review status by checking review tasks that are not yet completed.
- Review initiators and reviewers can keep a track of all the review requests that are in process and completed.
- In addition, the app supports the following technical features and options:

- Send emails

You can use this app to send an email containing a URL to the selected information in this app.

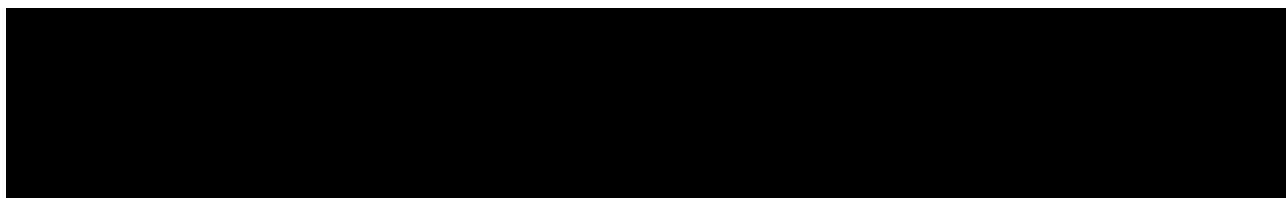
- Share in SAP Jam

If your company uses SAP Jam groups, you can post your comments about a task there.

- Save as a tile

You can create a tile that uses the current selection criteria as default settings.

### How to Review Bank Accounts (English Only)



# FINANCE IN SAP S/4HANA AND S/4 HANA CLOUD

## Reviewing Bank Accounts

[Open this video in a new window](#)

### i Note

Captions are available for **multiple languages**. Use the **CC** (Closed Captions) button in the video player to see which languages are supported.

You can also use the **Search within video** field to search for specific text in the English or German captions.

## Supported Device Types

- Desktop

## More Information

- The SAP Fiori apps reference library has details about the content necessary for giving users access to an app on the SAP Fiori launchpad. The SAP Fiori apps reference library is available here: <https://fioriappslibrary.hana.ondemand.com>

To see this app's Fiori content, search for the app. Then select SAP S/4HANA as the product. On the **Implementation Information** tab, select the correct release. The details are in the **Configuration** section.

## Related Information

[Reviewing Bank Accounts](#)

## Set Block Date for Actual Cash Flows

With this app, you can set the block date range for actual flows in liquidity analysis. With the specified company code, transaction date, and posting date in the document, you can block the actual flows in the defined date range. The blocked actual flows are only for liquidity analysis cash flows, which are the cash flows from the FI data source including the liquidity analysis (liquidity item information with document chain tracing).

## Key Features

This app provides the following key features:

- Specify the company code, transaction date, and posting date to set the block date range for liquidity analysis cash flows.

- Edit and display the existing entries of the block date range.

## Schedule Jobs for Cash Concentration

With this app you can schedule jobs for cash concentration using the template and scheduling options provided. You can define jobs for each cash pool and check the status of your cash concentration jobs.

### Prerequisites

Before implementing the app, you must ensure the following:

- Users have been assigned with the following required authorization objects for accessing and using the app:
  - S\_PROGNAM with:
    - Field name P\_ACTION and values BTCSUBMIT, SUBMIT and VARIANT
    - Field name P\_PROGNAM and value FCLM\_CPL\_CASH\_CONCN
  - S\_BTCH\_JOB with:
    - Field name JOBACTION and values DELE, LIST, RELE, MODI, PLAN, PROT, and SHOW
    - Field name JOBGROUP and value \* or another appropriate value
- Since the job is relevant for scoping, you have to make sure that the entry SAP\_FIN\_CLM\_CASH\_CONCN has been maintained in the corresponding customizing activity under

### Key Features

You can use this app to do the following:

- Create and schedule jobs for cash concentration according to your requirements  
You can either start the job immediately or you can plan it to start at a later date. The job is then carried out in background mode. You can define whether the job should recur, and set up a recurrence schedule. Once you have defined all relevant parameters, you can check if the specified data is ok and schedule the job. The new job will appear in the Application Jobs list.
- View the results of the scheduled jobs

### Supported Device Types

- Desktop
- Tablet

### More Information

- The SAP Fiori apps reference library has details about the content necessary for giving users access to an app on the [SAP Fiori launchpad](#). The SAP Fiori apps reference library is available here: <https://fioriappslibrary.hana.ondemand.com>

To see this app's Fiori content, search for the app. Then select SAP S/4HANA as the product. On the [Implementation Information](#) tab, select the correct release. The details are in the [Configuration](#) section.

## Related Information

[Manage Cash Concentration](#)

[Manage Cash Pools](#)

# Schedule Jobs for Bank Account Balance Initialization

App ID: F7146

Some bank account balances may not show up in cash management, for example the **Short-Term Cash Positioning** app, even though bank statements have been imported. With this app, you can schedule jobs to identify these bank accounts and replicate bank account balances from their latest end-of-day bank statements to cash management. You are recommended to use this app to initialize bank account balances for bank accounts to ensure the accuracy of short-term cash positions. As an alternative, you can also use the transaction **FCLM\_BAL\_INITIALIZE** to run the **Bank Account Balance Initialization** report directly.

## Prerequisites

Before implementing the app, you must ensure the following:

- Users have been assigned with the following required authorization objects for accessing and using the app:
  - S\_PROGNAM with:
    - Field name P\_ACTION and values BTCSUBMIT, SUBMIT and VARIANT
    - Field name P\_PROGNAM and value FCLM\_BAL\_INT\_REPORT
  - S\_BTCH\_JOB with:
    - Field name JOBACTION and values DELE, RELE, and SHOW
    - Field name JOBGROUP and value \* or another appropriate value
- Since the job is relevant for scoping, you have to make sure that the entry SAP\_FIN\_CLM\_BANK\_ACCOUNT\_BALANCE\_INIT has been maintained in the corresponding customizing activity under **ABAP Platform > Application Server > System Administration > Activation of Scope-Dependent Application Job Catalog Entries**

## Key Features

You can use this app to do the following:

- Create and schedule jobs for bank account initialization according to your requirements

You can either start the job immediately or you can plan it to start at a later date. The job is then carried out in background mode. You can define whether the job should recur, and set up a recurrence schedule. Once you have defined all relevant parameters, you can check if the specified data is ok and schedule the job. The new job will appear in the Application Jobs list.

- View the results of the scheduled jobs

## Job Template: Bank Account Balance Initialization

### Prerequisites

Balance initialization can only be performed for bank accounts for which the transfer mode is defined as **Balance Only** or **Balance and Bank Statement Items**.

For more information about how to define the transfer mode setting, see [Define Bank Account Settings - Bank Statements](#).

## Selection

You can select bank accounts using various filters such as company code, account type, or cash position profiles. Only bank accounts with the following statuses are considered for balance initialization:

- [Active](#)
- [Marked for Closing](#)
- [Closing Request Sent to Bank](#)

## Results

Balances generated by this report can be viewed in the [Manage Bank Account Balances](#) app and the [Short-Term Cash Positioning](#) app. The balance channel of these balances is marked as [Initial Load from EBS](#).

For bank accounts that have a successful balance initialization, the following balances are created:

- Opening ledger balance
- Closing ledger balance
- Closing value date balance
- Closing available balance

## Supported Device Types

- Desktop
- Tablet

# Short-Term Cash Positioning

App ID: F5380

## Use

With this app, you can view the cash positions by location, company, and currency. Cash position data is calculated based on the cash position profiles that are defined in the [Define Cash Position Profiles](#) app.

## Prerequisites

- Make sure you have defined the cash position profiles that will be used to calculate cash position data in the [Short-Term Cash Positioning](#) app.
- Make sure you have defined the bank account settings in the [Define Bank Account Settings - Bank Statements](#) app.
- If needed, perform bank account balance initialization to ensure bank account balances are correctly shown for all bank accounts in this app.

## Key Features

With this app, you can perform the following tasks:

- Display cash positions by various analytical dimensions, such as country/region, company code, bank account, currency.
- Display cash positions according to the settings defined in the selected cash position profile.
- Simulate cash concentration for cash pools defined in the [Manage Cash Pools \(Version 2\)](#) app

When the hierarchy source is defined as 03 ([Derived from Cash Pool and Bank Account Master Data](#)) in the cash position profile, bank accounts that are assigned to cash pools of the service provider [Bank - Time Dependent](#) are displayed in the cash pool hierarchies.

The balances of subaccounts will be automatically aggregated in the header account of the cash pools to simulate the cash concentration performed by banks.

- Show the value amount with the [Enable Custom Scaling](#) function.
  - In the **Scaling Factor** field, you can specify the number of places you want to show before the decimal point of the amount in the app. In this field, only numbers between 0 and 9 can be entered.  
For example, the value “3” (By 1000) means showing the values in thousands. The value “6” (By 1000000) means showing the values in millions.
  - In the **Number of Decimal Places** field, you can specify the number of places you want to show after the decimal point of the amount in the app. For example, the value “1” means showing one digit after the decimal point.
- Export your search results to a spreadsheet

## Quick Demos (English Only)

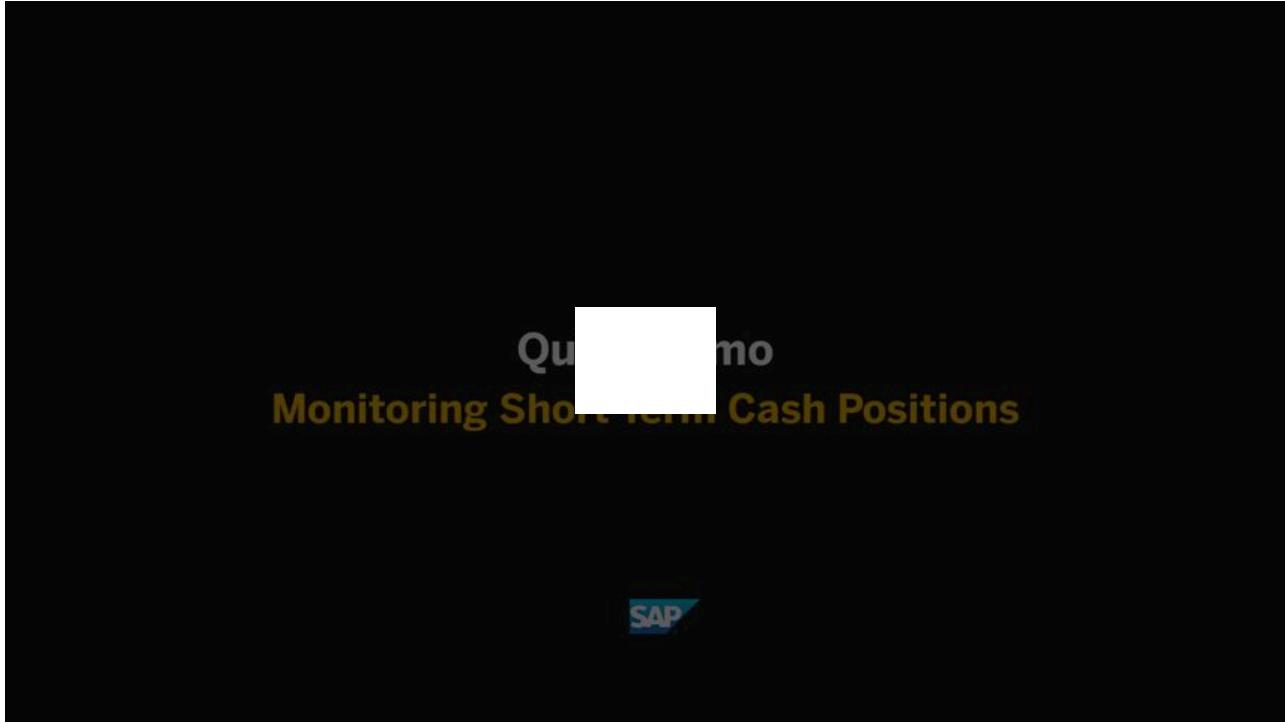
The following multimedia content displays screens and interfaces in English only. It shows sequences based on the UI as delivered standard by SAP and is best viewed in full screen.

- Creating Cash Position Profiles



[Open this video in a new window](#)

- Monitoring Short-Term Cash Positions



[Open this video in a new window](#)

## Supported Device Types

- Desktop
- Tablet

## Related Information

[Define Cash Position Profiles](#)

[Make Bank Transfers](#)

[Define Bank Account Settings - Bank Statements](#)

[Schedule Jobs for Bank Account Balance Initialization](#)

## Submit Bank Account Applications

With this app, you can submit an application to request a new bank account and track the status of your application.

## Prerequisites

To use this app, make sure you have defined users for submitting bank account applications and approvers for approving bank account applications. You use the authorization object F\_CLM\_BA0R to control the access to bank account applications.

Approvers must acquire the authorization to activity 31 (Confirm).

For details about other activities of the authorization object, see the authorization object documentation using the transaction SU22.

## Key Features

You can use this app to do the following:

- Create a bank account application and submit it for approval

An email will be sent automatically to people who have the authorization to approve the application.

- Upload attachments with your bank account application.

The document type SAT of the Document Management System (DMS) is predefined for attachments used in bank account application processes.

### **i Note**

Do not upload any document containing personal data. The bank account attachments are based on the Document Management System (DMS). Retrieval of personal data for DMS-based documents is not supported by the Information Retrieval Framework (IFR).

- Check the status of your applications, view approval steps, and get information about the bank account created for your application
- Withdraw a submitted bank account application

You can withdraw a bank account application when it has been submitted and is awaiting approval, or after it has been approved but the bank account is not yet activated.

- Delete a bank account application that is not yet submitted

## Supported Device Types

- Desktop
- Tablet

## More Information

- The SAP Fiori apps reference library has details about the content necessary for giving users access to an app on the **SAP Fiori launchpad**. The SAP Fiori apps reference library is available here: <https://fioriappslibrary.hana.ondemand.com>

To see this app's Fiori content, search for the app. Then select SAP S/4HANA as the product. On the **Implementation Information** tab, select the correct release. The details are in the **Configuration** section.

## Related Information

[Approve Bank Account Applications](#)

[Bank Account Applications](#)

## Manage Liquidity Item Transfer

App ID: <F6385>

With this app, you can process lifecycles of liquidity item transfer documents like **Create**, **Change**, **Copy**, and **Delete**. You can directly create and transfer liquidity items in this app, or create the liquidity item transfer in the **Cash Flow Analyzer** app.

When the liquidity item transfer is created, all the items will generate actual One Exposure flows. During the liquidity item transfer, the original liquidity items will not necessarily be changed, and the shifts between liquidity items will be documented.

After the saving of the entries during the liquidity item transfer, it could be viewed in the [Cash Flow Analyzer](#) and [Check Cash Flow Items](#) apps.

If one or multiple flows are deleted or aggregated, the status of the corresponding transfer will be set to [Invalidate](#), and the transfer will not be able to be updated.

The [Manage Liquidity Item Transfer](#) app is integrated with the [Blocked Date Range](#) feature.

## Key Features

You can use this app to do the following:

- Create new liquidity item transfer.

Specify the necessary information on the tranfer data and line item to create new liquidity item transfer. Company Code and Transfer Currency are mandatory header fields. You need to specify at least two line items with Liquidity Item, Amount, and Value Date. Total balance for the transfer must be zero. You can add more fields in the line item using the Settings function.

- Copy existing liquidity item transfer.
- Edit liquidity item transfer.

Company Code and Transfer Currency cannot be edited.

- Delete liquidity item transfer.

Liquidity item transfer with the status Invalidated cannot be deleted.

## Check Liquidiity Item on G/L Account

**App ID:** <F6459>

With this app, you can display default liquidity items on G/L accounts, which are set in the [Define Default Liquidity Items for G/L Accounts](#) app. The app lists the G/L accounts in the chart of account or company code. Cash relevant information to G/L accounts will be displayed based on your settings, for example, G/L account ID and name, G/L account type, account group, balance sheet account indicator, open item management indicator and so on.

## Key Features

You can use this app to do the following:

- Display the following cash relevant fields to G/L accounts based on [Company Code](#) besides the fetched default liquidity items.
  - [G/L Account, G/L Account Name](#)
  - [G/L Account Type, Type Description](#)
  - [Account Group, Account Group Name](#)
  - [Chart of Accounts, Chart of Accounts Description](#)

- Balance Sheet Account
  - Open Item Management
  - Reconciliation ID
- In the detail page, the original entries covering the selected G/L accounts are fetched, which are maintained in the [Define Default Liquidity Items for G/L Accounts](#) app.